

ط ط

ژ ڈ ژ ڈ ژ ڈ ژ ڈ

Indeed, Allah desires to repel all impurity from you, O People of the Household, and purify you with a thorough purification. (*Sfrah al-A'zib* 33:33)

The most authoritative books on °adçth and Tafsçr (Qur'nic exegesis), amongst both Sunnç and Shç'ah sources, cite Prophetic traditions that confirm verse 33:33 as being exclusively revealed in relation to the five who were 'covered by the Cloak'; namely Muammad, `Alç, Fāšimah, al-°asan, and al-°usayn, (peace be upon them), to whom the term 'Ahl al-Bayt' (People of the House) is specifically attributed.

For instance, refer to the following reference books:

(1) A'mad ibn °anbal (d. 241 AH), *al-Musnad*, 1:331; 4:107; 6:292, 304. (2) ¯a'çl *Muslim* (d. 261 AH), 7:130. (3) Al-Tirmidhç (d. 279 AH), *Sunan*, 5:361 et al. (4) Al-Dçljbç (d. 310 AH), *al-Dhurriyyah al-±jhirah al-Nabawiyyah*, p. 108. (5) Al-Nassa'ç (d. 303 AH), *al-Sunan al-Kubrj* 5:108, 113. (6) al-°ikim al-Naysibçrç (d. 405 AH), *al-Mustadrak °alj al-¯a'çlayn* 2:416, 3:133, 146, 147. (7) al-Zarkashç (d. 794 AH), *al-Burhjn*, pp. 197. (8) Ibn °ajar al-°Asqaljnç (d. 852), *Fatl al-Barç Sharl Ša'çl al-Bukhjrç*, 7:104. (9) Al-Kulaynç (d. 328 AH), *U¥çl al-Kjçç*, 1:287. (10) Ibn Bjbawayh (d. 329 AH), *al-Imjmah wa 'l-Tab¥irah*, pp. 47, H. 29. (11) Al-Maghribç (d. 363 AH) *Da`im al-Isljm*, pp. 35, 37. (12) Al-¯adçq (d. 381 AH) *al-Khi¥jl*, pp. 403, 550. (13) Al-±çsç (d. 460 AH) *al-Amjlç*, H. 438, 482, 783.

For more details, refer to the exegesis of the holy verse involved in the following reference books of *tafsçr*: (1) Al-±abarç (d. 310 AH), *Book of Tafsçr*. (2) Al-Ja¥¥j¥ (d. 370 AH), *A'kjm al-Qur'jn*. (3) Al-Wl'idç (d. 468 AH), *Asbjb an-Nuzçl*. (4) Ibn al-Jawzç (d. 597 AH), *Zjd al-Masçr*. (5) Al-Quršubç (d. 671 AH), *al-Jjmç` li-A'kjm al-Qur'jn*. (6) Ibn Kathçr (d. 774 AH), *Book of Tafsçr*. (7) Al-Tha`labç (d. 825 AH), *Book of Tafsçr*. (8) Al-Suyçšç (d. 911 AH), *al-Durr al-Manthçr*. (9) Al-Shawkjnç (d. 1250 AH), *Fatl al-Qadçr*. (10) Al-°ayyishç (d. 320 AH), *Book of Tafsçr*. (11) Al-Qummç (d. 329 AH), *Book of Tafsçr*. (12) Furçš al-Kççç (d. 352 AH), *Book of Tafsçr*; in the margin of the exegesis of verse 4:59. (13) Al-±abrisç (d. 560 AH), *Majma` al-Bayjn*.

p

IN THE NAME OF ALLAH; THE
ALL-BENEFICENT, THE ALL-MERCIFUL

قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ 3:

إِنِّي تَارِكٌ فِيكُمْ الثَّقَلَيْنِ: كِتَابَ اللَّهِ
وَعِثْرَتِي أَهْلَ بَيْتِي، مَا إِنْ تَمَسَّكْتُمْ
بِهِمَا لَنْ تَضِلُّوا بَعْدِي أَبَدًا، وَإِنَّهُمَا
لَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضَ.

The Messenger of Allah (ﷺ) said:

“Verily, I am leaving among you two precious things [*thaqalayn*]: The Book of Allah and my progeny [*‘itrah*], the members of my Household [*Ahl al-Bayt*]. If you hold fast to them, you shall never go astray. These two will never separate from each other until they meet me at the Pond [*awq*] (of *Kawthar*).”

This holy tradition has been narrated, with different paraphrases, by numerous Sunnī and Shī‘ah sources:

Al-°ikim al-Naysībī, *Al-Mustadrak ‘alī al-‘a‘ayn* (Beirut), vol. 3, pp. 109-110, 148, 533.

Muslim, *al-‘a‘*, (English translation), book 31, *adeths* 5920-3.

Al-Tirmidhī, *al-‘a‘*, vol. 5, pp. 621-2, *adeths* 3786, 3788; vol. 2, p. 219.

Al-Nassī‘, *Khaṣṣi‘i‘ ‘Alī ibn Abī-ṭlib*, *adeth* 79.

Al-mad ibn °anbal, *al-Musnad*, vol. 3, pp. 14, 17, 26; vol. 3, pp. 26, 59; vol. 4, p. 371; vol. 5, pp. 181-182, 189-190.

Ibn al-Athīr, *Jami‘ al-Uṣṣal*, vol. 1, p. 277.

Ibn Kathīr, *al-Bid‘yah wa’l-Nih‘yah*, vol. 5, p. 209.

Ibn Kathīr, *Tafsīr al-Qur’īn al-‘A‘m*, vol. 6, p. 199.

Nṣīr al-Dīn al-Albanī, *Silsilat al-Adith al-‘a‘ah* (Kuwait: Al-Dīr al-Salafiyyah), vol. 4, pp. 355-8.

THE FAITH
OF
THE IM‘MIYYAH SH‘AH

نام کتاب: عقائد الإمامية
نویسنده: محمد رضا المظفر
مترجم: بدر شاہین
زبان ترجمہ: انگلیسی



The Faith of the *Iṃmiyyah Sḥ`ah*

Author: `Alliṡmah Muḡammad Riḡi al-Muzaffar

Reviser: `Abd al-Karim al-Kirmani

Translator: Badr Shahin

Editor: Iffat Shah

Project supervisor: Translation Unit, Cultural
Affairs Department/The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World
Assembly (ABWA)

Publisher: The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly

First Printing: 2008

Printed by: Layla Press

Copies: 7,000

www.ahl-ul-bayt.org

info@ahl-ul-bayt.org

ISBN: 978-964-529-435-7

All rights reserved

THE FAITH OF THE IṂMIYYAH SḤ`AH

`ALLiMAH MUḡAMMAD Riḡi AL-MU`AFFAR

With additions and commentary by
`ABD AL-KARḡM AL-KIRMiNḡ

Translated by
BADR SHAHIN

PART ONE:**DOCTRINES PERTAINING TO DIVINITY****Almighty Allah—83****Divine Unity (*Taw'îd*)—87****Attributes of Almighty Allah—91****Divine Justice—95****Religious Duties—99****Predetermination and Divine Decree—101****Badi'—107****Laws of the Religion—113****PART TWO:****PROPHETHOOD****Prophethood—119****Prophethood being Part of Divine Grace—119****Miracles of the Prophets—125****Infallibility of the Prophets—133****Attributes of the Prophets—137****The Prophets and their Books—139****Islam—141****The Lawgiver of Islam—149****The Holy Qur'in—151****Proving the Divine Status of Islam and the Past****TABLE OF CONTENTS****Preface—11****Introduction—13****Glimpses into the Life of Shaykh al-Mu`affar—23****His Family—23****His Birth—24****Intellectual Growth—24****His Scientific Works—27****His Poetry—29****His Role in Developing Curricula and in Reformation—31****Foreword—39****Preface to the Second Edition—55****PRELUDE—57****Ijtihad and Taqlid:****Necessity of Seeking Knowledge—63****Taqlid in the Secondary Religious Affairs—67****Ijtihad—73****The Mujtahid—77**

Etiquettes of Visiting the Holy Shrines—294

Shc`ism According to the Ahl al-Bayt —301

Imim al-Biqir's Conversation with Jibir al-Ju`f—303

**Imim al-Biqir's Conversation with Sa`d Ibn al-
°asan—305**

Imim al-`idiq's Conversation with al-Kinin—305

Aphorisms of Imim al-`idiq (`a)—306

Oppression and Injustice—311

Cooperation with Oppressors—317

Holding Offices in Despotic Governments—325

Calling upon Islamic Unity—329

Mutual Rights of Muslims—341

**PART FIVE:
ESCHATOLOGY**

Resurrection and Final Assemblage—355

Somatic Resurrection—357

Bibliography—365

Religious Laws—155

**PART THREE:
IMAMATE**

Imamate—165

Infallibility of the Imim—171

Attributes and Knowledge of the Imim—173

Obedience to the Imims—179

Love for the Ahl al-Bayt—195

The Holy Imims—203

Imamate Decided by a Divine Commission—205

Number of the Imims—213

Al-Mahd—223

The Return (Raj`ah)—229

Pious Dissimulation (Taqiyyah)—237

**PART FOUR:
TEACHINGS OF THE AHL AL-Bayt
FOR THEIR FOLLOWERS**

Prelude—251

Supplication—253

The Supplications of al-`a!cfah al-Sajjidiyyah—271

Pilgrimage to the Holy Shrines—289

Forms of Ziyirah—292

To assist the seekers of truth, the Ahl al-Bayt World Assembly has endeavored to present a new phase of these arguments contained in the studies and translations of the works of contemporary Shī'ah writers and those who have embraced this sublime school of thought through divine blessing.

The Assembly is also engaged in edition and publication of the valuable works of leading Shc`ah scholars of earlier ages to assist the seekers of the truth in discovering the truths which the School of the Prophet's Household (a) has offered to the entire world.

The Ahl al-Bayt World Assembly looks forward to benefit from the opinions of the readers and their suggestions and constructive criticism in this area.

We also invite scholars, translators and other institutions to assist us in propagating the genuine Islamic teachings as preached by the Prophet Muḥammad (ﷺ).

We beseech God, the Most High, to accept our humble efforts and to enable us to enhance them under the auspices of Imām al-Mahdī, His vicegerent on the earth (may Allah expedite his advent).

We invoke Almighty God's mercy upon the soul of Shaykh Muḥammad Riḍā al-Muḥaffar, the author of the present book and express our gratitude to Mr. `Abd al-Karīm al-Kirmīnī, for commenting on the text of the book and Br. Badr Shahin, its translator. We also thank our colleagues who have participated in producing this work, especially the staff of the Translation Office.

Cultural Affairs Department
The Ahl al-Bayt (a) World Assembly

PREFACE

In the Name of Allah, the Compassionate, the Merciful

The invaluable legacy of the Household [*Ahl al-Bayt*] of the Prophet (may peace be upon them all), as preserved by their followers, is a comprehensive school of thought that embraces all branches of Islamic knowledge. This school has produced many brilliant scholars who have drawn inspiration from this rich and pure resource. It has given many scholars to the Muslim *ummah* who, following in the footsteps of Imāms of the Prophet's Household (a), have done their best to clear up the doubts raised by various creeds and currents within and without Muslim society and to answer their questions. Throughout the past centuries, they have given well-reasoned answers and clarifications concerning these questions and doubts.

To meet the responsibilities assigned to it, the Ahl al-Bayt World Assembly (ABWA) has embarked on a defense of the sanctity of the Islamic message and its verities, often obscured by the partisans of various sects and creeds as well as by currents hostile to Islam. The Assembly follows in the footsteps of the *Ahl al-Bayt* (a) and the disciples of their school of thought in its readiness to confront these challenges and tries to be on the frontline in consonance with the demands of every age.

The arguments contained in the works of the scholars belonging to the School of the *Ahl al-Bayt* (a) are of unique significance. That is because they are based on genuine scholarship and appeal to reason, and avoid prejudice and bias. These arguments address scholars and thinkers in a manner that appeals to healthy minds and wholesome human nature.

4. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riḳi (1322 – 1384 AH), with an introduction by °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd (with noteworthy additions); Cairo: Al-Najī Publishers, 1391 AH; Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 126.
5. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riḳi, with an introduction by Mu`ammad Mahdḡ al-`Yifḡ and °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd; (publisher is not mentioned) 1393 AH, Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 135; Offset printing.
6. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: The Reformist Mujtahid Mu`ammad Riḳi al-Mu`affar, with an introduction by °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd; Qum: al-Sharḡf al-Raḳḡ Publishers; Second Edition, 1411 AH, Envelope C5 size (162 x 229 mm); Number of pages: 136.
7. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riḳi, (d. 1384 AH) with an introduction by Mu`ammad Mahdḡ al-`Yifḡ and °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd; Qum: Shukḡrḡ Publishers 1371 AHS/1413 AH, Third Offset Edition, Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 147.
8. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: The Great `Alljmah (well-versed scholar) Shaykh Mu`ammad Riḳi al-Mu`affar (1904 – 1964 CE); with revision and commentary by Mu`ammad Jawḡd al-ḡurayḡḡ; Qum: Imjm `Alḡ Foundation (*mu'assasat al-imjm `alḡ*); First Revised Edition, 1417 AH; Envelope C5 size (162 x 229 mm); Number of pages: 512.
9. *Bidḡyat al-Ma`jirif al-Ilḡhiyyah fḡ Sharḡ `Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: Commentary and revision by Sayyid Muḡsin al-Kharrḡḡḡ; Qum: Islamic Publication Center (*markaz an-nashr al-islḡmḡ*); First Edition; Date of Introduction: 1366 AHS/1418 AH; Envelope C5 size (162 x 229 mm); 2 volumes: 1st volume: 320 pages; 2nd volume: 281 pages.

INTRODUCTION

In the Name of Allah, the All-beneficent, the All-merciful

All praise is due to Allah, the Lord of the Worlds. All peace and blessings be upon our master and guide, Prophet Mu`ammad, and upon his immaculate, infallible Household. Ceaseless curse be upon their enemies.

My interest in researching into this book, has arisen from the significance of the book itself and the urgent need to release it among the various milieus of society. The best proof of this fact is the great interest shown by scholars, translators, publishers, and cultural and scientific centers in this book, which maybe small in size but is huge in contents. Confirming this fact, too, are the repeated editions of this book in various languages. The following is a list of the frequent editions of this book that I found:

In Arabic:

1. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riḳi (1322–1384 AH), with an introduction by °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd; Najaf: Dḡr al-Nu`mḡn; Date of Introduction: 1380 AH; Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 136.
2. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riḳi (1322 – 1384 AH), with an introduction by °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd; Cairo: Al-Najī Publishers, 1384 AH/1361 CE; Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 126.
3. *`Aqi'id al-Imimiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riḳi (1322 – 1384 AH), with an introduction by Mu`ammad Mahdḡ al-`Yifḡ and °jmid °afnḡ Dḡwḡd; Qum: Dḡr al-Tablḡgh al-Islḡmḡ; Date of Introduction: 1381 AH; Book size: Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 176; second offset printing.

In Other Languages:

1. **In English:** *The Faith of Shc`ah Islam*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riṣṣi (1904 – 1964); Qum: Ansariyan Publications; 1409 AH/1989 CE; Number of pages: 89.
2. **In French:** Translated into French by `Abbīs al-Bostjñç; commentary by Mu`ammad Jawjḍ al-ṣurayḥ; Qum: Imjm `Alç Foundation (date is not mentioned); Number of pages: 270.
3. **In Russian:** Translated into Russian by Translation Department in the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly 1998; Number of pages: 152.
4. **In Chinese:** Translated into Chinese by Sulaymñ Hi Khwa; Tehran: Islamic Culture and Relations League; 1997; Number of pages: 87.
5. **In Urdu:** Translated into Urdu by Mu`ammad Naqvi Najafi; Revised by Mu`ammad Jawjḍ al-ṣurayḥ; Qum: Imjm `Alç Foundation; First Edition; Number of pages: 340.
6. **In Urdu:** Edited by Ahmad `usayn Naqvi; Qum: Imjm `Alç Foundation; 1420 AH; Number of pages: 440.
7. **In Farsi:** Translated into Farsi by `Alç Riṣṣi Masjid-Jjmi`ç; Tehran: Ministry of Islamic Culture and Guidance; Publication and Printing Organization; 1380 AHS; A5 Size (148 x 210 mm); Number of pages: 368.
8. **In Tajik:** Translated into Tajik by Iqbñl Strochni; Tehran: Islamic Culture and Relations League; 1997; Number of pages: 212.

Because of summing up, we will not mention the other prints of this book, which have been published by the

10. *`Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah*: `Alljmah Shaykh Mu`ammad Riṣṣi al-Mu`affar; Qum: Doctrinal Research Center (*markaz al-abljth al-`aqj`idiyyah*); 1422 AH, Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 176.
11. *`Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah*: The Reformist Mujtahid Mu`ammad Riṣṣi al-Mu`affar, with an introduction by `jmid `afnç Djwḥḍ; Qum: Ansariyan Publications; Fourth Reprint, 1422 AH; Number of pages: 135.
12. *`Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riṣṣi (d. 1384 AH), with an introduction by `jmid `afnç Djwḥḍ; Tehran: The Major Islamic Library (*al-maktabah al-isljmiyyah al-kubrij*), Be`sat Foundation (date is not mentioned); Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 136.
13. *`Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riṣṣi (date and publishers are not mentioned), Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 136.
14. *`Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah*: al-Mu`affar, Mu`ammad Riṣṣi, with an introduction by `jmid `afnç Djwḥḍ; Tehran: Ninawa Modern Library (*maktabat nçnawj al-`adçthah*) (date is not mentioned); Pocket size (120 x 180 mm); Number of pages: 136.
15. *`Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah fç Thawbihç al-Jadçḍ*; Fjris `Alç al-`amir; Qum: al-Sharçf al-Raṣç Publishers; Second Edition; Envelope C5 size (162 x 229 mm); Number of pages: 227.
16. *Bidjyat al-Ma`jrif al-Iljhiyyah fç Shar`l `Aqi`id al-Imjmiyyah*: Commentary and explanation by Sayyid Muṣsin al-Kharrjzç; Qum: Islamic Publication Center (*markaz an-nashr al-isljmç*); Seventh Edition; two parts in one volume.

acquainted with the Shē`ah through the Shē`ah themselves, but not through mediators, strangers, or biased people.

C. Non-Muslim Milieus: Non-Muslim milieus who desire to acquaint themselves with Muslim Shē`ite beliefs also try to gain such knowledge from the Shē`ah themselves through their own words and pens with the hope of saving time and procuring tranquility.

Among matters that have confirmed the need for turning to studying the Muslim Shē`ite doctrines are the events and developments witnessed by the present age, such as:

- (a) the blessed Islamic revolution of Iran,
- (b) the collapse of the Soviet Union,
- (c) the changes that the extremist radical movements (*salafīyyah*) are facing,
- (d) the eviction of the Iraqi Shē`ah and their spread all over the world, and,
- (e) the traumatic experiences of the Shē`ah in countries like Lebanon, Bahrain, Afghanistan, Iraq, and Azerbaijan.

Having noticed the significance and the need for this book, as well as the variety of its seekers and their levels, we can now understand the various methods used in displaying it. It was important to consider the up-to-date requirements and the prerequisites necessitated by this age. As is visible in the aforementioned list, you will have noticed that the book was first published as simply as possible. The second edition included further remarks and details. The third edition was complemented by varying additions and commentaries. Similarly, the release of non-Arabic versions of the book stems from the surrounding circumstances and

aforesaid publishers as well as others.

We would like to express our gratitude and acknowledgement to all those who have contributed to this cultural project, especially our esteemed brother, His Eminence Shaykh Dr. Mu`ammad Jawīd al-ḥurayḥ and those who have collaborated with him in the production of the book's distinctive edition of Imīm `Alī Foundation. Our acknowledgement also extends to the eminent scholar, ^ʿayātullāh Sayyid Muḥsin al-Kharīzī, whose efforts to explain and comment on the book are praiseworthy, and the hardworking scholar, Mr. Fāris `Alī al-`amir, who has not only dressed the book in a new garment but also omitted, added, and re-coined many of the book's words and expressions. We thus pray Almighty Allah to lead all of us to all that which is good for us.

Because the material of this book is rich, agreeable, and fulfills the requirements and levels of divergent classes of people, this diverse need is divided between various milieus of society as follows:

A. Shē`ite Milieu: This milieu comprises the juvenile and young Shē`ah, including the scholarly youth and teachers, who are at different levels of schools and universities on the one hand and seminaries (*ḥawzah*: institutes of religious studies) on the other. A Shē`ite individual strives to acquire materials that enable him/her to achieve self-education concerning the basics of his/her sect and the fundamentals of his/her faith in an easy and facile way.

B. Sunnī Milieu: Sunnis generally persevere in gaining knowledge of the doctrines and beliefs that their Shē`ite brethren embrace. Normally, a thirsty person tries to drink from a headspring; therefore, Sunnis have the desire to become

time and age require it.

In view of that, I have humbly attempted to present this book on the following lines:

(1) I have committed myself to observing the middle state by manifesting some points presented by the author and in hinting at some themes, which, in my opinion, are significant. I have therefore employed brevity in explaining the doctrines, the concepts, and the fundamentals and basics mentioned in the book. I have also done my best to avoid expatiation and elaboration.

(2) I have stressed the significance of the principle of proximity between the followers of the same religion (the followers of the different sects of Islam), based on the author's purpose behind writing this book. A considerable number of reference books trusted by both Sunn¢ and Shc`ite Muslims have been used to classify and document the narrations, quotations, and opinions that are cited in the book to satisfy the readers of all sects. They also show the similarity of Muslim doctrines that unite the followers of the School of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) and their brethren of other Muslim sects. When this aim is achieved, the points of discrepancy between Muslim sects will automatically diminish and the sources of the genuine heritage of Islam will shine forth.

(3) I have aimed at making the reader realize that the doctrines of the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* are not extraneous or intrusive to the doctrines of Islam but in keeping with the instructions of the Seal of the Prophets, Mu`ammad, (may peace be upon him and his Household). He clearly dictated unswerving adherence to the two Weighty Things—the Holy Qur'ān and the Immaculate Progeny of the Holy

the scope of the need for it. Factors that have a hold over the way of displaying and printing the book depend upon the publishers' interest in the scientific, cultural, and artistic issues, in addition to their taste and financial potentials.

Noticeably, the aforementioned editions of this book, despite their diversity, do not satisfy its utmost purpose. Some of these editions do not meet with the multi-aspect modern standards in spite of the typographical technical improvements they made. Other editions have not succeeded in meeting the modern scientific needs of indexing and documenting the quotations from the Holy Qur'ān, the Sunnah (i.e. the Holy Prophet's (ﷺ) reported words and deeds), and other references that are mentioned in the book; and some editions have not cited the references completely or accurately. Moreover, other editions have been originally dedicated to scholarly purposes; they therefore comprise explanations and theological details. Although other editions have comprised additional, yet valuable, information, such additions have been even more than the original material of the book. Other editions have also included translations of the book besides its original language. Undeniably, such explanations, commentaries, additions, and translations involve many advantages, but, at the same time, they have caused the book to lose its purpose, as visualized by the author of the book, the late `Allamah Mu`ammad Riḍā al-Mu`affar, and the foremost publisher, the virtuous scholar, Mu`ammad Kā'im al-Katab¢. As is confirmed by the author himself in the introduction of the first and second editions of the book, their purpose of publishing this book was to publicize its material. However, the book became restricted to a certain class of people. On the other hand, the bigger a book the more expensive and, as a result, its distribution and publishing became limited. Despite everything, we still believe that there must be variety and change in the presentation of the book whenever

Rajab 15, 1423 AH

Prophet—. Had it not been for some opportunistic elements who wished to gain individual and family advantages and control the resources of power, domination, and supremacy, all Muslims would certainly have assembled around the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) from whom Almighty Allah removed all impurity and whom He purified thoroughly and made heir to the knowledge of His Prophet (ﷺ). Very soon shall all Muslims gather under the (Divinely commissioned) leadership of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) at the imminent, expected Advent of the Guide of all nations, Imjm al-Mahdç (`a), who shall unite all different opinions and spread justice over the east and the west of this globe. Such have come the good tidings from his grandfather, the Holy Prophet (may peace be upon him and his Household).

(4) I have worked on guiding observant readers towards some reference books that grant them an opportunity to elaborate on the topics that attract their attention.

(5) I have notified the death-date of the authors (mentioned in the book) in the margins to facilitate researchers to have an idea about the historical sequence of the topics under discussion. Repetition of such information in the margins of the book will allow readers to learn these dates and, consequently, contribute by teaching Muslims the history of the personalities and famous individuals of their nation.

(6) I have made every single effort to observe accuracy and honesty in citing and documenting all information related to the topics under discussion.

I end with the prayer that Almighty Allah guide our steps towards genuine prosperity and forgive us our transgression. He is verily the All-Forgiver and Hearer of prayers.

`Abd al-Karçm al-Kirm;nc

item of jurisprudence unexplained.”⁽¹⁾

His Birth

Shaykh Muḥammad Riḍā al-Mu`affar was born on the fifteenth of Sha`bān, AH 1322, five months after his father's demise. Hence, Almighty Allah did not decide for this infant to see his father nor did He decide for the father to see his newborn. Shaykh `Abd al-Nabḥ, the elder brother who died in AH 1337, adopted him and provided him with custody and compassion that compensated for his father's missed custody and compassion.

Intellectual Growth

Shaykh al-Mu`affar grew up in the religious environment of the holy city of al-Najaf and moved among its seminars, assemblies, gatherings, classes, and schools. He attended the seminaries of high studies and was trained at the hands of major religious authorities and mentors as he grew up in the house of al-Mu`affar, which was one of the deep-rooted learned families in al-Najaf and was under the supervision and custody of his two learned brothers; Shaykh `Abd al-Nabḥ and Shaykh Muḥammad ḥasan.

Like the other religious students of al-Najaf, Shaykh al-Mu`affar began his scholarly life by attending the lectures of literature, jurisprudence, fundamentals of jurisprudence (*Ilm al-Uṣūl*) and intellectual sciences. In the field of literature and *Ilm al-Uṣūl*, he studied under Shaykh Muḥammad ḥajj al-ḥuwayz and could distinguish himself in these fields as well as in poetry. Simultaneously, he studied the preliminary studies of jurisprudence (*suḥuḥ*) and other fields of religious studies under other mentors, in all

⁽¹⁾ Quoted from ‘*al-Mu`affar*’ by Shaykh Maḥmūd al-Mu`affar.

GLIMPSES INTO THE LIFE OF SHAYKH AL-MU`AFFAR

His Family

The family of al-Mu`affar⁽¹⁾ has been known as one of the scholarly and well-versed families of the holy city of al-Najaf since the middle of the twelfth century (AH). Some of the members of this family settled in the al-Jaz`ir Quarter in al-Baḥrah.

Shaykh Muḥammad ibn `Abdullāh, the well-versed jurisprudent and father of the author of this book, was one of the well-known scholars and religious authorities (*marji` al-taqlīd*) of al-Najaf where he “grew up and, in the early years of his youth devoted himself diligently to scholarly education. He dedicated himself to worshipping and teaching (religious knowledge) until he became an expert in Muslim jurisprudence (*fiqh*) and was introduced as one of the skilled researchers in this field. He compiled an estimable encyclopedia on jurisprudence, which comprised his explanations and commentaries on the famous book of ‘*Sharḥi` al-Islām*.’⁽²⁾ In this book, which he entitled ‘*Tawḥīd al-Kalām*’, Shaykh al-Mu`affar has left no single

⁽¹⁾ This section is quoted from (the book of) ‘*Madrasat al-Najaf*’ by His Eminence Shaykh Muḥammad Mahdī al-ḥif.

⁽²⁾ An encyclopedic book on Shi`ite jurisprudence written by al-Muḥaqiq al-ḥillī: Abī al-Qāsim Najm al-Dīn Ja`far ibn al-ḥasan [602-672 AH].

Muntadġ al-Nashr (Forum of Publishing), he engaged himself with teaching the highest levels of preliminary and higher education in the fields of jurisprudence, *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, and philosophy.

As for his clear-cut helping hand in the establishment of *Muntadġ al-Nashr*, he dedicated his entire life to developing and building up this forum in various aspects. He thus taught arts, logic, philosophy, jurisprudence, and *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl* from the primary to the highest levels of study, forgetting about his eminent status in the Seminary (*ʿawzah*) and his superlative intellectual competence. Many times was he seen delivering lectures in the primary classes of the schools of *Muntadġ al-Nashr*, receiving simple questions of the pupils with large-heartedness, prompting them to search, study, and think, and wedging himself in the middle of them as if he was talking to his classmates, not his pupils. Above all, he was distinguished by profundity, accurate gesture, good taste, and prescience as is obvious from his approach in jurisprudence, *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, and philosophy.

In the beginning of his scholarly life, Shaykh al-Muʿaffar acquainted himself with the sciences of mathematics, astronomy, physics, and prosody.

In the early years of his youth, it once happened that Shaykh al-Muʿaffar's sight fell on an aspect of modern thought he found worth inspecting, so he attempted to open the way to this new culture with others who also agreed with him. On corresponding with some scientific magazines, such as *ʿal-Muqtaṣaf*, and other publications, he asked for issues of these papers and copies of books that were engaged in this new color of thought. Afterwards, Shaykh al-Muʿaffar carried on in this manner, went along with this innovatory intellectual movement, and received an abundant share of

of which he excelled.

Having finished the preliminary stage, Shaykh al-Muʿaffar applied himself to higher studies in jurisprudence, *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, and philosophy. He, along with his younger brother Muʿammad ʿusayn, attended the classes of his brother Shaykh Muʿammad ʿasan. He also joined the classes of Shaykh ʿaḡhġ ʿīyġ' al-Dġn al-ʿIrġqġ in the field of *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, and the classes of Shaykh Mġrzġ Muʿammad ʿusayn al-Nġ'ġnġ in the fields of jurisprudence and *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*. He also studied, yet distinctively, the theses of Shaykh Muʿammad ʿusayn al-ʿIfahġnġ in the fields of jurisprudence, *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, and supreme theo-philosophy. In these three fields of knowledge, Shaykh al-Muʿaffar was much influenced by the opinions of Shaykh al-ʿIfahġnġ, so he imitated his course of research in his book of *ʿUṣūl al-Fiqh* in chaptering and indexing the fundamentals of jurisprudence—a fact which the author has referred to in his introduction to this book. As is noticed from the accomplished parts of his book of *ʿUṣūl al-Fiqh*, Shaykh al-Muʿaffar acted upon his mentor's private basics of jurisprudence. He also had great regard for his mentor, al-ʿIfahġnġ, and showered him with the most respectful words whenever he would refer to or mention him and show his love and admiration for him more than any other student who sincerely admired his mentor.

This feeling towards his mentor and loyalty to him manifests itself to the reader from his writings in the introductions to his jurisprudential and philosophic books, theses, and essays, such as the introduction to his book of *ʿal-Asfġr*.

Shaykh al-Muʿaffar also graduated under his mentors in jurisprudence, *ʿIlm al-Uṣūl*, and philosophy although he had his idiosyncratic views, inferences, and researches to which his mentors confessed. In the midst of all that and apart from his remarkable efforts in the schools and faculties of

However, Shaykh al-Mu`affar turned away from composing poetry to engage in constructive intellectual affairs.

In the books of Shaykh al-Mu`affar, a researcher can easily sense the fecundity of research and analysis, which has become a distinctive feature of all of his books. This feature is clearly visible in his book '*al-Saqçfah*', in which he critically examines the meeting of the Muslims under the shed (*Saqçfah*) of Ban£-Sç`idah and the events that took place therein. He analyzes the attitudes of the *Muhçjir£n*⁽¹⁾ and the *An¥çr*⁽²⁾ concerning the question of succession (*khilçfah*) after the Holy Prophet (¥), and the situation of Imçm `Alç (`a) vis a vis the caliphs.

In his book '*al-Mançiq*', such fecundity in analysis can be sensed when the author makes use of mathematical signs for the four ratios in his discussion of 'Division'. Besides this, excellence of expression and cohesion of approach is apparent in every part of this book.

His Poetry

In his youth and once in a while, Shaykh al-Mu`affar used to compose poetic verses, which are marked by substantiality and elegance of style. The reader of his poetry, published in some books and newspapers, can point out charming poetic images and meet novel artistic horizons.

⁽¹⁾ Muhçjir£n (singular: *muhçjir*, migrant) is a title exclusively given to the people of Makkah who followed the Holy Prophet (s) and had to migrate to Yathrib (later al-Madçnah) because of the persecution they suffered at the hands of the polytheists of Makkah.

⁽²⁾ An¥çr are the people of Yathrib (al-Madçnah) who accepted, supported, and received the Holy Prophet (s) and the emigrants of Makkah (*Muhçjir£n*).

problem is that the nature of the latter stage rejected any transformation or revolution in its shape and contents and it could not be submitted to any specific methodical order. In plain words, study in this stage did not adopt any system and it could hardly compete with the methodical and general definition of study.

Furthermore, due to the nature of this stage, discussions and research could not be restricted or regulated to a certain rule nor exams act as incentives to study and research. Hence, the only stage that could be reformed and required guidance and ordering was the primary stage.

Shaykh al-Mu`affar also realized that the reasons for the existence of such problems were shortage of material and weakness of style.

As for material, a primary stage student of the Seminary of al-Najaf was given lessons that were restricted to studying (Arabic) grammar, morphology, rhetoric, logic, exegesis of the Holy Qur'in (*tafsir*), Muslim jurisprudence (*Fiqh*), and

laws since such judgment would agree with public interest. In Sunnite jurisprudence, Ijtihid means the independent or original interpretation of problems not precisely covered by the Holy Qur'in, the Holy Sunnah, and the other sources of Islamic law from the viewpoint of Sunnite scholars, such as analogy (*Qiyas*), consensus (*Ijma`*)... etc. In Shi`ite jurisprudence, Ijtihid means the exertion of all possible efforts in the deduction of religious laws from their sources. To sum it up, the concept of Ijtihid in Sunnite doctrine is different from Shi`ite doctrine. Whilst it stands for personal conclusion in Sunnite doctrine, it has its definite principles and fundamentals that cannot be contravened and are based upon Divine texts in Shi`ite doctrine. [translator]

His Role in Developing Curricula and in Reformation

Having reached the peak in reformatory activities in the holy city of al-Najaf, Shaykh al-Mu`affar played an effective role in all the reformatory movements that he attended and was the most eminent member of all of these movements. However, the reformatory approach lacked intelligibility and methodical thought in treatment despite its effectiveness and its holders' conviction in the necessity of applying it to the Seminaries.

Thanks to his extensive experiments, Shaykh al-Mu`affar arrived at a perfect conception about reformation and the methodology of study and propagation; and by virtue of the genius and sagacity that he enjoyed concerning such issues, he arrived at the primary roots of the problem. He then invited his brothers-in-faith and sons to cure the roots of this problem.

According to Shaykh al-Mu`affar, the problem needed treatment on two fronts: study and propagation.

As for study, he noticed that teaching in the Seminary of the holy city of al-Najaf was ordered in two stages:

- (1) The preliminary level (*al-Muqaddimāt wa'l-Suṣṣa*), and
- (2) Higher education (*al-Baṭh al-Khrijī*).

The former level was considered preliminary while the latter was arranged for specialization in *ijtihid*.⁽¹⁾ The

⁽¹⁾ Ijtihid is a polysemous term in Muslim jurisprudence. Lexically, it means the exertion of efforts in the attainment of a matter. In the initial emergence of Ijtihid, it took the meaning of dependence upon personal views and issuance of personal judgments in religious affairs even if this would violate the sources of Islamic

the propagation of Muslim thought than before, and it should ensure all Islamic propagation by means of writing, authoring, printing and publishing on a much wider scale. Additionally, the ideological aspect, which was the foundation of such campaigns of propagation for Islam, needed to carry with it the principles of faith and reformation in their most obvious shapes to embrace the entire globe and reach every point in which a human being might be living. Nevertheless, the Seminary of al-Najaf was in most cases in no need for materials of writings and research.

On the other hand, it was noticeable that individuality was the feature that distinguished the writings and research in al-Najaf. In plain words, theses and research presented by a writer from al-Najaf were the result of individual efforts more than collective.

A third point is that al-Najaf, at that time, lacked well-equipped printing machines and publications that would benefit the fertile scientific material that this city could present to the press.

With complete objectivity and comprehension, Shaykh al-Mu`affar had the opportunity to investigate these conditions in al-Najaf. Meanwhile, he knew that the presentation of this problem would lead to nothing unless honest efforts would cooperate in order to meet these needs. He also knew for sure that negative thinking would be a waste of time and of no use unless there was an establishment to manage the efforts. He also concluded that reformative work under such circumstances would also be worthless unless matched by an objective and comprehensive investigation of the situation, deliberation upon it and gradual treatment.

fundamentals of jurisprudence (*Ilm al-Uṣūl*) although there was some expansion in the study of the last two subjects.

It is true that these materials played a major role in the composition and growth of the students' mental capabilities, but they alone could not promote all their duties of guidance, propagation, preaching, and education. Hence, a student could not limit himself to the material that he received at this stage of study in order to fulfill his duty of guidance and propagation on a wider scope.

As for style, Shaykh al-Mu`affar noticed that, in addition to disorganization in the field of research, obscurity and complication were still prevailing on the curricula given to the student of the Seminary of al-Najaf at this stage of study. This fact would make the student exert great effort in order to understand a certain statement and decode the obscurity and complication that encompassed such statements.

As for propagation and guidance, Shaykh al-Mu`affar discovered that oration and writing were the favorite tools of propagation and propagation for Islam had suffered weakness in these two domains.

As for oration, Shaykh al-Mu`affar pointed out that the current style of oration in al-Najaf was not satisfactory. A Muslim orator would not be able to fulfill his Islamic mission unless he had a sufficient idea about the horizons of modern thought and the methods of experimental knowledge, in addition to a thorough comprehension of the issues of Islamic ideology in such fields as jurisprudence, exegesis of the Holy Qur'ān, narration, history, and the like.

As for Islamic writings, Shaykh al-Mu`affar noticed that the religious status of al-Najaf required greater contribution to

Fundamentals of Jurisprudence (*ilm al-uṣūl*), and Philosophy. The latter would be studied in the form of separate lectures in a plain, easy-to-understand language. Shaykh `Abd al-ʿusayn al-ʿillī volunteered to teach the first two materials, and Shaykh `Abd al-ʿusayn al-Rashtī to teach the two others. In fact, these two master scholars' volunteering to teach these materials systematically was one of the most important events in the history of al-Najaf, since it signified such unique sacrifice that history would record in appreciation and admiration for their reformatory spirits. In the summer holidays, these classes stopped in order to restart again in the next academic year, but "they refused to restart and none except some of the members of the board of directors knew why they stopped; was it due to coquetry, or weariness, or any other reason that was not expected especially from such master scholars? How rare moral courage is! When it is terribly needed, it absents itself!"⁽¹⁾

In AH 1376, Shaykh al-Mu`affar finally established the College of Jurisprudence in the holy city of al-Najaf after numerous attempts and long-lasting experiments. In AH 1377, the Iraqi Ministry of Education licensed this college in which the following branches of knowledge were taught: jurisprudence of the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* sect, comparative jurisprudence, fundamentals of jurisprudence, exegesis of the Holy Qur'ān and its principles, *ʿadl* and its principles, education, psychology, literature and its history, sociology, history of Islam, Muslim philosophy, modern philosophy, logic, modern history, principles of teaching, grammar, morphology, and a foreign language.

With sincerity and unprecedented faith, the late Shaykh al-Mu`affar dedicated his whole lifetime to developing this

⁽¹⁾ *Muntadī al-Nashr*; Activities and Expectations, pp. 8-9, by Shaykh Muḥammad Riḍā al-Mu`affar.

Shaykh al-Mu`affar had realized all that and thought of it for a considerable time. Having embarked upon the practical aspect of the problem, he pushed himself into the field of performance although he knew that there would be strenuous obstacles to pass in order to continue in this path. The first step was to find a conscientious group of virtuous personalities of the Seminary who understood the surrounding conditions of life in al-Najaf and comprehended the actuality of the huge intellectual mission that was imposed on this city. On the fourth of Shawwāl, AH 1353 corresponding to January 10, 1935, a group of scholars of religious studies, including Shaykh al-Mu`affar, submitted a statement to the Ministry of Interior demanding the establishment of a religious association in the holy city of al-Najaf carrying the name of *Muntadī al-Nashr* (Forum of Publishing). Along with this statement, they submitted a copy of the foundational system of this Forum. After great effort, the Ministry licensed the establishment of this Forum.⁽¹⁾ Afterwards, attempts were made to organize the study, simplify the curricula, and expand the books of study. Shaykh al-Mu`affar found that the first step in this regard would be to methodize the study irrespective of how important and useful individual study might be. He suggested that a special system of study must complement the one prevailing. Thus, Shaykh al-Mu`affar attempted to achieve a part of the reformation.

In AH 1355, he "put a plan for establishing a high school for religious studies or a faculty for *Ijtihād*, by starting the first class in which he taught four fields of religious knowledge; namely, Argumentative Jurisprudence (*al-fiqh al-istidlālī*), Exegesis of the Holy Qur'ān (*tafsīr*),

⁽¹⁾ *Niẓm Muntadī al-Nashr* (The System of the Forum of Publishing), AH 1370.

humiliation and too enormous to quarrel or be hostile. Commenting on his situation vis-à-vis his rivals or, more accurately, the rivals of the Foundation, he says, "More than anyone else, I excuse a big group of those who adopted an opposite stance against our project, especially those whose intentions we trust and who trust ours."

Such elevated level of self-sacrifice and self-abnegation for the sake of one's faith can hardly be seen among men of intellect.

I would like to end with the following statement of Shaykh al-Mu`affar, which bespeaks his greatness of character:

"We are ready to offer a new sacrifice and withdraw ourselves from our project once we find others having the desire to undertake it instead of us, especially when such people believe that their involvement in this work will give it publicity. Let them know that we will always be servants of this project wherever we are and whatever shape we take, and we do not intend to prove our good will, since it is unnecessary after all the efforts that we have exerted. The most important point in our view is that this project progresses in such a way that befits the good reputation of al-Najaf and it fulfills its duty completely, no matter how big the price, even if it be our lives. Our lives have no value unless sacrificed for duty. Very frequently, I have repeated that we have only stepped forward a short step for the sake of the objectives of this project."

Such was the story of a great spirit.

Mu`ammad Mahdç al-`Yifç
Holy Najaf

foundation. He used to teach Muslim philosophy and manage the other classes when the other teachers would be absent. At the same time, he worked on preparing the volumes of his valuable book '*U¥l al-Fiqh*' to be taught at the College of Jurisprudence. Besides, he would undertake the responsibilities of management, deanship, authorship, and even writing down the documents of the college. On many occasions, I myself saw Shaykh al-Mu`affar write on the registers of the students or type some formal letters on the printing machine. Hence, this foundation came into being by virtue of the efforts of Shaykh al-Mu`affar who dedicated his entire life to it, built it with the particles of his heart, and utilised all his potentials for it.

That was not everything; Shaykh al-Mu`affar also established other foundations and projects of Muslim culture some of which lasted while others failed to continue. In addition, his movement of publishing and writing that he aroused in al-Najaf, such as the publication of '*al-Badhr*' and '*al-Najaf*' magazines, cannot be underestimated.

He was indeed the pivot and founder of the different aspects of such activities although neither his discourse nor his pen showed any indication of the huge efforts he undertook, except when the question of responsibility was brought up. Then he would show himself ready to declare the responsibility with firm and unshakable faith.

Too many were the occasions on which Shaykh al-Mu`affar delivered lessons to his fresh students, offered advice and directions, or guided them in spirituality and simplicity.

For such a long time, he never showed any sign of egoism since he believed that egoism brings about Almighty Allah's contempt or causes one to love something other than Him. Shaykh al-Mu`affar's spirit was too great to take in

of the Twelve Imjms from the books of its embracers and to get to know the doctrines of these people from the reference books of their masters and adept scholars and researchers. It is natural that the master scholars of a sect know more about their beliefs than their rivals, no matter how eloquent and persuasive these rivals may be.

In addition, scientific honesty, which is the foremost foundation of modern scientific methodology—the method that I have chosen for myself and made my constitution in all my research and writings whenever I attempt to discover material and spiritual facts—requires complete verification while quoting texts and investigating them carefully. Hence, it is unsuitable for a skilled scientific researcher to rely upon an unfounded basis while investigating the texts appertaining to Shç`ism.

This fact provoked me to study the Shç`ah and Shç`ism from the books of the Shç`ah themselves and to get to know their doctrines from what they had written and said about themselves without addition or omission, to avoid the confusion which other historians and critics had fallen into while judging the Shç`ah and Shç`ism. As a rule, a researcher who investigates a set of facts from other than their primary sources and original habitats has definitely taken a misleading path and a futile course. Such a researcher has nothing to do with true knowledge.

Such has been the effort of `Alljmah Dr. A|mad Amçn when he discussed Shç`ism in his books. As he attempted to demonstrate some aspects of Shç`ism, he wrongfully engaged himself in many Shç`ite doctrines. For example, he claimed that Shç`ism stemmed from Judaism, and except for a few of them, the Shç`ah claim that they will not be subjected to Hellfire, and Shç`ism follows `Abdulljh ibn

FOREWORD

In the Name of Allah, the All-Beneficent, the All-merciful

It is a big mistake to claim that one can understand the beliefs, sciences, and literature of the *Imjmiyyah Shç`ah* through the writings of their rivals, no matter how skilled and proficient these rivals may be and how honestly they transfer and comment on texts uninfluenced by fruitless fanaticism.

I say so with absolute accuracy after I have spent a considerable time investigating the doctrines of the Twelver⁽¹⁾ Shç`ah in particular and the Shç`ah in general. After such a time-consuming study in the books of Sunnç historians and critics, I could not reach anything focal. Nevertheless, my sincere desire to study these doctrines and comprehend their most important principles was totally dampened, and increased my detachment from the truth. This is because investigating from the books of the rivals of the Shç`ah—the sect adopted by about half of Muslims all over the world—has been totally futile.

My great inclination to seek the truth made me turn my scientific study to the other side, since wisdom must be the object of a believer. I therefore began to investigate the sect

⁽¹⁾ The Twelver Shç`ah are those Shi`çtes acknowledging twelve Imjm as their orthodox leaders and guides whose Imamate (i.e. leadership) has been commissioned by Almighty Allah through many Divine texts.

enjoy the splendor of its statements and the elegance of its style. Furthermore, the book generally combines complete utilization, with brevity and concentration on the points that the author intends to convey to the readers, which is the objective of researchers in the books of the Shc`ah. Such being the case, this book is a comprehensive reference that touches on all extremes of the subject matter in a highly concentrated and brief form.

Through my current writing, I do not mean to praise or honor the author but to treat the truth fairly and reveal it before the readers of this magnificent yet small book, since, in my conception, it contains the primary scientific principles which researchers aim at when they depict the facts and attempt to put them where they must be. In view of that, this book will acquaint the readers with some outstanding viewpoints which the author has presented, then filled it with proofs and points of evidence and embroidered it with arguments and instances from the Holy Qur`in, the Holy Prophet's traditions, or the sayings of the Twelve Imjms, (may Allah's pleasure be upon them).

Undoubtedly, these outstanding views, which I shall provide the readers, will definitely strike the sight of the well-informed readers in the same way as they have caught my eyes, and will attract them as they have attracted me even if the readers will not peruse my introduction to the book. The objectives of researchers and readers are usually the same, because the truth is invariably the same as long as those who communicate with it and build their conceptions on it judge with their intellects and brains, not their hearts and personal whims, and, as long as they act fairly and leave no place for fanaticism in their minds.

One of these questions that attracts a reader is the question

Saba', etc. Such claims and others have been proven false and the Shc`ah are totally innocent of such forgeries, since Shc`ite master scholars have refuted them by methods of criticism and contestation. The best discussion in this respect has been presented by `Alljmah Muammad °usayn °al-Kjshif al-Ghi§i' in his book of '*A¶l al-Shc`ah wa-U¶lulh*' (The Origin and Fundaments of Shc`ism)'.

During my investigations about the resources, fundaments, and original habitats of Shc`ism, I was pleased to meet an old friend and a noble Iraqi publisher, namely Sayyid Murtaqj al-Kashmcrç, carrying some masterpieces of Shc`ite reference books, which he published in Cairo. One of the books that this publisher gifted to me was the aforementioned book of '*A¶l al-Shc`ah wa-U¶lulh*', and the book of '*Abdulljh ibn Saba*' and some parts of '*Wasj'il al-Shc`ah*', as well as other books, which are considered reference books of Shc`ite doctrines and jurisprudence.

Today, Sayyid al-Kashmcrç has given me a new book written by Mr. Muammad Riçj al-Mu`affar, the dean of the College of Jurisprudence in the holy city of al-Najaf, which he has written on the doctrines of the *Imjmiyyah Shc`ah*. Sayyid al-Kashmcrç, having confirmed his intention to print and publish this magnificent book, asked me to write down an introduction and to reveal my plain opinion about the book.

As soon as I skimmed over the book, I was impressed by the author's fine compilation and presentation of the *Imjmiyyah* doctrines as well as his lucid performance in the exposition of his ideas. The instant you taste the flavour of the author's fine presentation of these doctrines through the well-ordered outline of the book and its well-sorted chapters, you will

Furthermore, they make it obligatory upon the Shē`ah to obey the verdicts of a living *mujtahid* directly after the demise of the past *mujtahid* as long as this living one had derived his *ijtihād*—in its origins and branches—from the past *mujtahids*, and initially inherited it from the Imāms (ʿa).

This view and practice of *ijtihād* in Shē`ism is not the main point that has attracted my attention and won my heart; rather, what is new is that *ijtihād* in this manner complies with the developments in life, making Islamic legislation active, vivacious, developing and keeping pace with the laws of time and space. They are devoid of stagnancy that sows dissension between religion and life and between doctrine and scientific progress; the stagnancy that encompasses most of the sects that object to Shē`ism.

In my conception, the big numbers of *Imimiyyah* Shē`ite writings and the steady increase in the library of Shē`ism are attributable to the wide opening of the door of *ijtihād* in Shē`ism.

The second view that arouses the attention of the intellectuals and induces them to follow up the unique features of this sect and delve into its issues are the discussions on the goodness and evilness of things: whether a good thing is good in essence, or by reason of its nature, or, just because Almighty Allah decided it was good. Similarly, they discuss whether an evil thing is evil in its essence, or by virtue of its nature, or just because Almighty Allah has declared it to be thus.

When you read these discussions and follow up what the author has stated about the doctrines of the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah* in this respect, you will notice that they adopt the first opinion about both good and evil. In view of the

of ijtiḥād in the view of the Imimiyyah Shē`ah. The view inherited from Sunnī authorities about *ijtiḥād* is that the door of absolute *ijtiḥād* was closed after the four master scholars of jurisprudence; namely, Abū-ʿanṣfah, Mīlik ibn Anas, al-Shāfiʿī, and Ibn ʿanbal. However, the attempts of *ijtiḥād* that took place after these four *imāms* at the hands of certain jurisprudents were no more than partial or inner *ijtiḥād* that fell under a certain sect or school of Islamic law [*madhhab*]. Such secondary *ijtiḥād* in Sunnism scarcely continued until the fifth century of Hijrah. The *ijtiḥād* of al-Ghazzālī in the fifth century, Abū-ḥāshir al-Salāfi in the sixth century, ʿIzz al-Dīn ibn ʿAbd al-Salām and Ibn Daqq al-ʿūd in the seventh century, Taqī al-Dīn al-Sabakī and Ibn Taymiyyah, the heretic,⁽¹⁾ in the eighth century, and that of ʿAllamah Jalāl al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān ibn Abī-Bakr al-Suyūṣī in the ninth century, were no more than verdicts issued, that had nothing to do with *ijtiḥād*, according to modern scientific methodology. More light has been thrown on this kind of *ijtiḥād* in my book of *ʿTārīkh al-Tashrīʿ al-Islāmī fī Miṣr* (History of Islamic Legislation in Egypt).

As regarding the scholars of the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah*, they have authorized themselves to act upon and practice *ijtiḥād* in all of its aforementioned forms and insist on practicing it resolutely and never closed its door in the face of their scholars throughout the past centuries up to the present day.

⁽¹⁾ A big number of Sunni master scholars have decided Ibn Taymiyyah is a heretic, while Sufis have unanimously agreed on it. Many contests on various aspects of jurisprudence and doctrine used to take place between Taqī al-Dīn al-Sabakī and Ibn Taymiyyah. Refer to my book, *ʿTārīkh al-Tashrīʿ al-Islāmī fī Miṣr* (History of Islamic Legislation in Egypt).

Shē`ism is not as it is defined by the dotard, pro-Sufyīn researchers who introduce it as a purely traditional sect based on religious mores that are full of myths, illusions, and Israeli-made fables, or having derived its principles from `Abduḥ ibn Saba' or the like imaginary personalities of history. Shē`ism—in the view of our modern scientific methodology—is exactly contrary to the claims of its rivals. It is indeed the first Muslim sect that cared very much for both traditions and reason-based principles and could find itself a far-reaching, comprehensive path from among the other Muslim sects. Had it not been that Shē`ism is distinctively characterized by coordination between reason-based principles and traditions, we could not have found such an up-to-date spirit in fields of ijtiḥād and time and space developments in jurisprudence that are not contradictory to the immortal laws of Islam.

Let me now render a third viewpoint that you might believe to be contrary to the rational methodology to which I have referred in the previous paragraph:

The Shē`ah tend to visit the shrines of the Saints and Imjms from the Holy Prophet's Household (the Ahl al-Bayt) and they perform acts of worship (to Almighty Allah) near these shrines, such as offering the obligatory prayers and holding sessions of (religious) knowledge and ceremonies of commemorating the Twelve Imjms. According to some modern Muslim rationalists and experimentalists, such acts are meaningless superstitions. Moreover, some Muslim sects consider such acts to be a kind of atheism and apostasy, especially the followers of Aḥmad ibn `Abd al-°alēm ibn Taymiyah and the followers of his student, Muḥammad ibn `Abd al-Wahhīb al-Najdī, the founder of the Wahhībīyyah sect, as well as other contemporaries which I disdain mentioning.

Shē`ah in general and the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah* in particular, good and evil are subjective and substantial in things and they have not held such characteristics due to Almighty Allah's enjoining or forbidding things. Indeed, this course engages the attentions of many researchers and brings about astonishment after long hours of pondering over and contemplating the question.

As for us, we do not find any astonishment or confusion in the matter, because the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah*, in most of the religious laws, used to act upon the course of reason in the same amount as their acting upon the course of narration (i.e. traditions reported from the ancestors). Hence, their opinion about good and evil of things is the same as the opinion of the master scholars of the Mu`tazilah.

There is one question that I should answer here: Did the Shē`ah act upon the Mu`tazilah or the opposite? The majority of researchers believe that the Shē`ah acted upon the Mu`tazilah in their adoption of the course of reason (i.e. rationalism). However, I can assert that it was the Mu`tazilah who acted upon the Shē`ah, since Shē`ism, as a belief, existed earlier than Mu`tazilism as a belief. Mu`tazilism was born and brought up in the laps of Shē`ism and the heads of Shē`ism existed before the master scholars of Mu`tazilism. I can confirm this as long as we agree on submitting to historical facts and as long as we do not doubt the fact that the advanced party of the Shē`ah began to appear since the age of the Orthodox Caliphs and, indisputably, expanded during the caliphate of Imjm `Alī—(Allah may honor his face). No sooner had the Imjm been assassinated wrongfully to move to the Abode of the Hereafter than the Shē`ah formed a party opposing all the religious and political parties that appeared in Islam.

When the author of this book confers the 'Unity of Attributes' upon the Essence of Almighty Allah, he reminds us of the doctrine of the Mu`tazilah who believe in the unity of Attributes. Owing to this doctrine, they have called themselves 'Ahl al-Taw^hid (People of Monotheism)'. Hence, both the Shc`ah and the Mu`tazilah believe that the Attributes of Almighty Allah are His very Essence. In plain words, they both share the same belief that Almighty Allah is Essentially All-seeing, All-hearing, and so on. They thus do not set any difference between Almighty Allah's Essence and His Attributes—a topic that in most cases confuses intellects and plunges minds into polytheism (ishr^hk). Undoubtedly, such belief is the result of the most wonderful pondering over the meaning of monotheism.

Shc`ism and Mu`tazilism both agree on the meaning of Divine Justice, as it being incumbent upon Almighty Allah to do only the good and always avoid the evil. Both the Shc`ah and the Mu`tazilah have set such a principle as one of their beliefs only for purpose of guarding themselves against attributing wrong to Almighty Allah—Allah forbid!

The Imⁱmiyyah Shc`ah interpret the following holy verse of the Holy Qur'ⁿ, which the Sunnis set as evidence on their belief, with a suitable meaning:

“He cannot be questioned concerning what He does and they shall be questioned. 21/23”

The Shc`ah do not approve the following poetic verse of A^hmad al-Dard^hr, one of the master scholars of Sunnism and Sufism in 12 AH, when he says:

One who claims that a good deed is incumbent upon the Lord has in fact done badly.

The majority of Sunnis believe as their Imⁱmite Shc`ite brethren that neither those Saints and Imⁱms nor anyone else on this globe can provide you with any help nor ever do any harm to you except that which Almighty Allah has decided for you. In plain words, these Saints and Imⁱms have no influence, use, or harm upon somebody but with the permission of Almighty Allah. On the strength of this fact, the visiting of the tombs of these elite people is only aimed at following their examples, patterning after their morals and wonderful feats, and learning lessons from their life accounts. Such acts are allowable in the view of the two sects—Sunnism and Shc`ism.

A fourth viewpoint that has obliged me to express my appreciation and admiration while I am reading this book is the author's competence in explaining the doctrines of the Imⁱmiyyah Shc`ah in such appropriate diction that reveals the Shc`ah's being influenced by the rationalistic methodology. As I have previously mentioned, the reason behind such influence is the Shc`ah's deep penetration into rational sciences as much as transferring the traditions of their Imⁱms. This can in fact serve as another decisive indication of the substantive relationship between Shc`ism and Mu`tazilism and between the master scholars of Shc`ism and those of Mu`tazilism. A reference to my book entitled 'al-^hib ibn `Abbⁱd' can obviously make one notice that master scholars of Shc`ism were the same as those of Mu`tazilism and vice versa except a few exceptions. Such relationships attained the climax of mutual understanding between the two sects in the middle of the fourth century of Hijrah in the personality of al-^hib ibn `Abbⁱd who held the leadership of both Mu`tazilism and Shc`ism in the second half of the aforementioned century during which the Islamic civilization reached its peak.

indeterminism (*mufawwiḥah*) in which a group of the Mu`tazilah, specifically called *al-Qadariyyah*, believe.

The *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* do not agree with the fatalists because to believe that all events are predetermined by Almighty Allah negates man's freewill and freedom to choose originally and makes man like a toy in the hands of fate or like a feather in the wind. If so, then Almighty Allah's calling man to account for evil things that man has done will be exorbitant injustice because man has had no choice or will to stop doing such evil things and had no power to stop falling into sin. Hence, the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* reject such fatality, because it cancels out the attribute of justice that Almighty Allah enjoys. In plain words, to punish man for doing things that he had no power to stop is like tying one's hands and throwing him in a sea and then ordering him not to get wet!

The *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* also disagree with those who believe in absolute power to do things and absolute freedom of choice, because such belief involves that man's deeds and words are absolutely independent from Almighty Allah's will and power. Such belief of the Indeterminists involves that man can create his own deeds without intervention of Almighty Allah's power. Some critics of doctrines have cited traditions censuring those who carry such beliefs. For instance, the Imjm (a) is reported to have said, "The *qadariyyah* (Indeterminists) are the Magians of this nation (of Islam)."

In view of that, we can conclude that the fault of the *jabriyyah* (Fatalists) is that they have canceled the justice of Almighty Allah since their belief involves that He calls man to account for things that He has installed in him without giving him freedom to choose. The fault of the

Nonetheless, I completely excuse them because they, believing in such, have good intentions, which is to avoid attributing wrong to Almighty Allah, even if such wrong is not wrong in reality.

In truth, the Mu`tazilah and the Shç`ah stand together on one side while the Sunnis and Sufis stand on the other, even though each party has its own way of extolling the Perfection of Almighty Allah. In other words, the Mu`tazilah and the Shç`ah have adopted the defense of Divine Justice while the Sunnis and Sufis have adopted to defend Divine Freedom, which says that Almighty Allah has the freedom to do anything—a freedom that is not restricted to anything and is not overpowered by anything. As evidence on such 'Freedom', Sunnis and Sufis quote the following holy verse:

"He cannot be questioned concerning what He does and they shall be questioned. 21/23"

In view of the modern scientific methodology, each of these two opposing parties has its own notion to embrace.

Attached to the above is the author's opinion about the question of Predestination and Divine Decree (*al-qaḍi' wal-qadar*), whether man is or is not free to choose or, as is termed by the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah*, whether man is compelled to do what he does or has the power to manage his life.

Although this issue is strongly related to the philosophy of Divine Justice, which is almost the same between the Shç`ah and the Mu`tazilah, it is noticeable that the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah*, specifically at this point, pursue another path, which is between the two extremes. They neither believe in absolute fatalism (*jabriyyah*) in which fatalists, also called *al-Jahmiyyah*, believe, nor in absolute

incidental thinking, or reaching at the right decision after practicing a wrong one, or having knowledge after ignorance (and all these are impossible for Almighty Allah).

As a matter of fact, the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* are too far above such accusations that stem from the people's misunderstanding of *badj'*, because both the *Shc`ah* and the *Sunnç* have unanimously agreed that the knowledge of Almighty Allah is Eternal and far above changeability, alteration, or thinking, which are among the features of the creatures. The Divine decisions that are exposed to changeability and alteration after determination are those written in the Guarded Tablet (*al-law| al-ma|ff*"), as is confirmed by Almighty Allah:

“Allah erases what He pleases and establishes (what He pleases), and with Him is the basis of the Book.
(13/39)”

To shed more light on the notion of *badj'* as one of the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* doctrines, let us give the following example:

Unhappiness has been decided for X in the beginning of his lifetime, but when X becomes forty years old, he repents before Almighty Allah; so, he is included in the list of the happy people in the Guarded Tablet. In this example, *badj'* stands for erasing X's name from the list of the unhappy ones and including him with the happy ones. The Eternal Knowledge of Almighty Allah includes the entire history of this issue, including the erasing and the establishment of X's name in the list of the happy ones after his repentance. To clarify, Almighty Allah has already known that X would change his behavior and become righteous at that age when Almighty Allah would lead him to repentance.

Indeterminists is that they have canceled out Almighty Allah's power over His creatures. Hence, both the parties are extremely far away from truth.

As the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* take up the opinion of *Imjm Ja`far al-`idiq* (may Allah be pleased with him) who says, “There is neither (absolute) fatalism nor indeterminism; rather, it is an in-between matter,” this means that the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* agree totally with their *Sunnç* brethren whose master scholars adopt the very same view and state that there is an optional part in man; so, man is neither absolutely compelled to do his deeds nor is he the creator of his own deeds. The most eminent scholar who has adopted this view was *Abf`l-°asan al-Ash`arç*. Moreover, *Fakhr al-Dçn al-Rizç* has attempted to “philosophize” the harmonization between fatalism and indeterminism; therefore, he is reported to have said, “Man is compelled intrinsically but enjoys freedom of choice extrinsically.” In fact, this saying is too precise to be ignored by the well-versed scholars and those having full acquaintance with the details of Muslim doctrines.

Let us end this introduction with a fifth viewpoint: the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* believe in *badj'* which explicitly means to do something and then cancel it. They have attributed such *badj'* (changeability) to Almighty Allah and believed in it so firmly that they are reported as saying, “The best ever worship is to believe that Almighty Allah may change an earlier determination.”

Many thinkers have accused the *Shc`ah* of idiocy and feeble-mindedness as they attribute changeability of decisions to Almighty Allah. Changing (or canceling out) an earlier determination is one of the features of creatures—since to decide something and then cancel it may indicate

objectives even if they seem to be different in appearance and methods.

Finally, I do congratulate the author on the success that he has achieved in combining the reason-based principles with the reported traditions while presenting the doctrines of the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah* and on the doctrinal culture that he has offered to the readers with great skill through evidence combined with presentation. This is sufficient for anyone who thinks and ponders.¹

¹ **Dr. ʾimīd ʾafnē Dīwfd:** Professor of Arabic Literature in the College of Languages; Supervisor of Islamic Studies at Aligarh University, India.

The doctrine of *badj'* in which the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah* believe is only the issue of passing judgments according to the apparent aspect of Almighty Allah's deeds towards His creatures as it is required by His Wisdom. In other words, *badj'* is the judgment that is passed on the basis of the apparent deed as is seen by us. By virtue of this definition, the wrong judgment that has been aroused by those who have found fault with the *Shē`ah* concerning their belief in this doctrine has in fact sprung from their false claim that the *Shē`ah* attribute changeability (or *badj'*) to the Eternal Knowledge of Almighty Allah, not to the records of the Guarded Tablet.

The clear-cut presentation of the reality of *badj'* as believed by the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah*, will enable the reader to comprehend the validity of *badj'* as one of the doctrines of the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah* and the profundity of their acceptance of *badj'*. In my opinion, it means that Almighty Allah develops His creatures according to the prerequisites of the environment and time that He creates them in. In fact, *badj'* explains the need for repealing (*njsikh*) and repealed (*mansfkh*) verses in the Holy Qur'an. For example, the forbidding of intoxicants being revealed progressively shows that Almighty Allah wished to treat the crookedness of the human soul step by step, and then rescue it from the drastic chains of habit, and help it achieve righteousness. Had Almighty Allah declared the forbiddance of intoxicants at once, souls would certainly have suffered much hardship. This is the belief of *badj'* that is adopted by the *Imimiyyah Shē`ah*.

I am pleased to inform that I have decided to bring the Muslim sects closer in a single book in which I hope, by the guidance of Almighty Allah, that I will be able to clarify the extent of agreement among these sects in essence and

reviewed this thesis and inserted some corrections and additions as much as my time, that is overcrowded with problems, has permitted me to do. I have also proofread the first edition in order to mark and correct the clerical and non-clerical slips so that I could provide them to the press, hoping that Almighty Allah would guide me to achieve the pursued objective and arrive on the path of righteousness and truth. Verily, Almighty Allah is the best Besought of all.

The Author

Shawwāl 21, 1380 AH

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

It is now ten years since this small book was first published. Throughout these years, I could not find any reason that might prompt me to change my conviction that this book has come to meet the public need for demonstrating and corroborating the doctrines of the *Imimiyyah Shḩ`ah*. Furthermore, I have hit upon matters that encouraged me to republish it, hoping that it had hit its target and fulfilled the purpose of its publishing, which was an attempt to remove the overcast that has come between the two major Muslim sects, the Sunnah and the Shḩ`ah, for ages. It was also an attempt to remove the dust from the scraps of ancient times that concealed the true Islamic doctrines.

I am certain that the idea of approximating the Muslim sects has become an urgent need and a sublime objective for every Muslim individual who eagerly intends good for his religion no matter what his sectarian inclination is and what opinion he carries about the doctrinal leftovers. Of course, in the domain of approximating the Muslim sects, there is nothing better than that the adopters of each belief undertake the mission of clarifying their doctrines and revealing their treasures and facts.

In my conception, this is the soundest way to give the most accurate idea about each sect and the nearest to understanding the most accurate aspects of the notion that each sect carries.

Responding to the desire of my most beloved brother, Sayyid Murtaḩi al-Kashmḩrḩ, the virtuous who had devoted his life to working for the sake of Almighty Allah, I have

review these papers and compile them as a brief thesis in book form with an attached series and publish them. The need arose when many accusations were being leveled at the *Imimiyyah Shḩ`ah*, especially by some modern writers in Egypt and other countries, who were using their pens to wage vehement campaigns against the Shḩ`ah and the doctrines of Shḩ`ism owing to their ignorance, or pretended ignorance of the religious methods of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a). They united their efforts to abuse the truth and publicize ignorance among the readers of their books in order to sow dissension among Muslims, arouse rancor and malice in their hearts, and even set Muslims against each other. A well-informed person cannot neglect the urgent need for approximation between the opposing Muslim sects to bury their rancor, especially in the present times, even if we cannot unite them and bring them under one pen.

Unfortunately, I have to admit that we will never be able to achieve unity through such modest attempts, which we have already tried with writers like Dr. Aḩmad Amḩn and his group who call for disunity. Our demonstration of the doctrines of the *Imimiyyah Shḩ`ah* has not increased anything except stubbornness in such writers and our drawing their attention to the truth has not increased anything in them except obduracy in wrong.

PREAMBLE

All praise and thanks be to Allah, and all peace and blessings be upon Muḩammad, the best of humankind, and upon his Household, the Guides.

As I wrote down these doctrines, my one and only objective was to record a summary of what I had concluded through my understanding of the Muslim doctrines according to the approach of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a).

I have recorded this summary without using proofs and points of evidence or supportive texts reported from the Holy Imims (`a) in most cases, so that a beginner, a student, and a scholar will all avail themselves of it. I have entitled it, `aqi'id al-shḩ`ah (Doctrines of the Shḩ`ah). By *shḩ`ah*, I mean the Twelver *Imimiyyah Shḩ`ah* in particular.

In AH 1363, I recorded these papers in an effort to deliver them as regular lectures in the College of Muntadi al-Nashr for Religious Studies so that I could use them as a preamble for the higher level of researchers of theology.

At that time, I succeeded in delivering many of these papers without preparing them in book form for publishing and public reading. Consequently, I ignored these scattered papers just like many of the lectures and lessons that I used to write down under these circumstances, especially the ones pertaining to doctrines and theology.

This year, however, after the elapse of eight years, the noble and virtuous Mr. Muḩammad Ki'im al-Katabḩ—may Allah keep him under His custody—awakened my desire to

We would not have cared for such people had it not been that we fear that the simple-minded people would be deceived by such offensive attacks and arouse their rancor and malice against their brethren. Whatever the case may be, I only hope that truth-seekers would find useful material in this book and I would thus serve not only Islam but also entire humanity. I have arranged this thesis in an introduction and a number of chapters, seeking success from none save Almighty Allah.

Muḥammad Riḥ al-Muʿaffar

Holy Najaf, Iraq

Jumḍ al-ʾakhirah 27, 1370 AH

PRELUDE:

IJTIHİD AND TAQLİD

He has also shown His dislike for those who follow their personal whims and conjectures.

He, the Exalted, thus says:

.≤ ♥♦9∃# □ω∈) τβθ@(\∈7↑Φτ□ β∈)

They follow naught but an opinion. (6/116)

We believe that it is our intellect that forces us to reflect upon creation to know the Creator of the universe, as also to examine the claims and miracles of anyone who claims prophethood. Such being the case, it will no longer be acceptable to act upon the view of any person, even if that person has the gift of great knowledge or holds an esteemed position.

The Holy Qur'in has urged us to reflect upon creation, stick to science, and acquire knowledge. This urging has come to confirm the natural freedom of thought, which all sages agree upon, draw the attention to the human soul's inclination to knowledge and thinking, and open and direct the mind towards the functions for which it was created.

It is thus impossible for man to neglect the doctrinal affairs or to depend upon his mentors or any other persons concerning his beliefs. It is necessary for man—on account of his natural intelligence that is confirmed by the Holy Qur'in—to investigate, examine, and come to a clear understanding of the fundamentals of his religion (*uẖl al-ḍn*),⁽¹⁾ which are:

⁽¹⁾ Not all the doctrines mentioned in this thesis are among the fundamentals of the religion. In fact, it is not obligatory to believe or even consider many of the doctrines mentioned in this thesis, such as *al-qaḍi' wal-qadar* (predestination and Divine Decree), *al-*

□

1

NECESSITY OF SEEKING KNOWLEDGE

WE BELIEVE that since Almighty Allah has endowed us with the faculty of thinking and gifted us intellects, He has ordered us to ponder over His creation, to note with care the signs of His making, and to meditate on His wisdom and His excellently perfect planning in His signs in the horizons and in ourselves. He has thus said (in the Holy Qur'in):

□ ∈]υρ ⊃ -∃σ]Φψ∃# □ ∈] ∃υZ ≠ Φ ≈ τ □ #υ™ (O ∈ γ □ ∈ □ ↓ ∴ ψ □
| μ ↓ Pρ & \N ↓ γσ9 τ] ♦) τ7oKτ □ 4 ⊙ → Λξμ \N ∈ κ ⊕ f ⊙ Pρ &
.3 □, υτ]: ∃#

We shall show them Our signs on the horizons and in themselves, until it is clear to them that it is the Truth. (41/53)

Almighty Allah has likewise shown His disapproval of those who blindly follow the ways of those who were before them. Hence, He says in the Holy Qur'in:

≠ μ] □ v = τ ⊙ ∃υZ / □ ξ □ / 9ρ & ! ∃τB ↓ (∈ 6 → KτP \ ≡ τ / (#θ™9∃σ%
□ ω \N \ δ™τ ! ∃τ / #υ™ □ χ % ξ. \ θσ9υρρ & 3 ! ∃τPυ™ ! ∃τ / #υ™
∩ ⊃ ⊃ υ τβρ ↓ □ τΓ | γτ □ □ ωυρ ∃Z ↔ / □ ξ ♥ □ χθ (= ⊃) \ τ □

They say: 'No, but we will do what we found our fathers doing.' And, what if their fathers had no understanding of anything! (2/170)

realize the necessity of knowledge, the reflection upon the fundamentals of one's beliefs, and the inference of these beliefs through reason.

- Monotheism (belief that there is only one God),
- Prophethood (belief that Mu'ammad (ﷺ) is the Prophet and messenger of Almighty Allah),
- Imamate (belief in the Divinely commissioned leadership of the Twelve Imims (`a)) and,
- Resurrection (belief that there is another life after death).

One who follows the dictates of his forebears or any other person in these matters has indeed committed a big mistake, strayed off the Right Path, and made all his acts inexcusable.

The above discussion can be summed up in the following two points:

(a) It is obligatory to investigate and understand the fundamentals of our beliefs, since it is unacceptable to depend upon others' beliefs in this respect.

(b) In addition to its being a religious duty, reflection upon the fundamentals of one's belief is a requirement stemming from reason, i.e. such knowledge must not be derived from religious texts, which, however, can act as supportive factors after the exercise of the intellects.

The meaning of reason-based requirement is that we must

raj`ah (The Return), and others. Moreover, it is permissible to act upon others whose opinions are decided as valid, such as the Prophets and the Holy Im̄m, with regard to such doctrines. My belief in many such doctrines is based on the acceptably reported traditions of our Holy Im̄m ('a).

(b) exercise juristic precaution (*i'tiyāṣ*: act according to the views of the jurists so as to act upon the actual ruling) if one is able to do so, or

(c) act upon the verdicts of a well-qualified *mujtahid* who must enjoy decency and rationality in addition to other qualifications. Such a *mujtahid* according to religious traditions:

صَائِنًا لِنَفْسِهِ، حَافِظًا لِدِينِهِ، مُخَالَفًا لِهَوَاهُ، مُطِيعًا لِأَمْرِ
مَوْلَاهُ.

...preserves himself against wrongdoing and worldly pleasures, cares for his religion, opposes the dictates of his desires, and obeys the commands of his Lord.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Qur'an has censured the public of the Jews for they had followed their rabbis on two occasions:

≈τΓ⊕3/9∃# □χθ↓9v= \τ□ □ω τβθ□□≠ιB[& \NΣκ]]≠Bυρ
∩∠∇∪ τβθ□Z↑∂τ□ □ωε) \N\δ |βε)υρ ∞□≠T∃τBρ& Hωε)
|≈τΓ⊕3/9∃# τβθ| 7| ΦJ 3τ□ τ|| ≠%♥#≠φ9 ∴≡ [□υθσ]
| ¯εB #ξ□≈ψδ τβθTM9θ∂)τ□ ♣N\O \Nεκ□≠□ [□ρ∃ε/
∃ΨΨψ9ρO —≠με/ (#ρ⊙□ψI |±υ□≠9 ↔!∃# ≠□Ψ≠⊙
| Mτ6τΓ□2 ∃≤9≠ιB N↓γ♥9 ∴≡ [□υθσ] (Ωξ□≠=σ%
τβθ| 7⊕ΥJ 3τ□ ∃≤9≠ιB N↓γ♥9 ∴≡ [□υρυρ \Nεγ□≠□ [□ρ&
∩∠®∪

And there are among them illiterates who know not the Book but only lies, and they do but conjecture. Woe, then, to those who write the book with their hands and then say: 'This is

□

2

FOLLOWING AN AUTHORITY IN THE SECONDARY RELIGIOUS AFFAIRS

By secondary affairs of the religion, we mean those religious laws which govern our actions after we have rationally accepted the religious faith. In such affairs, it is not obligatory upon us to reflect upon them or apply our personal views. If such secondary affairs are not among the religious fundamentals fixed by decisive texts of religious laws, such as the obligation of offering prayers, fasting, and defraying the poor-rate (*zakit*), then an ordinary person is required to do one of the following three matters:

(a) one may practice *ijtihad* (that is: exert all possible efforts to extract religious laws from the sources of the Islamic code of laws), by engaging oneself in the highest levels of studies of jurisprudence, and then investigating the proofs of the religious laws after qualifying to reach such a stage and becoming a *mujtahid*, or

It follows that if one is not qualified enough to practice *ijtihad*, or to act upon *i'tiyāṣ*, and still refrains from acting upon the verdicts of a well-qualified religious authority, then all of one's acts of worship will be invalid and unacceptable even if one offers prayers, observes fasting, and performs acts of worship one's entire lifetime unless:

(1) Such acts be compatible with the views of the jurisprudent upon whose verdicts one relies after that,⁽¹⁾

be just like the Jews whom Almighty Allah has censured, for they too followed the wicked among their scholars. As for any jurisprudent who keeps himself from sinning, abides by his religion, opposes the dictates of his own desires, and obeys the commands of his Master, then it is allowable for (ordinary) people to follow him...

Reference: *Tafsīr al-Imām al-ʿAskarī* (260 AH), pp. 300. The following reference books have also cited this tradition, yet with little difference in the order of the statements. For instance, some traditions have mentioned the phrase “opposes the dictates of his desires” in another form but the same purport. Refer to: *al-I'tijāj* by al-ʿabrisī (AH 560), 2:263; *Wasīʿil al-Shc`ah* by al-ʿurr al-ʿamilī (AH 1104), 27:131, H. (ʿadeth no.) 33401, H. 20, Chapter: *bib`adam jawīz taqlīd ghayr al-maʿfūm fī mī yaqḥlu biraʿiyh* (Illegality of Following anyone—other than the Infallible—who adopts his own opinions); *Biʿir al-Anwār* by al-Majlisī (died in AH 1111), 2:88, Ch. 14, H. 12.

⁽¹⁾ As a matter of fact, the acts of such a person are acceptable if he knows that they are compatible with reality or the verdicts of the *mujtahid* who is accepted as *marjī` taqlīd* (i.e. a well-qualified jurisprudent whose verdicts are acceptable and can act as directions for the ordinary people). See *Minhaj al-ʿilīn* (Verdicts of the Religious Authority, the Head of the Seminary Sayyid Abf`l-Qīsim al-Mḥawḥ al-Khḥ) 1:7, Question No. 2 in *Taqlīd*.

□

from Allah,' so that they may take for it a small price; therefore, woe to them for what their hands have written and woe to them for what they earn. (2/78-9)

Concerning the two holy verses, a man asked Imām al-ʿidīq (ʿa), “These ordinary Jews had no knowledge of the Book except the amount that they heard from their scholars. They did not have any other way to learn the Book. How is it then that the Qurʾān censures them from their following their scholars and adopting their words? Are these ordinary Jews not exactly like the ordinary people among us (i.e. Muslims) who only follow their scholars? If it is impermissible for these Jews to follow their scholars, then it must be impermissible for our ordinary people to follow their scholars.”

The Imām (ʿa) explained the points of similarity and difference between the ordinary Jews and their scholars and the ordinary Muslims and their scholars. He (ʿa) then added:

وَكَذَلِكَ عَوَامٌ آمَنَّا إِذَا عَرَفُوا مِنْ فُقَهَائِهِمُ الْفُسُقَ الظَّاهِرَ، وَالْعَصِيْبِيَّةَ الشَّدِيدَةَ، وَالتَّكَالُبَ عَلَى خُطَامِ الدُّنْيَا وَحَرَامِهَا، وَإِهْلَاكَ مَنْ يَتَعَصَّبُونَ عَلَيْهِ إِنْ كَانَ لِإِصْلَاحِ أَمْرِهِ مُسْتَحَقًّا، وَبِالنَّزَقِ بِالْبِرِّ وَالْإِحْسَانِ عَلَى مَنْ تَعَصَّبُوا لَهُ، وَإِنْ كَانَ لِلْإِدْلَالِ وَالْإِهَانَةِ مُسْتَحَقًّا. فَمَنْ قَلَدَ مِنْ عَوَامِنَا مِثْلَ هَؤُلَاءِ الْفُقَهَاءِ فَهُمْ مِثْلُ الْيَهُودِ الَّذِينَ ذَمَّهُمُ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى بِالتَّقْلِيدِ لِفُسَقَاةٍ عُلَمَائِهِمْ. فَأَمَّا مَنْ كَانَ مِنَ الْفُقَهَاءِ صَائِنًا لِنَفْسِهِ، حَافِظًا لِدِينِهِ، مُخَالِفًا لِهَوَاهُ، مُطِيعًا لِأَمْرِ مَوْلَاهُ، فَلِلْعَوَامِ أَنْ يُقَلِّدُوهُ.

It is the duty of ordinary Muslims not to follow scholars that demonstrate apparent transgression, intense fanaticism and mad contention for the degrading and illegal pleasures of this world. They should be wary of those scholars who humiliate the one with whom they do not agree when he deserves guidance towards the truth, and they treat the one with whom they agree with leniency, kindness and favor even when he deserves to be humiliated and disgraced. If (ordinary) people of our nation follow such (irreligious)jurisprudents, they will

□

and

(2) previous acts were intended to seek nearness to Almighty Allah (*qurbah*).

Commenting on this topic, Professor ^ʿyatullīh al-Kharrīzī says, “Even if the religious duties of an ordinary person correspond to what is religiously required by chance and these deeds do not correspond to the verdicts of the one whom he follows, then his deeds are decided as valid. Such being the case, the opinion of a mujtahid loses its authority, because it is no more than a way that leads to the validity of deeds.” See *Bidʿiyat al-Maʿrif al-Ilḥiyyah fī Sharḥ ʿAqīd al-Imḥiyyah* by al-Kharrīzī (a contemporary writer) 1:18 (footnote No. 1).

The deeds of an ordinary person are also decided as valid when he is sure that his performance of that deed or abandonment of another will not lead to infringing a religious duty. Such certainty may come from the person’s attainment of sentimental knowledge or certainty that stems from reason-based resources, such as common sense or information of a well-versed person. See Minhāj al-ʿilīn (Verdicts of the Grand ʿyatullīh Sayyid ʿAlī al-Sḥstīn) 1:9.

all Muslims in all ages are under the obligation of practicing *ijtihad*, but should one of them become proficient in *ijtihad* thus becoming a well-qualified *mujtahid*, all Muslims will be acquitted from this responsibility and they will then act upon his verdicts and refer to him in the secondary affairs of religion.

In all ages, Muslims must consider their religious duty to choose an authority from among themselves. If they find a volunteer who has gained the degree of *ijtihad*, which cannot be gained except by those who have good fortune, and who is qualified enough to be followed by the others, they may then accept him as their religious authority and turn to him in getting knowledge of the laws of their religion.

If they fail to find one enjoying such a supreme degree of knowledge, then they are religiously required to attain the rank of *ijtihad* individually or to nominate one from among them to obtain this rank when it is impossible or unfeasible for all to devote themselves to gaining this rank.

It is impermissible for them to act upon the verdicts of a deceased *mujtahid*.

Ijtihad can be defined as the examination of the sources of the *shar`ah* (i.e. the religious code of Islamic laws) to reach knowledge of the secondary laws which the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) has conveyed to his nation. Of course, these laws are unalterable and cannot be changed when times or conditions change. It has thus been declared:

their people when they come back to them that they may be cautious. (9/122)”

3

IJTIHID

We believe that *ijtihad* in secondary matters of religion is a collective duty (*wajib kifi'`*)⁽¹⁾ in the ages of occultation (of Imim al-Mahd—may Almighty Allah hasten his reappearance).⁽²⁾ In other words,

⁽¹⁾ Religious duties are either collective (*kifi'`*), that is if all Muslims abstain from performing them, all of them will have committed a sin, but if only one of them carries them out, then the others will be acquitted from their religious responsibility, such as the duty of enjoining the right and forbidding the evil. The other category of religious duties is the individual (*ayn`*) one, that is each Muslim is required to carry it out individually, such as offering of the obligatory prayers, observance of fasting in the month of Ramaḡn, and the like. [translator]

⁽²⁾ This is based on Almighty Allah's saying in the Holy Qur'an:

﴿لَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^١ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٢ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٣ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٤ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٥ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٦ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٧ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٨ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^٩ ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٢٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٣٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٤٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٥٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٦٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٧٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٨٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩١} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٢} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٣} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٤} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٥} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٦} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٧} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٨} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{٩٩} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾ ^{١٠٠} ﴿وَلَا تَجِدُ أُمَّةَ إِلَّا بِحَقِّ وَحْيٍ﴾

“Why should not then a company from every party from among them go forth that they may apply themselves to obtain understanding in religion, and that they may warn

□

everyone can attain except one who works painstakingly and makes every possible effort by devoting himself to attaining this position.

حَلَالٌ مُّحَمَّدٌ حَلَالٌ إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ، وَحَرَامُهُ حَرَامٌ إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ.

What Muḥammad (ʿa) has made ḥalāl (legal) will be ḥalāl until the Day of Judgment, and what he has made ḥarām (forbidden) will be ḥarām until the Day of Judgment.”⁽¹⁾

The sources for religious laws are the Holy Qurʾān, the Holy Sunnah (words, deeds, and confirmations of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and the Holy Imams (ʿa)), consensus (*ijmāʿ*) and reasoning (*ʿaql*). Details of these sources are mentioned in the texts of *uṣūl al-fiqh* (fundamentals of jurisprudence).

To attain the position of a *mujtahid* requires many years of study and acquiring various branches of science that not

⁽¹⁾ *Baṣīr al-Darajāt al-Kubrī* by al-ʿaffār (AH 290), pp. 168, H. 7, S. 13. This ḥadīth is reported from Imām al-ʿidqī (ʿa).

In (the book of) *al-Kifā* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 1:58 Section: *ḥab al-bidaʿ wal-raʾy wal-maqīyās* (Heresies, Opinionism, and Analogy), H. 19, this ḥadīth is reported in the following form:

حَلَالٌ مُّحَمَّدٌ حَلَالٌ أَبَدًا إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ، وَحَرَامُهُ حَرَامٌ أَبَدًا إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ، لَا يَكُونُ غَيْرُهُ وَلَا يَجِيءُ غَيْرُهُ.

What was deemed ḥalāl (lawful) by Muḥammad will remain ḥalāl forever up to the Day of Resurrection, and what was deemed ḥarām (unlawful) by Muḥammad will remain ḥarām forever up to the Day of Resurrection. Nothing will replace or change it.

The ḥadīth has been also reported in a third form in *al-Kifā* by al-Kulaynī 2:17-18, Section: *ḥab al-Sharʿiyyāt* (Religious Laws), H. 2; *al-Maʿīsin* by al-Barqī (AH 274 or 280), 1:420, H. 963/365; and *Kashf al-Ghummaḥ fī Maʿrifat al-ʿImmah* by al-Arbalī (AH 693), 2:414.

inheritance, to summon one another to the judgment of the ruling authority or the governmental judges.

The Imim ('a) answered, "Verily, to go for judgment to such parties, whether in legal or illegal issue, is to resort for judgment to false deities (*§igh£t*). Whatever is decided for any party by such judges is considered illegal, even if it was the right of a party. This is because such party has taken it from the judgment of the illegal judge. In fact, Almighty Allah has ordered such false deities to be abjured. He has thus said (in the Holy Qur'in): *'Have you not seen those who pretend that they believe in that which is revealed to you and that which was revealed before you, how they would go for judgment in their disputes to false deities when they had been ordered to abjure them? Satan would mislead them far astray. (4/60)'*"

`Amr asked, "Then, what must such parties do instead?"

The Imim ('a) replied, "They must search for one from among themselves (i.e. followers of the Ahl al-Bayt ('a)) who has been reporting our traditions, is acquainted with what is deemed legal and what is deemed illegal by us, and is familiar with the laws decided by us. They must then accept him as arbitrator, because I have appointed him as the judge among you. If he then issues a judgment compatible to our laws but a party (of a dispute) does not submit to it, then this party has in fact belittled Almighty Allah's judgment and has rejected us. Verily, whoever rejects us has in reality made an objection to the authority of Almighty Allah, and this is tantamount to polytheism (*shirk*)."

This *ad£th* can be found in the following reference books: *al-Kif£* by al-Kulayn£ (AH 329), 1:67, H. 10, Section: *bjb Ikhtilif al-°ad£th* (Discrepancy of °ad£th); 7:412, H. 5, Section: *bjb kar£hiyyat al-Irtif£ ilj Qu£jt al-Jawr* (Discommendation of Submitting before an Unjust Judge); *Tahdh£b al-A£kim* by Shaykh al-££s£ (AH 460), 6:218, H. 514, Section: *kitjb al-Qa£iyj wal-*

□

4

THE MUJTAHID

WE BELIEVE that a well-qualified *mujtahid* is a representative of the Imim⁽¹⁾ during the age of occultation. He is also an absolute ruler and authority over Muslims and he enjoys the same power that is enjoyed by the Imim concerning issuance of judgments and administration among the people.

Hence, to reject such a well-qualified *mujtahid* is to reject the Imim, and to reject the Imim is to reject Almighty Allah, which does not differ from polytheism, as is declared in a tradition reported from Imim Ja`far al-`idiq (`a).⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ By *Imim*, we mean the twelfth Imim in the sequence of the Imim of the Ahl al-Bayt ('a), namely Imim al-Mahd£—may Allah hasten his reappearance—who disappeared from sight during the `Abbsid reign in AH 329 under certain circumstances and for a Divine logic. He is still expecting a Divine Command to reappear and establish the global government of justice. The author of this book will shed more light on this issue later on.

⁽²⁾ Mu'ammad ibn Ya'yj has reported on the authority of Mu'ammad ibn al-°usayn on the authority of Mu'ammad ibn `«sj on the authority of `afw£n ibn Ya'yj on the authority of D£w£d ibn al-°u£ayn that `Amr ibn °an`alah said:

I asked Imim Ja`far al-`idiq ('a) whether it is or it is not acceptable for two Shi`£te men, who had disputed in an issue of debt or

□

general authority has been given to the well-qualified *mujtahids* by the Imim (`a) so that they will act as representatives of the Imim (`a) when the latter is absent.

In view of that, a well-qualified *mujtahid* is not only a competent authority for issuing verdicts; but he also enjoys general authority (i.e. in all aspects of life) over people. People should therefore turn to him in judicature, passing of judgments, and ruling—affairs that are relegated to him exclusively—since none is allowed to hold these positions without permission of the well-qualified *mujtahid*. Similarly, it is impermissible to carry out the religious punishments and provisions (*'ud£d*) except by the permission of such supreme authority.

Moreover, in issues pertaining to finance, it is obligatory to refer to the well-qualified *mujtahid* as long as such financial items are the Imim's rights and responsibilities. Such

A'kjm (Issues and Laws), No. 6 Chapter: *bjb man ilayhi al-ukm wa aqsjm al-quqit wal-muft£n* (The Authorized for Judgment and the Kinds of Judges and Muftis). S. 87; 6:302, H. 845, H. 52, Section: *bjb min al-ziydjt f£ al-qaqiyj wal-a'kjm* (Additions in Issues and Judgments), S. 92; *al-I'tijij* by al-±abris£ (AH 560), 2:106; *'Awjl£ al-La'jl£* by al-I'si'£ (app. AH 880), 3:192, H. 37, Section: *bjb al-jihjd* (Jihjd); 4:134, H. 231, Section: *bjb al-a'jd£th al-muta'alliqatu bil-`ilmi wa-ahlih£ wa 'jmil£hi* (Traditions Concerning Knowledge, its People, and its Bearers); *Was'il al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-`amil£ (AH 1104), 1:43, H. 51, H. 12, Section: *bjb thub£t al-kufr wal-irtidjd biju'£di ba'qi al-£ar£riyyjt wa ghayrihj mimmj taq£mu al-ujjatu f£hi binaqli al-thuqjt* (Proving Atheism and Apostasy Due to Denial of the Essential Beliefs (of the Religion) and Other Matters Upon Which There Are Proofs Confirmed by Reports of Trustworthy Narrators); 27:137, H. 33416, H. 1, Section: *bjb wuj£b al-ruj£' f£ al-qaqi' wal-fatwj ilj ruwj£t al-£ad£th min al-shc`ah* (The Obligation of Reference to Shi`£te Narrators of £ad£th in Issues of Judicature and Verdicts).

Our Doctrines concerning:

- **Almighty Allah**
- **Divine Unity**
- **Attributes of Almighty Allah**
- **Divine Justice**
- **Commands of Almighty Allah**
- **Predetermination and Divine Decree**
- **Bad;**
- **Religious Ordinances**

PART ONE
**DOCTRINES PERTAINING
TO DIVINITY**

and made thing, just like us, as has been expressed by Imim Muḥammad al-Biqir (‘a). How sagacious a description and how accurate and profoundly scientific it is.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *Biḥār al-Anwār* by al-Majlis (AH 1111), 66:293; *Sharḥ Uṣṣalāḥ al-Kifī* by al-Ḥilli al-Mizdarīn (AH 1081), 3:225 who has reported Imim Muḥammad al-Biqir (‘a) as saying:

كُلُّ مَا مَيَّزْتُمُوهُ بِأَوْهَامِكُمْ فِي أَدَقِّ مَعَانِيهِ مَخْلُوقٌ مَصْنُوعٌ مِثْلَكُمْ،
مَرْدُودٌ إِلَيْكُمْ.

Everything that you can discern with your imaginations in its finest significance must be created and made, just like you, and it is relegated to you.

Imim al-Ḥidq (‘a) is reported to have said:

مَنْ عَبَدَ اللَّهَ بِالتَّوَهُّمِ فَقَدْ كَفَرَ، وَمَنْ عَبَدَ الْإِسْمَ دُونَ الْمَعْنَى فَقَدْ
كَفَرَ، وَمَنْ عَبَدَ الْإِسْمَ وَالْمَعْنَى فَقَدْ أَشْرَكَ، وَمَنْ عَبَدَ الْمَعْنَى
بِإِقَاعِ الْأَسْمَاءِ عَلَيْهِ بِصِفَاتِهِ الَّتِي وَصَفَ بِهَا نَفْسَهُ فَعَقَدَ عَلَيْهَا قَلْبَهُ
وَنَاطَقَ بِهَا لِسَانَهُ فِي سَرَائِرِهِ وَعَلَانِيَتِهِ فَأُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ.

He who worships Almighty Allah by means of imagination has in fact disbelieved in Him. He who worships the Name devoid of the meaning has also disbelieved in Him. He who worships the meaning by using the Names to express the Attributes that He (i.e. the Exalted Lord) has used for Himself, believes in them with his heart, and utters them with his tongue in public and in secret—he is the true believer.

See *al-Kifī* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 1:87, H. 1, Section: *bāb al-maḥḥad* (The Worshipped Lord); *al-Tawḥīd* by Shaykh al-ʿadīq (AH 381), pp. 220, H. 12, Section No. 29: *bāb asmiʿ allāhi taʿālā* (The Attributes of Almighty Allah); *al-Fuṣṣal al-Muhimmah fī Uṣṣalāḥ al-ʿImmah* by al-ʿurr al-ʿamīlī (AH 1104), 1:63, H. 1,2 Section No. 15, Sequence, 95-96.

5

ALMIGHTY ALLAH

WE BELIEVE that Almighty Allah is One: One and Only; there is nothing whatever like Him; Eternal: having neither beginning nor end. He is thus the First of all things and the Last of all things. He is All-knowing, All-wise, All-just, Ever-living, All-powerful, Self-sufficient, All-hearing, and All-seeing.

Characteristics that are attributed to His creatures are not attributable to Him. He is neither body, nor form, nor essence, nor incident, and he has neither heaviness, nor lightness, nor movement, nor motionlessness, nor place, nor time. And no one can point to Him.

None is equal to Him and none can match Him. He has no opposite. He has no wife, no child, and no partner; and there is none comparable to Him. Vision does not perceive Him, yet He perceives all visions.

Anyone who renders Him as human in form—such as those who claim that the Lord has a face, a hand, or an eye, or that He descends to the lowest sky, or that He will appear to the inhabitants of Paradise like a moon, or any similar anthropomorphic claim—all such persons are of the same rank of those who disbelieve in Almighty Allah and who ignore the reality of the Creator Who is too far above any imperfection. In fact, any form that we can imagine with our senses in its most accurate meaning must be a created

Similarly, one who believes that Almighty Allah will be seen by His creatures on the Day of Judgment is an unbeliever, even though one may deny that the Lord has corporeality. The bearers of such false claims have in fact limited their minds to the outer meanings of the words of the Holy Qur'in or *'adath* and denied the real meaning; hence, they lack the capacity of interpreting even the extrinsic meanings as exactly as required by sound reflection, evidence, and rules of metaphor and figuration.

laws of Islam, such ostentatious persons are subject to the same rulings pertaining to those who worship idols, without any difference.

The visiting of graves and holding of ceremonies on the death anniversaries of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and Imims (‘a), cannot be considered as acts seeking nearness to other than Almighty Allah, as assumed by those who intend to attack the rites of the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah* owing to their inadvertence of the reality of such rites. In fact, such rites are acts seeking nearness to Almighty Allah through righteous acts, exactly like seeking nearness to Him through visiting the sick, participating in funeral ceremonies, visiting one’s brethren-in-faith, and helping the poor.

For example, to visit a sick person is a good act in itself through which a believer seeks nearness to Almighty Allah. It is thus not an act aimed at seeking nearness to the sick person to be considered worshipping other than Almighty Allah or associating others in worshipping Him. The same thing is applicable to the other aforementioned righteous acts.

Through Muslim jurisprudence, it is easy to prove that visiting the graves and holding of mourning ceremonies on the anniversaries of the deaths of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and Imims (‘a) are within the righteous acts recommended by the Islamic code of laws. However, to prove it requires an independent discussion, which is not suitable in this thesis.

In brief, these actions are neither expressions of polytheism, as some people may suppose, nor are they aimed at worshipping the Imims (‘a); rather, the purpose behind the performance of such rites is only to revive the memory of these Imims and to renew reference to them

6

DIVINE UNITY (TAWHĪD)

WE BELIEVE that it is obligatory to believe in the Unity of Almighty Allah (tawhīd) from all aspects; that is to say, in the same way as we must, firstly, believe in the Unity of Almighty Allah’s Essence and that He is necessarily Existent, we must, secondly, believe in the Unity of His Attributes, that is to believe that Almighty Allah’s Attributes are the same as His Essence. More light will be shed on this topic later on.

We must believe that there is nothing like Him in His Essential Attributes; so, Almighty Allah is unparalleled in Knowledge and Power; He is matchless in creation and providing of sustenance; and He is peerless in all items of perfection.

Thirdly, it is obligatory to believe in the Unity of Almighty Allah in worship; it is therefore absolutely unacceptable to worship anyone or anything save Him by any form of worship and it is unacceptable to associate anyone or anything to Him through any sort of worship, be it obligatory or recommended, or be it in offering of prayers or in any other act of worship.

One who ascribes a partner to Him in worship has committed polytheism, just like one who pretends to worship Him while in fact one’s intention is to seek nearness to someone or something other than Him. According to the

and also to venerate the rites of Almighty Allah through them. In this respect, Almighty Allah says in the Holy Qur'in:

↔!E# υ□υ∞↓≈ψ\ξ♥\N≠φ∅ψ\◎□ τBυρ ψ7≠9♦σ□
 ∩Cϕυ ∋>θ\=∅)/9E# □υθ/σ? ¯B ∃ψγ↓P∈*σ]

*And whoever venerates the rites of the religion; that
 is of the godliness of their hearts. (22/32)*

It has been demonstrated in the Islamic code of law that these acts are recommended; hence, if a person offers them with the intention of seeking nearness to Almighty Allah and asking for His pleasure, then he will deserve the promised rewards and gifts.

literal attribute, which is Self-Subsistence for His creatures. From this single attribute, several attributes can be produced depending upon the variety in effects and signs.

As for the attributes of non-entity, which are also called the attributes of Majesty, all of them belong to one non-entity, which is the dispossession of possibility, which requires, and also means, that corporeality, form, movement, motionlessness, heaviness, lightness, and all similar features are not attributed to Almighty Allah. In other words, deficiencies cannot be attributed to Him.

As a matter of fact, the negation of these possibilities is referable to the Necessity of His Essence, which is one of His positive Attributes of perfection. So, the negative attributes of Majesty ultimately go back to the positive attributes of perfection. Almighty Allah is One in all aspects; there is no numeration in His Divine existence, and there is nothing compound in the reality of the One, Self-Independent Lord.

It is not surprising that some people argue that Almighty Allah's positive attributes are referable to His negative attributes, because they have failed to realize the fact that Almighty Allah's attributes are the same as His Essence. Accordingly, they have imagined that the positive attributes are ascribed to negation so that they can assuredly claim that His Essence is indivisibly One. Nevertheless, they have fallen in a worse matter when they made the Divine essence—which is the selfsame existence, the pure Existence, and the free from any defect or impossibility—the very nonexistence and pure negation. May Allah save us

7

ATTRIBUTES OF ALMIGHTY ALLAH

WE BELIEVE that Almighty Allah's positive, literal, and perfective attributes, which we call the attributes of beauty and perfection—such as Omniscience, Omnipotence, Self-sufficiency, Volition, and Ever-livingness—are identical with His Essence and are not added to Him. Hence, the existence of these Attributes is the same as the existence of His essence. For instance, Almighty Allah's Omnipotence with respect to His existence is the same as His Ever-livingness, and His Ever-livingness is as same as His Existence. In plain words, Almighty Allah is Omnipotent since He is Eternal, and He is Eternal since He is Omnipotent. Hence, there is no difference between His attributes and His existence. The same thing can be said about His other Attribute of Perfection.

Although these attributes hold different meanings and notions, their realities and existence are the same. If these attributes were different in existence—and then they were supposedly eternal and necessary in existence just like His essence—then the Necessary Self-Existent would be plural and the actual Divine Unity would be blunted. Of course, this is in violation of the doctrine of monotheism.

All the positive, relative (i.e. supplementary) attributes—such as the attributes of being Creator, Sustainer, Uncreated, and the First Cause—in reality belong to one

560), 1:296; *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balighah* by Ibn Abī l-ʿadūd (AH 656), 1:72; *Biḥār al-Anwār* by al-Majlisī (AH 1111), 4:247, 57:176, 74:300, 96:263.

from the slips of illusion and blunders of the pen.

It is also not surprising that some others argue that Almighty Allah's positive attributes are added to His Essence; they have therefore accepted the plurality of the Eternal Being or the existence of partners to the Necessary Self-Existent Lord, or they have claimed that the Lord is compound. Almighty Allah is too Exalted for such false claims.

Our master, Imām `Alī Amīr al-Mu'minīn (`a) says:

وَكَمَالُ الْإِخْلَاصِ لَهُ نَقْيُ الصِّفَاتِ عَنْهُ، لِشَهَادَةِ كُلِّ صِفَةٍ أَنَّهَا غَيْرُ الْمَوْصُوفِ، وَشَهَادَةِ كُلِّ مَوْصُوفٍ أَنَّهُ غَيْرُ الصِّفَةِ، فَمَنْ وَصَفَ اللَّهَ سُبْحَانَهُ فَقَدْ قَرَنَهُ، وَمَنْ قَرَنَهُ فَقَدْ تَنَاهَى، وَمَنْ تَنَاهَى فَقَدْ جَزَّأَهُ، وَمَنْ جَزَّأَهُ فَقَدْ جَهَّلَهُ.

The perfection of His purity is to deny His attributes, because every attribute is a proof that it is different from that to which it is attributed, and everything to which something is attributed is different from the attribute. Thus, whoever attaches attributes to Allah recognizes His like, and whoever recognizes His like regards Him as two, and whoever regards Him as two recognizes parts for Him, and whoever recognizes parts for Him has mistaken Him.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ *Nahj al-Balighah* (Sermons of Imām `Alī Amīr al-Mu'minīn), compiled by al-Sharḥ al-Raḥī (AH 406); Sermon No. 1 (Creation of Earth and Sky and Birth of Adam); *al-Iṭijāj* by al-ʿAbrī (AH

it is evil!

(2) He knows about the reality of the matter, but He has been compelled to do it and unable to desist from it!

(3) He knows about its reality and he is not compelled to do it, yet He needs to do it! Or

(4) He knows about its reality, and he is not compelled to do it, and he does not need it; so, His deed will be on account of whim, vainness, and pastime!

All these probabilities are impossible for Almighty Allah, since they ascribe imperfection to Him, while He is in reality the Absolute Perfect. In view of that, we must judge that Almighty Allah is too Exalted to wrong anyone or to do any evil deed.

Some Muslims, however, have argued that Almighty Allah—Sacred be His Names—may do evil, may punish the obedient to Him, may allow the disobedient and even the disbelievers to enter Paradise, may take a soul beyond its scope, and may impose upon His servants to do what they have no power to do! In spite of this, He may punish them for they did not do what they have no power to do! Such Muslims have also argued that Almighty Allah may treat unjustly, do wrong, lie, and deceive; and that He may do unwise, aimless, useless, and worthless things! To justify such corrupt arguments, they have cited the following holy verse as pretext:

□χθ\=τ↔ ∫Υ| □ \N\δυρ ©≡ψ\|□τ□ ∃↑HξΣ ©≡τ↔ ∫Υ| □ □ω
 ∩ϕCU

He cannot be questioned concerning what He does and they shall be questioned. (21/23)

It is the lord of the bearers of such corrupt beliefs who is unjust, wrongful, foolish or reckless; a deceiver, evildoer,

8

DIVINE JUSTICE

WE BELIEVE that one of Almighty Allah's positive Attributes of Perfection is that He is absolutely Just and is never unjust. He never wrongs anyone through His acts and never treats anyone unfairly through His judgments. He rewards His obedient servants and has the right to punish the disobedient. He never takes His servants beyond their scopes and never punishes them beyond the limits of what they deserve.

We also believe that He, the Exalted, does not omit the good deed when there is no better deed interfering in the matter and He does not do any evil deed because He, the Exalted, has the power to shun the evil, since He has full acquaintance with the goodness and the evilness of an act. Thus, goodness of good things does not cause Him harm so that He is required to shun it nor is He in need of evilness so that He is required to do it.

In spite of all this, Almighty Allah is All-wise; His deeds must be compatible with wisdom and the most perfect system.

Now, suppose that He treats a creature with cruelty or commits an evil deed—He is too Exalted to be such—then it must be because of one of four things:

(1) He is ignorant of the matter and He does not know that

and one shunning the good. Glory is to Almighty Allah, and High and Great is He beyond measure above all that they say!

Such false arguments are nothing but clear-cut disbelief.

As for Almighty Allah, He has stated in the Holy Qur'in:

$\neg \exists \tau \in \mathcal{U} \setminus \{ \tau \} \mid \tau \models \varphi$

Allah does not desire injustice for His servants. (40/31)

$\neg \exists \tau \in \mathcal{U} \mid \tau \models \varphi$

Allah does not love corruption. (2/205)

$\neg \exists \tau \in \mathcal{U} \mid \tau \models \varphi$

We did not create the heavens and the earth and all that is between them in jest. (21/16)

$\neg \exists \tau \in \mathcal{U} \mid \tau \models \varphi$

I have not created the jinn and mankind except to serve Me. (51/56)

$\neg \exists \tau \in \mathcal{U} \mid \tau \models \varphi$

Our Lord! You have not created this in vain! Glory be to You! Save us then from the chastisement of the Fire. (3/191)

The Holy Qur'in is full of verses denoting the same facts.

Almighty Allah) are usually unaware of most of their interests. They also do not know how to attain prosperity in this world and the next. They have no knowledge of much of that which causes them harm and loss. Almighty Allah is indeed All-compassionate and All-merciful in His Essence; and these two attributes are parts of His Absolute Perfection, which is His selfsame Essence and which can never be separated from Him.

His servants' disobedience to Him and non-compliance with His commands and warnings do not cancel out His kindness and mercy.

9

RELIGIOUS DUTIES

WE BELIEVE that Almighty Allah does not command His servants with any duty before He establishes evidence on them concerning that duty. Likewise, He never commands them to do something that is beyond their scope or capability, because it would be unfair to impose upon a weak or an ignorant person, who has not shown shortcoming in seeking of knowledge, a duty that is beyond his/her scope.

As for the ignorant, who have made short the seeking of knowledge of religious laws and duties, they are definitely responsible in the view of Almighty Allah Who will punish them for their failure to do what ought to have been done. Actually, each one is required to learn the amount that one needs from religious laws.

We also believe that it is unavoidable for Almighty Allah to commission His servants to carry out certain duties and legislate for them a body of laws that achieve success and prosperity for them, guide them toward the paths of goodness and permanent happiness, and show them the ways of probity. Through such duties and laws, Almighty Allah restrains them from whatever brings about corruption, harm, and a terrible end even if He already knows that they would not obey Him, because such do's and don'ts stem from His kindness and mercy to them. The servants (of

Cause of all things.

Of course, those who adopt such a view ascribe injustice to Almighty Allah. He is far above such false ascription.

Another sect, the *Mufawwiḥah* (Indeterminists), argue that Almighty Allah has given absolute authority to the creatures to do whatever they do and removed His act and determination from their acts. This is because these indeterminists believe that to ascribe all actions to Almighty Allah results in ascribing imperfection to Him; and all existent beings have their own causes even though all these causes stem from the Creator of all causes and the First Cause; namely, Almighty Allah.

As a matter of fact, those who adopt this conception have cancelled out the full power of Almighty Allah over all things and have decided a partner to Him in creation!

He has then established knowledge for each and every explanation. He has then established a speaking door to each and every item of knowledge. However, some will recognize that door while others will reject it. These doors are the Messenger of Allah and we."

See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaynç, 1:183, Section: *bib ma`rifat al-imim wa`l-radd ilayhi* (Recognition of the Imim and Relegation to Him), H.7; *Mukhtaḩar Baḩi`ir al-Darajit* by al-°asan ibn Sulaymın al-°illç, pp. 57; *al-Fuḩl al-Muhimmah fç Uḩl al-A`immah* by al-°urr al-°milç, 1:486. [translator]

10

PREDETERMINATION AND DIVINE DECREE⁽¹⁾

THE SECT OF *Mujabbirah* (fatalists) argue that Almighty Allah is entirely responsible for the actions of His creatures; it is therefore He Who forces them to do evil and yet punishes them for it; and He forces others to be obedient to Him and yet rewards them for it! They have also maintained that the actions of His creatures are in reality His actions, but these actions are attributed to them figuratively because they are the locus of His activity. The reason for this view is that the *Mujabbirah* have denied the natural causation of things (that take place)⁽²⁾ and that it is Almighty Allah Who is the one and only

⁽¹⁾ For more details about this topic, the reader is advised to refer to the following books: *al-Insın wa`l-Qaḩj` wa`l-Qadar* (Man, Predetermination, and Divine Decree) by Murtaḩi al-Muṣahharç; translated from Farsi into Arabic by Muḩammad `Alç al-Taskhçrç; Beirut: Dır al-Ta`ıruf Publishers, Second Edition, 1420 AH/1981; *al-Mukhtır fç al-Jabr wa`l-Ikhtiyır* by Muḩammad `Alç al-ıdiqç al-°usaynç; a commentary on a thesis by Sayyid `Alç al-Fınç; Najaf Press, AH 1375.

⁽²⁾ Imim Ja`far al-ıdiq ('a) is reported to have said, "*Almighty Allah has insisted on making all affairs take place due to (natural) causes. He has thus established causes for each and every affair. He has then established an explanation for each and every cause.*"

What a marvelous significance this saying holds! How exact its meaning is!

To sum it up, this 'Middle Course' means that our deeds are, on one hand, ours in reality, because we are their natural causes and they are under our power and choice and, on the other hand, they are under the authority and within the absolute power of Almighty Allah, because He is the grantor of existence to all things. Almighty Allah has not forced us to do these deeds; therefore, He will not wrong us when He punishes us for the acts of disobedience to Him that we committed as long as we had the power and choice to avoid doing what we did. Similarly, He has not entrusted us with the making of our deeds; therefore, we are not out of His absolute power and authority. Indeed, creation, judgment, and management of all affairs are His; and He has full power over all things and He encompasses all things.

Anyhow, we believe that predetermination (*qaḥi'*) and Divine decree (*qadar*) are within the secrets of Almighty Allah. One must thus recognize them as suitably as possible

Ansariyan Publications, 2 volumes, 2006)); *al-I'tiqāḍ* by Shaykh al-Mufḍd (AH 413), pp. 29, Section: *bjb al-i'tiqāḍ fī nāfy al-jabr wa'l-tafwḍ*; *Rawḍat al-Wj'īḥ* by al-Naysībī (AH 508), pp. 38; *al-I'tijāj* by al-ḥabris (AH 560), 2:198, 253.

The same *ḥadīth* has been reported from Imīm Ḥalī Amīr al-Mu'minīn ('a) as is mentioned in *Nahj al-Sa'jdah* by al-Ma'mūdī (contemporary), 1:483 and *Kanz al-'Ummīl* by al-Muttaqī al-Hindī (AH 974), 1:349. See also *Fatḥ al-Bjīr Sharḥ al-Bukhārī* by Ibn 'ajar al-'Asqalīnī (AH 852), 13:410 and *Fayḥ al-Qaḍr Sharḥ al-Jamī' al-'aghḥr* by al-Mannīwī (AH 1331), 1:540.

With reference to this point, we follow what we have received from our Immaculate Imims ('a) who have decided that the answer is in reality between the two extremes and our belief is a middle view between fatalism and indeterminism. Our belief is not accepted by both groups of theologians, as some neglect the reality of the matter while others go to the other extreme. However, after several centuries, science and philosophy finally came to the same conclusion.

It is not surprising that some of those who have had no familiarity with the wisdom and maxims of the Holy Imims ('a) think that the notion of 'Middle Course' in this issue has been one of the discoveries of some late Western philosophers! The fact is that our Holy Imims ('a), having founded this principle, preceded all others by about ten centuries.

Our Imīm, Ja'far al-'idīq ('a), has demonstrated this 'Middle Course' through his famous words:

لَا جَبْرٌ وَلَا تَفْوِضٌ؛ وَلَكِنْ أَمْرٌ بَيْنَ أَمْرَيْنِ.

There is neither compulsion (by Almighty Allah on doing things), nor there is absolute delegation of power (*tafwḍ*); rather, it is a course in the middle of these two courses.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ *Al-Kiḥ* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 1:160; *al-Tawḥīd* by Shaykh al-'adīq (AH 381), pp. 326, Section: *bjb nāfy al-jabr wa'l-tafwḍ* (Negation of Fatality and Indeterminism), H. 8 & pp. 206, Section: *bjb asmī' allḥi ta'īlī* (Attributes of Almighty Allah), H. 9; *'Uyḥn Akhbīr al-Rīq* by Shaykh al-'adīq (AH 381), 2:114 ((The English version of this book is entitled '*Uyḥn Akhbīr al-Rīq*: Sources of Imīm al-Rīq's Traditions, translated by Dr. Ḥalī Peiravi, Qum:

by means of neither immoderation nor negligence. It is not obligatory upon one who fails to recognize them properly to dedicate oneself to understanding and investigating them, because improper understanding of such subtle secrets will definitely lead to missing the reality and corrupting one's faith. They are in fact among the most accurate fields of philosophy that none can realize except a very few people and, as a result, many theologians have slipped while trying to argue these secrets.

all things created) is that the opinion of somebody about a certain act may be changed because he has concluded a result that he has not known before according to which he must change his opinion and idea about that act. Therefore, it looks wise to leave doing that act after learning about the true interest and show regret for the previous opinion.

Badi' in this sense is impossible for Almighty Allah, because it is part of ignorance and imperfection—two matters that are impossible for Almighty Allah to hold, as is confirmed by the belief of the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah*.

Laying stress on this faith, the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah* adhere to the following rule stated by Imam Ja`far al-`idī (a):

مَنْ زَعَمَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى بَدَأَ لَهُ فِي شَيْءٍ بَدَاءً نَدَامَةً فَهُوَ
عِنْدَنَا كَافِرٌ بِاللَّهِ الْعَظِيمِ.

Whoever claims that Almighty Allah changes a previous decision (i.e. on the basis of *badi'*) on account of regret (at a previous action) is decided by us as having disbelieved in Allah the All-great.⁽¹⁾

He is also reported as saying:

مَنْ زَعَمَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ بَدَأَ لَهُ فِي شَيْءٍ وَلَمْ يَعْلَمْهُ أَمْسَ فَأَبْرَأَ
مِنْهُ.

Indeed, I disavow anyone who claims that Almighty Allah has changed a previous decision about an affair because He has come to know about something that He had not known in the past!⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ *Al-Itiqādāt* by Shaykh al-Mufīd (AH 413), pp. 41.

⁽²⁾ In *Kamāl al-Dīn wa-Tamīm al-Ni`mah* by Shaykh al-`adīq (AH

11

BADI'

THE MEANING OF ^{badi'⁽¹⁾} in relation to the affairs of creatures can be defined as arriving at an opinion about an issue while this opinion was not present in the past or, in other words, concluding an idea that was absent until that time. An example of the natural meaning of *badi'* (i.e. in relation to

⁽¹⁾ For more information about this topic, refer to the following reference books:

Al-badi' fī `aw' al-Qur'ān wa'l-Sunnah (Badi' in the Light of the Qur'ān and Sunnah) A collection of lectures delivered by `Allamah Ja`far al-Subḥānī; written by Ja`far al-Hidā; prepared by Imam al-`idī Foundation, Qum: Foundation of Islamic Publication (dateless).

Al-Badi' (Book No. 8 in the series of *`alī mī'idat al-qur'ān wa'l-sunnah* –On the Table of the Qur'ān and Sunnah--) by Murtaḥī al-`Askarī (contemporary); Beirut: P.O. Box 124/24.

Al-Badi' fī 'l-Qur'ān al-Karīm (Badi' in the Holy Qur'ān) by `Abd al-Karīm al-Bahbahānī (The Committee of Researches and Answering the Spurious Arguments), Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly.

Ahl al-Bayt wa'l-Qur'ān al-Karīm by Muḥammad Hīdī Ma`rifat; Chapter Three: *Badi'* (pp. 117-178), Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1419.

lead against the Shç`ah.

The fact in this regard is that we, the Shç`ah, believe in *badi'* as exactly as it is stated by Almighty Allah in the Holy Qur'in:

(ϕMε6 |ç©□υρ ®™!ετ±o□ ετB ♠!ε# (#0↓σ | 9τ□

ηC®U ∑≈τΓ⊕6/9ε# □ΠΓ& □...| vψ□Ψε©υρ

Allah erases what He pleases and establishes what He pleases, and with Him is the basis of the Book.
(13/39)

Accordingly, the Imim (`a) meant that Almighty Allah's decision in the case of Ismi`çl, the Imim's son, was unprecedented so none of Almighty Allah's other decisions were like it. The Lord took back Ismi`çl before his father to tell people that Ismi`çl would not be the Imim after his father,⁽¹⁾ while circumstances led them to believe that Ismi`çl, the Imim's eldest son, would be the next Imim.

Similar to this meaning of *badi'* is the abrogation (*naskh*) of

⁽¹⁾ Imjm al-`idiq ('a) is reported as saying:

مَا ظَهَرَ لِلَّهِ أَمْرٌ كَمَا ظَهَرَ لَهُ فِي إِسْمَاعِيلَ ابْنِي؛ إِذْ اخْتَرَمَهُ قَبْلِي
لِيُعْلَمَ بِذَلِكَ أَنَّهُ لَيْسَ بِإِمَامٍ بَعْدِي.

Almighty Allah has not changed a decision about an affair like what He has done in the case of my son Ismij`çl. He took his life before me so that people would realize that Ismij`çl would not be the next Imjm.

See *al-Tawçed* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), pp. 336, Section: *bjb al-badi'*, H. 10; *Kamjl al-Dçen wa-Tamjm al-Ni`mah* by Shaykh al-`adçq, pp. 69; *Majma` al-Ba`rayn* by al-`urayç (AH 1085), 1:168 (item: *b-d-w*).

On the other hand, our Holy Imims (`a) are reported to have stated some sayings giving the false impression that *badi'* in the previous sense might be applicable to Almighty Allah. For instance, Imim Ja`far al-`idiq (`a) is reported as saying:

مَا بَدَأَ اللَّهُ فِي شَيْءٍ كَمَا بَدَأَ لَهُ فِي إِسْمَاعِيلَ ابْنِي.

Almighty Allah has not changed a decision about an affair like what He has done in the case of my son Ismij`çl.⁽¹⁾

Because of such traditions, some writers of certain Muslim sects have accused the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* of believing in *badi'*⁽²⁾ in the aforesaid sense so as to defame Shç`ism and the School of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a). They have added this false claim to the other vituperative campaigns that they

381), pp. 70, the following form of the tradition has been reported:

مَنْ زَعَمَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَبْدُو لَهُ فِي شَيْءٍ لَمْ يَعْلَمْهُ أَمْسَ فَايْرَوْا مِنْهُ.

"You must disavow anyone who claims that Almighty Allah may get to know, at this day, something that he did not know yesterday!"

⁽¹⁾ *Al-Tawçed* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), pp. 336; *Kamjl al-Dçen wa-Tamjm al-Ni`mah* by Shaykh al-`adçq, pp. 69.

⁽²⁾ Shaykh al-`adçq, a Muslim master scholar and a Shç`ite supreme authority in the fourth century of Hijrah, says, "In fact, *badi'* that is ascribed to the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* to be one of their beliefs is no more than the advent of Almighty Allah's command. The Arabs use the word '*badi'*' to express initiation of a matter. The word has nothing to do with the sense of regret at all. Exalted be Allah in high exaltation above what they say." See *Kamjl al-Dçen wa-Tamjm al-Ni`mah* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), pp. 69.

previous religious laws by the new code of law brought by our Prophet, Muḥammad (‘a), and even the abrogation of some laws brought by the Holy Prophet (‘a) himself.

this argument is in violation of rational necessity.

Others have argued that Almighty Allah may do evil and, as a result, enjoin us to do an act that may beget disadvantage to us and warn us against doing an act that may achieve prosperity for us!

As has been previously cited, such false charges carry an awful venture, because it ascribes ignorance and frailty to Almighty Allah—supremely exalted is He against such allegations.

In summary, regarding the laws of religion we must believe that when Almighty Allah commanded us to carry out certain duties and forbade us to do other things, He did not have private interests or conveniences to achieve for Himself; rather, these duties bring about advantages to us and these prohibitions save us from inconveniences if we abide by them. It is also meaningless to claim that these do's and don'ts do not achieve our interests and save us from corruption, because Almighty Allah never commands us to do something in vain as He never forbids us to do something aimlessly. Indeed, He is too Self-sufficient to need His servants.

12

LAWS OF RELIGION

WE BELIEVE that Almighty Allah has enacted His laws—including religious duties, forbidden things, and laws concerning other aspects of life—and made them compatible with the interests of His servants. That is to say, Almighty Allah has deemed obligatory those things whose interests are essential and required by the servants; deemed forbidden other things that bring about corruption, and deemed recommended things whose interests are preponderant. The same thing is applicable to the other laws of religion. Of course, such variety in laws has been due to Almighty Allah's kindness and mercy to His servants.

It is necessary that Almighty Allah's laws cover all events. Hence, there must be a religious law for every incident, even if the way to get to know some of these laws may not be possible for some people.

We also believe that it is implausible for Almighty Allah to enjoin us to do a thing that brings about corruption or to warn us against doing a thing that is profitable to us. However, the followers of certain Muslim sects claim that everything forbidden by Almighty Allah must be evil and everything that He enjoins must be good, since deeds possess neither advantages nor disadvantages in themselves nor subjective goodness or evilness. In truth,

Our Doctrines Concerning:

- ⌘ **Prophethood**
- ⌘ **Prophethood being Part of Divine Grace**
- ⌘ **Miracles of The Prophets**
- ⌘ **Infallibility of The Prophets**
- ⌘ **Attributes of The Prophets**
- ⌘ **The Prophets (ﷺ) and Their Books**
- ⌘ **Islam**
- ⌘ **The Lawgiver of Islam**
- ⌘ **The Holy Qur'ān**
- ⌘ **Proving the Divine Status of Islam the Past Religious Laws**

PART TWO: **PROPHETHOOD**

(6/125)

Likewise, people have nothing to do with those whom Almighty Allah sends as guides to bear good tidings for those who believe in them and warn those who disbelieve against the Lord's chastisement. They also have nothing to do with the laws, regulations, and rules that are conveyed by these messengers.

13

PROPHETHOOD

WE BELIEVE that prophethood is a duty commissioned by Almighty Allah and a mission decided by Him. He appoints persons that He prefers and selects from among His righteous servants and His humanly perfect saints for this mission. He then sends them to guide the people towards prosperity in this world as well as the next. These messengers purify them from immorality and crooked habits, teach them wisdom and knowledge and show them the ways of pleasure and welfare, so that they might attain appropriate perfection and raise themselves to elevated ranks in the abodes of both this world and the Hereafter.

We believe that the Rule of Grace, which will be explained later on, necessitates that the Creator, Who is gracious to His servants, sends His messengers to guide people to the right path, undertake the reformative mission, and act as the Lord's representatives and vicegerents.

We also believe that Almighty Allah has not authorized people to appoint, elect, or choose the Prophets. "They have no choice in the matter." In fact, the whole matter is Almighty Allah's, because:

...| μτΓσ93ψ□□ □≅ψ∪γσ□ ↓]/□ξμ □Nv= |©ρ& ♠!3#

Allah knows best with whom to place His message.

The Holy Qur'in contains many other verses clearly indicating the emotions and whims on which human beings have been fashioned.

On the other hand, Almighty Allah has created in man a guiding intellect, which leads him to prosperity and loci of goodness, and a deterrent conscience that prevents him from committing evil and wrong and blames him for doing any hideous and censured act.

Internal conflict between desires and intellect is always there inside human souls; hence, he whose intellect overcomes his desires will find himself a high-ranking place among the ones advanced in humanity and perfect in spirituality. However, those who are overcome by their whimsical desires will be with the losers and degenerate to the rank of beasts.⁽¹⁾

Unfortunately, the stronger of these two contending powers is desire. This is why we find most people plunging into deviation and detaching themselves from true guidance by acceding to their desires and responding to the calls of their passions. Referring to this fact, the Holy Qur'in reads:

⁽¹⁾ Almighty Allah says in the Holy Qur'in:

∃ψγψθoλ;ρəσ]∩∠∪ ∃ψγl♣θψ□ ∃τBυρ <♣/□τPυρ

τB ψξν=]ρ& |□σ% ∩∇∪ ∃ψγ1υθ/)σ?υρ ∃ψδυ□θ\γ |

∩∇∪ ∃ψγ9'□ψ□ τB ζ>%σ{ |□σ%υρ ∩@∪ ∃ψγ8♠.ψ□

And [I swear by] the soul and Him Who made it perfect; then He inspired it to understand what is right and wrong for it. He will indeed be successful who purifies it, and he will indeed fail who corrupts it. (91/7-10)

14

PROPHETHOOD BEING PART OF DIVINE GRACE

MAN is an eccentric creature and a complex structure in his form, nature, psychology, and intelligence. Moreover, each individual human personality has its own complex nature, in which inclinations to evil are existent and incentives to goodness and righteousness are also existent.

On the one hand, man has been fashioned on emotions and instincts, such as egoism, fancy, selfishness and submission to personal whims. He also possesses an inclination towards supremacy, dominance, prevalence over others, and a desire for the pleasures, vanities, and chattels of this world.

Describing man, Almighty Allah has said in the Holy Qur'in:

∩∇∪ A□ |≤™ζ □⊕∇σ9 ζ ≈|ΥΣM}∃# ♦β∈)

Lo! Man is surely the loser. (103/2)

|v#υ™♣□ βρ& ∩∇∪ #⊙ξ\ |◁υ□σ9 ζ ≈|ΥΣM}∃# ♦β∈) Hξξ.

∩∠∪ #⊙o_] (τΓ (□∃#

Nay! Man is most surely inordinate, because he sees himself free from want. (96/6-7)

∄™]θ□Υ9∃∃∈/ 8ou□□♦B{ }♣/□♦Z9∃# ♦β∈)

Surely, the soul of man incites to evil. (12/53)

grace to His servants is part of His absolute perfection. Verily, Almighty Allah is All-gracious, All-magnanimous, and All-generous.

Therefore, when an object is worthy of and ready to receive His magnanimity and grace, then it is necessary for Him to shower His magnanimity on it since His mercy is free from miserliness and His magnanimity and generosity are seamless.

“Necessity” in this course does not mean that it is incumbent upon Almighty Allah to obey the command of someone, since He is too Exalted to receive any command from any being; rather, “necessity” in this respect bears the same sense of necessity in our saying, “the Necessity Existent”, which means coexistence and inseparability.

Similarly, the miracle of Prophet Jesus (`a), which was the healing of the blind and the leprous and bringing the dead to life, took this form because medication was the most widespread art of that time in which physicians and healers enjoyed the highest rank in society. Hence, when Prophet Jesus (`a) came with an extraordinary medicine, the sciences of these physicians and healers could not compete with him.⁽¹⁾

me.' They said, 'O M£s¡! Will you cast, or shall we be the first to cast?' He said, 'Cast.' So, when they cast, they deceived the people's eyes and frightened them, and they produced a mighty enchantment. And We revealed to M£s¡, saying: 'Cast your rod.' Then, lo! It devoured the lies they told. So the truth was established, and what they did became null. Thus, they were vanquished there, and they went back abased. And the enchanters were thrown down, prostrating themselves. (7/113-120)

⁽¹⁾ Almighty Allah has said in the Holy Qur'in:

□ ≠ oTp& □ ≡ □ ≠ ™ ♦ u□ (□ ∈)] ⊙ ⊃ _τ/ 4 □ v < ∈) ≈ ω θ ↓ □ u □ u p
(\ N ∅ 6 ∈ v / ♣ □ □ ≠ iB 7 π τ □ □ τ ↔ ∈ / N ™ 3 | Γ / ⊕ _ | □ σ %
□] | ≠ ε < 9 3 # □ ∅ ≠ iB N ∅ 6 σ 9 ↓ , \ = | ζ ρ &] □ ≠ oTp &
⊙ β θ ™ 3 u □ □] ≠ μ □ ≠] ⊙ □ □ P ρ 3 σ] ∈ □ □ ♥ < 9 3 # ≠ π τ ↔ / □ ψ γ ξ.
τ μ ψ 9 | 2 Φ { 3 # ↔ □ □ □ √ | & u p (↔ ! 3 # □ β / □ ∈ * ∈ / # M □ □ □ ↔
□ β / □ ∈ * ∈ / 4 □ σ A) θ u K / 9 3 # ⊗ ⊙ (ρ | & u p □ √ u □) \ Φ { 3 # u p
3 τ B u p τ β θ \ = ™ .] 3 σ ? 3 ψ 9 ∈ / N ™ 3 ⊙ / ∈ μ ; τ P | & u p (↔ ! 3 #
ψ 7 ≠ 9 ♦ σ □ □ ∈] ♦ β ∈) 4 \ N ∅ 6 ≠ ? θ ⊙ □ | / □ ∈] τ β ρ ⊙ □ | ζ ≤ □ σ ?

□

of the enchanters of that time, since the art of enchantment was the most widespread art at that time. Therefore, when the rod of Prophet Moses (`a) came, the very art of enchantment was proven false and the enchanters knew for sure that the rod could do things beyond their competence and over all their art, since the art produced by that rod was paranormal and beyond man's ability.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ Almighty Allah has said in the Holy Qur'in:

□ χ ∈) (#) θ ™ 9 3 σ % □ χ \ θ τ ⊙ \ □ ≠] ™ o u □ ψ σ Y Y 9 3 # u ™ ! % ψ ¯ ρ
τ] | ∈ 7 ≠ ≈ τ (/ 9 3 # ↓] τ ω Y 3 ♦ Z ∅ 2 β ∈) # • □ | _ { 3 u Z σ 9
ζ ≠ 9 σ 9 \ N ™ 3 ↓ P ∈) u p \ N ψ \ τ P τ A 3 σ % □ ≡ □ u
⊙ ψ □ θ ↓ 9 ≈ τ □ (# θ ™ 9 3 σ % □ ≡ □ u τ] | ∈ / ♣ □ σ) ↓ 9 / 9 3 #
↓] τ ω Y τ β θ ™ 3 ↓ P β ρ & ! 3 ♦ B ∈) u p ζ □ ⊕ +] = \ ? β ρ & ! 3 ♦ B ∈)
! 3 ≤ 9 v = σ] ((# θ ∅) / 9 ρ & τ A 3 σ % □ ≡ □ u τ] | ⊃)] = ↓ 9 / 9 3 #
⊗ ♦ 3 ♦ Z 9 3 # □ | ⊙ | | ⊙ ρ & (# □ ρ ⊙ □ ψ σ ψ □ (#) θ σ) / 9 ρ &
5 O □ ≠ ∅ τ ⊙ ≡ □ (σ ⊕ Y ∈ / ρ ™ ! % ψ ¯ ρ \ N \ δ θ | 7 ψ δ \ □ ψ I (□ 3 # u p
| β ρ & # ⊙ ψ □ θ ⊙ B 4 □ v < ∈) ! 3 u Z / □ ξ μ | ρ ρ & u p □ ≡ □ u
3 τ B ↓ # σ)] = σ ? } □ ≠ δ # σ □ ∈ * σ] (ξ 8 3 | 3 τ ⊙ u , / 9 ρ &
3 τ B □ ≡ □ u < τ / u p □ , u τ] : 3 # ψ (σ % u θ σ] □ ≡ □ u τ β θ ™ 3 ≠]] 3 τ □
ψ 7 ≠ 9 3 u Z \ δ (# θ | 7 ≠ ™ (σ] □ ≡ □ u τ β θ \ = ψ 9 | τ □ (# θ | P % ξ.
ζ □ ⊕ + / 9 | & u p □ ≡ □ u τ] | □ □ (≈ | ≠ (# θ | 7 v = σ) P 3 # u p
□ ≡ □ u τ] | ≠ □ ⊕ φ ≈ ψ □ ™ o u □ ψ σ Y Y 9 3 #

And the enchanters came to Pharaoh (and) said, 'We must surely have a reward if we are the prevailing ones.' He said, 'Yes, and you shall certainly be of those who are near to

□

The occasion for their inability is that the Holy Qur'in challenged them to produce ten comparable chapters (*s£rah*), but they could not;⁽¹⁾ it then challenged them to produce one such *s£rah*, but they could not.⁽²⁾

Because they were unable to compete with this challenge, they used their swords rather than their words. Thus we understand that the Holy Qur'in is a miracle with which the Holy Prophet, Mu'ammad (¥), came as evidence of his claim to prophethood and bearer of the Lord's message.

We have thus realized that he—peace be upon him and his

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Qur'in reads:

(#0\?)³σ])≡(% (|μ1υ□ψI/]³# □χθ™900)τ□ |Πρ&
;M≈τ□υ□ψI/□©B —&≡#|ς≠ιB 9□υθ↓□ ε□ |≥ψ\ε/
↔!³# υβρ↓□ ¯≠ιB O|Φ\σ<τΓ (³³# ∩ ¯τB (#0©©|³³#υρ
∩⊃Cυ τ]) ≠%≠□≈|≠ (O|ΦZ™. βε)

Or, do they say, 'He has forged it?' Say: 'Then bring ten forged chapters like it and call upon whom you can besides Allah, if you are truthful.' (11/13)

⁽²⁾ This is an indication to the following holy verse:

4□v?τ© ∃υZ/9♦□τP ∃≤9≠ιB 5=|□υ□ □ε] \N|ΦZ02 βε)υρ
—&≡#|ς≠ιB ¯≠ιB ;ου□θ↑Υε/ (#0\?)³σ] ∃τP≠□)7τ©
χε) ↔!³# υβρ↓□ ¯≠ιB N™.υ™!#ψ□ψγ™♥ (#0©©|³³#υρ
∩⊃Cυ τ]) ≠%≠□≈|≠ \N|ΦZ™.

And if you are in doubt as to that which We have revealed to Our servant, then produce a chapter like it and call on your witnesses besides Allah if you are truthful. (2/23)

As for our Prophet, Mu'ammad, peace be upon him and his Household, his immortal miracle is the Holy Qur'in that came with miraculous eloquence and articulacy in an age when rhetoric was the most widespread art and orators were in the fore of everyone else due to their excellent diction and lofty purity of language. Like a thunderbolt, the Holy Qur'in came to humiliate and astound these eloquent people and to convey to them the message whose eloquence they would never be able to resist; they therefore cringed before it as they were convinced that they would never have the power to challenge it.⁽¹⁾

∩⊃Cυ □]) ≠Z≠B |σ□B O|ΦZ™. βε) \N™3♥9 Zπτ□Yψ
And (make him) a messenger to the children of Israel: that I have come to you with a sign from your Lord, that I mould for you out of dust the form of a bird, then I breathe into it and it becomes a bird with Allah's permission. And I heal the blind and the leprous, and bring the dead to life with Allah's permission. And, I inform you of what you should eat and what you should store in your houses. Most surely, there is a sign in this for you, if you are believers. (3/49)

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Qur'in reads in this respect:

□ ⊕φ/9³#υρ ↓♣PM}³# ≠Mψ\ψθτΓ |_³# υ]υJ♥9 ≡(%
υβ#υ™)□0)/9³# #ξ□≈ψδ υ≡|ς≠9ε/ (#0\?)³σ] βρ& #□v?τ©
\NΣκ↑Π\τ/ □χ%ξ.)θσ9υρ —&≡#|Ω≠9ε/ τβ0\?)³σ] □ω
∩∇∇υ #[□□εγσ↓ <^ \|τ7≠9

Say: If men and jinn should unite to bring the like of this Qur'in, they could not bring the like of it, though some of them be aides of others. (17/88)

Household—is truly the messenger of Almighty Allah and he came with the truth and verified it.

It is necessary to prove the infallibility of the prophets (`a),⁽¹⁾ because if a prophet commits a sin, an act of

⁽¹⁾ Among the proofs of the infallibility of the prophets (`a), scholars have cited the following verse of the Holy Qur'an:

...| μ□/υ□ ζΟ⊥≠δ♦υ□\)/∈) #□v?τΦ\)/∃# ≠□∈)υρ
 □≠οT∈) τA∃σ% (≤ ↓γ≤θσ?ρ∃σ] ;M≈υK≠=σ3∈/
 ¯≠Bυρ τA∃σ% (∃ΨB∃τB∈) ⊗♦∃♦Ψ=≠9 ψ7\=≠(%ψ ¯
 □≠□|γτ⊙ ⊙A∃υZτ□ □ω τA∃σ% (⊙⊃Λ♣□≤η□□
 ∩⊃ϕ≤υ τ] | ≠θ ≠≈♥∅9∃#

And when his Lord tried Abraham with certain words, he fulfilled them. He said, 'Surely, I will make you an Imam of men.' Abraham said, 'And of my offspring?' 'My covenant does not include the unjust,' said He. (2/124)

This holy verse confirms that Almighty Allah has not allowed one who acts unjustly to hold a high position like Prophethood or Imamate.

Another proof is the following holy verse:

τ] | ≠(υH)/δρ& \N↓γ♦Zτ□υθ)/_{ ψ7≠?♦□≠\∈6σ] τA∃σ%
 □| | ⊕∩v=)/≠↓θ/9∃# ⊙N↓γ|Ψ≠B ξ8ψ□∃τ7≠⊙ □ω∈) ∩∇ϕυ
 ∩∇ϕυ

He (Satan) said: 'Then, by Thy Might (I swear), I will surely beguile all of them except Thy servants from among them, the purified ones.' (38/82-83)

This holy verse demonstrates Satan's inability to beguile those whom Almighty Allah has purified from sinning and guarded against wrongdoing and transgression.

16

INFALLIBILITY OF THE PROPHETS

WE BELIEVE that the prophets, all without exception, are infallible.⁽¹⁾ So are the Holy Imims (`a), the successors to the Holy Prophet (ﷺ); pure blessings be upon them all. However, some Muslim sects have disagreed with us on this doctrine, as they do not deem necessary the infallibility of the prophets (`a), let alone the Holy Imims (`a).

Infallibility (`iṣmah) means to avoid committing sins and acts of disobedience to Almighty Allah, be they major or trivial. It also includes refraining from committing errors and expressing unawareness, even if such things are rationally not impossible for the prophets. Nevertheless, a Prophet is required to be far above even slight defects that may injure his personality, such as eating like ordinary people and laughing loudly, as well as every act that is crude.

⁽¹⁾ For more details on this topic and for removing any spurious argument about it, the reader is advised to refer to the book of *Tanzīh al-Anbiyā'* by al-Sharḥ al-Murtaḥī; 'Alī ibn al-ʿusayn al-Mūsawī (AH 436); Beirut: Dār al-Aḥwāl Publishers, Second Edition, 1409 AH/AD 1989.

This very proof is applicable to the infallibility of the Holy Imims, because we believe that Almighty Allah selects an Imim for this position to guide human beings and represent prophets.

disobedience to Almighty Allah, an error, or any similar act, then the matter will be restricted to one of the following probabilities:

- (1) it is still obligatory to follow him in such an act, or
- (2) it is not obligatory.

As for the first probability, if it is obligatory to follow him in such acts, this will definitely mean that it is permissible, and even obligatory, to commit acts of disobedience to Almighty Allah by His permission; and this is absolutely invalid on account of religious and reason-based necessities.

If we decide that it is not obligatory to follow the prophet, this will definitely be in violation of the essential principle of belief in Prophethood. Obedience to the Prophets is an obligation once they have been recognised.⁽¹⁾ Such being the case, each and every act of a prophet would be exposed to the probability that it was an act of disobedience to Almighty Allah or a mistake; hence, we would have the pretext not to follow the prophets in any of their words and deeds. The inevitable result would be the loss of the benefit of sending messengers and prophets by Almighty Allah. Moreover, a prophet would no longer be an extraordinary person and his words, deeds, and knowledge would no longer have such precious value that is always reliable; and it would no longer be imperative to obey or trust the instructions and words of the prophets.

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Qur'ān has stated:

لَمْ يَكُن لِرَبِّكَ إِكْرَاهٌ فِي مَا تَصَدَّقَ بِهِ ۚ إِنَّكَ تَكُونُ فِي عَيْنِ رَبِّكَ بِمَقَامٍ ءَازِلٍ
 .↔!∃# ℞χ/□∈*∈/

And We did not send any messenger but that he should be obeyed by Allah's permission. (4/64)

17

ATTRIBUTES OF THE PROPHETS

WE BELIEVE that a prophet, just as he must be infallible, must be characterized by the most excellent and most favorable attributes of morality and rationality, such as courage, patience, shrewdness, intelligence plus administrative and managerial capabilities, so that no other human being can match him in these attributes. Without such high moral and rational standards a prophet would not be worthy of holding the position of general headship over all human beings and general authority over the whole world.

Furthermore, a prophet must be of legitimate birth, honest, trustworthy, and far above all vices before appointed as prophet, so that hearts feel inclined towards him and souls have confidence in him and, over and above, he should deserve such a great Divine position.

since such acts result in the denial of our Prophet, Muḥammad (ﷺ), who has apprised us of them and declared their honesty.

It is however expressly obligatory to acquaint oneself with their names and codes of law, such as Adam, Noah, Abraham, David, Solomon, Moses, and Jesus (ʿa) as well as the other prophets whose names have been cited in the Holy Qur'in. Thus, to deny any of them is to deny all of them in general and the prophethood of our Prophet Muḥammad (ﷺ) in particular.

It is also obligatory to believe in their Books and in whatever has been revealed to them from the Lord.

However, it has been proven that the current Torah and Gospel (i.e. the Old and New Testaments) have been distorted and their contents are not the identical revelations of the Lord. Many alterations, modifications, additions, and deletions, have been made to these two Divine Books since the times of Prophet Moses (ʿa) and Prophet Jesus (ʿa). Moreover, the majority, if not the entire, contents of these Books were written by the followers and disciples of these two Prophets a long time after their death.

18

PROPHETS AND THEIR BOOKS

WE BELIEVE that all the Prophets (ʿa) are on the truth;⁽¹⁾ and they are infallible and immaculate. To deny their prophethood, to revile and deride them are parts of disbelief and atheism,

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Qur'in teaches us, saying:

τA⊆□P⌈ & !∃τBυρ ↔!∃∃ε/ ∃♦ΨτB#υ™ (#⌋θ™9θ\%
ζO⌋≠δ♦υ□\ε) #□v<ε) τA⊆□P⌈ & !∃τBυρ ∃υZ/□σ9ε)
ζ>θ◇)⌋τ□υρ τ,≈ψσ (□ε)υρ □≡□≠(≈o□ | □ε)υρ
4⊙ψ□θ⊙B ζ□≠Aρ⌈ & !∃τBυρ ⊕⇒∃τ6 (□Φ{∃#υρ
̄≠B □χθ□□ε;♦Ψ9∃# ζ□≠Aρ⌈ & !∃τBυρ 4⊙/□≠⊙υρ
⌈O↓γ |Ψ≠ιB 7□τνρ& τ⌋⌋τ/ ™—⊆η□ξ□P □ω ⌈Oεγεv/♣□
∩⊇⊆≠υ τβθ⊙K≠= ⌈Υ⊙B ...⌋μσ9 ↓ ⌈τωYυρ

Say: We believe in Allah and in that which had been revealed to us, and in that which was revealed to Ibṛḥ̣ṃ (Abraham) and Isṃj̣`̣ḷ (Ishmael) and Iṣj̣q̣ (Isaac) and Ya`q̣ḥ̣ḅ (Jacob) and the tribes, and in that which was given to Ṃḥ̣ṣj̣ (Moses) and `̣ṣj̣ (Jesus), and in that which was given to the prophets from their Lord. We do not make any distinction between any of them; and to Him do we submit.
(2/136)

Islam being the seal of all codes of law with no other law being expected to reform the conditions of human beings who are unfortunately plunging into wrong and corruption, there must come a day when Islam becomes most powerful and its justice and laws spread all over this globe.

If the laws of Islam are applied to the entire world completely and properly, peace will reach all human beings and pleasure will find its way to each one of them, and they will attain the utmost of their dreams of luxury, dignity, opulence, meekness, and virtuous morality. Besides, clouds of persecution will be driven away from the horizons, amicability and fraternity will prevail among people, and poverty and dearth will be extinct.

It is noticeable, in the present day, that those who claim being Muslims are experiencing shameful and derogatory conditions. The reason for this is that the religion of Islam with its laws and spirit was not implemented since the first century of its advent. It was certainly not their obedience to the precepts of Islam that caused such disgraceful retardation. Quite the reverse, it was their disobedience to the precepts of Islam, their underestimation of its regulations, and the spread of oppression and aggression among all their social classes, beginning with their kings and retinues down to the paupers and ordinary subjects. All these have been the factors that crippled the movements of Muslims, enfeebled their powers, destroyed their spirituality and caused them affliction and distress. As a result, Almighty Allah has destroyed them on account of their faults:

19

ISLAM

WE BELIEVE that "The true religion with Allah is Islam."⁽¹⁾ It is indeed the true, Divine code of law that is the last and most perfect of all Divine codes of law. It also accomplishes the greatest human happiness and achieves the most comprehensive benefits in this world as well as in the hereafter. Unchangeable and unmodified, Islam is valid for all ages and times, since it comprises all individual, social, and political systems of life that are needed by the human race.

⁽¹⁾ This is part of a Qur'anic verse that reads:

∃τBυρ 3 ⇒O≈v= (□M}∃# ↔!∃# ψ□Ψ≠© □|| ≠ε∃!∃# ♦βε)
 □ωε) |=≈τΓ⊕3/9∃# (#θ\?ρ[& □|| ≠%♥!∃# ψ#v=τΦ|ζ∃#
 ∃9□/ (τ/ ⇒O]=≠\9∃# ©N\δυ™!%ψ - ∃τB ≠□\τ/ . ≠B
 ↔!∃# ≠M≈τ□∃τ↔ε/ \□◇□J 3τ□ - τBυρ 3 (O\γσΨ|□τ/
 ∩⊃⊗∪ >>∃|Υ≠τ]:∃# ↓(□ε□□ ♥!∃# □χε*σ]

Surely, the true religion with Allah is Islam, and those to whom the Book had been given did not show opposition but after knowledge had come to them, out of envy among themselves; and whoever disbelieves in the communications of Allah then surely Allah is quick in reckoning. (3/19)

Islam, colonized their territories and threw them into an unending abyss whose extent and bottom no one knows except Almighty Allah:

8N̄=ġŏ€ / 3□□□) / 93# ψ7≠ = | γ⊙□ ≠ 9 ψ7□ / υ□ τβ%□2 ∃τBυρ

∩⊃⊃∠∪ □χθ∪σ≠ = (ζ⊙B ∃ψγ\ = |δρ&υρ

In truth, the Lord would never destroy their cities unjustly while their folk were still doing right.
(11/117)

There is no alternative for Muslims today except that they gather their parts and settle an account with themselves for their past negligence. They must then start with disciplining themselves and their coming generations through the orthodox precepts of their religion to eradicate all traces of oppression and injustice among them. Only by doing so can they escape the current catastrophic calamity. The next step must be that they fill the earth with justice and fairness after it has been filled with injustice and oppression. This is the promise of Almighty Allah and His Messenger to them and this is exactly what is expected from their religion since it is the sealing of all religions without which there is no hope to set this world right.

To achieve this, it is inevitable that a leader (imam) shall come out to erase all delusions, innovations, and aberrations that have been imputed to Islam, save people from the wide-ranging corruption and incessant oppression they are experiencing, and redeem them from the current underestimation of moral standards and disparagement of human souls. May Allah hasten his reappearance and make

With the progress of time, we find Muslims increasingly separating into scattered fragments, sects, and parties, rushing madly upon the transient pleasures of this world, crushing each other for fancies, and accusing each other of atheism through incomprehensible notions or affairs that are not their concern.

Such matters have distracted them from the essence of religion and from pursuing the interests of their communities and their own. Useless questions like:

- whether the Holy Qur'in is eternal or was created afterwards;
- whether it is correct to believe in the Divine menace and the Final Return or not; or
- whether Heaven and Hell have already been created, or will be created in future.

Such disputatious issues cause them to wrangle against each other and accuse each other of atheism.

If such disputations carry an indication, they certainly indicate the deviation of these polemical individuals from the norms that were drawn up to take them to the right path after it had been already paved for them. They also indicate that they are following the other crooked paths that bring about nothing but perdition and extinction.

With the passage of time, Muslims' departure from the right increased until ignorance and deviation surrounded them as they engaged themselves with worthless and trivial affairs and concentrated on tiring matters, myths, illusions, wars, disputes, and vainglory that finally led them to bottomless abysses. While they were diving in inadvertence and carelessness, the West, the vigilant yet bitter enemy of

easy his advent.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ Imām al-Mahdī—may Allah hasten his reappearance—is reported to have said:

وَأَكْثِرُوا الدُّعَاءَ بِتَعْجِيلِ الْفَرَجِ، فَإِنَّ ذَلِكَ فَرَجُكُمْ.

“Pray to Almighty Allah frequently to hasten my Relief, for it shall in reality carry relief for you.”

See *al-Ghaybah* by Shaykh al-Ṭūsī (AH 460), pp. 293, H. 247; *al-Iṭijāj* by al-Ṭabrisī (AH 560), 2:284; *al-Kharīʿij waʾl-Jarīʿi* by al-Riḥwandī (AH 573), 3:1115, H. 30.

20

THE LAWGIVER OF ISLAM

WE BELIEVE that the message of Islam is contained in the person of Muḥammad ibn `Abdullih (ﷺ), the seal of the prophets, the chief of all Messengers, and the best of them. He is the master of all human beings; no virtuous one can ever match him in virtue, no one can ever approach him in nobility, no rational person can ever be equivalent to him in rationality, and no civil person can ever resemble him in courtesy. He is verily on an exalted standard of character and the most excellent in all these characters from the beginning of the human race up to the Day of Resurrection.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ This indicates the following verse of the Holy Qur'ān:

وَلَا تَقْفُ مَا لِقَوْمِكَ فِيهِمْ ۚ لَئِنْ لَمْ يَرْجِعُوا إِلَىٰ رَحْمَتِي لَآتِيَنَّهُمْ نَارٌ ۚ وَلَهُمْ فِيهَا زُجُجٌ ۚ وَلَهُمْ فِيهَا سُرُجٌ مُّوقَدٌ ۚ وَأَشْرَافُ الْعِزَّةِ يَسْجُدُونَ ۚ وَهُمْ فِيهَا كُفَّاءٌ ۚ

And most surely you conform yourself to sublime morality.

(68/4)

7□□Hξθ AO□⊕3ξμ | ¯ειB ·≡□□.σ? (—μμ□]ψζ | ¯εB

∩⊆ϕυ

Falsehood cannot come at it from before it or from behind. It is sent down by One Full of Wisdom, Worthy of all Praise. (41/42)

One of the testimonies to the miraculous nature of the Holy Qur'in is that with the progress of time and evolution of science and art, the Holy Qur'in has always kept its freshness and beauty as well as its supreme objectives and notions. It never contradicts a fixed scientific theory nor does it disagree with a positive philosophical fact.

On the contrary, with the development of scientific researches and the presentation of modern theories, we notice that some books of scholars and master philosophers seem to be trivial, repugnant, or fallacious, irrespective of what elevated scientific rank or intellectual level their writers might have attained. Such fallacies are visible in the works of even the greatest Greek scholars and philosophers like Socrates, Plato, and Aristotle who have been recognized as fathers of knowledge and intellectual excellence.

We also believe that it is obligatory to respect and esteem the Holy Qur'in in words and deeds; it is therefore impermissible to defile even a single word of it intentionally, as the Holy Qur'in states:

∩∠®υ τβρ⊙□≤γσ◄↓θ/9ε# □ωε) □...| μ□Υψθτ□ □ω

None shall touch it save the purified ones. (56/79)

It is also impermissible for those who are ceremonially

21

THE HOLY QUR'IN

WE BELIEVE that the Holy Qur'in is the Divine revelation that was revealed by Almighty Allah to His honorable Prophet, making everything clear. It is also the Holy Prophet's immortal miracle that challenges all human beings to bring the like of its eloquence together with the elevated facts and knowledge it comprises. Therefore, no modification, change, or distortion can ever come upon the Holy Qur'in.⁽¹⁾

The Book that we are currently holding and reciting is the very Qur'in that was revealed to the Holy Prophet. Whoever claims any statement opposite to this belief is definitely fabricating, erroneous, or dubious. All these categories are devoid of true guidance, since the Holy Qur'in is verily the word of Almighty Allah Who describes it as:

□ωυρ μμ |□ψ□τ□ υ||τ/. ¯εB ⊙≡◄◄≈τ7/9ε# μμ□μ?]ετ□ □ω

⁽¹⁾ This is because Almighty Allah has guaranteed its preservation against any sort of distortion, saying:

...|μσ9 ε↓Pε)υρ υ□|.με%!ε# ευZ/9♦□τP ↓]τωY ε↓Pε)

∩®υ τβθ↑↑◊μ□≈υτμ:

Surely, We have revealed the Reminder and We will most surely be its guardian. (15/9)

impure, whether by major impurity⁽¹⁾—such as *janibah*,⁽²⁾ menstruation, puerperium, and the like—or minor impurity⁽³⁾ including sleeping unless ritual bathing or ritual ablution has been performed. The details of these laws are mentioned in the books of Shf`ite jurisprudence.

Furthermore, it is impermissible to destroy the books of the Holy Qur'in by fire or to offend them by any deed that is conventionally considered a sort of insult, such as throwing them away, staining them, or putting them under one's feet or in a despised place. Whoever intentionally insults or despises the Holy Qur'in through any of these deeds or their likes is decided as having reneged faith and disbelieved in the Lord of the Worlds.

⁽¹⁾ Major impurity (*al-ʿadath al-akbar*) is every matter that makes it obligatory to perform the ritual bathing (*ghusl*) or invalidates it. [translator]

⁽²⁾ *Janibah*, in the terminology of Muslim jurisprudence, stands for the state of deprivation of ritual purity due to sexual intercourse or ejaculation of semen or the semi-semen wetness that comes out after the ejaculation of semen and before urination that is intended to cut off the ejaculation of semen. (Quoted from *Muʿjam Alfīʿ al-Fiqh al-Jaʿfarī* by Aḥmad Fatḥullāh, pp. 143. [translator])

⁽³⁾ Minor impurity (*al-ʿadath al-aṣghar*) is every matter that makes it obligatory to perform the ritual ablution (*wuṣṣʿ*) or invalidates it. [translator]

We, Muslims, are required to testify to and believe in the past religious laws just because we are required to believe in whatever has been conveyed to us by this religion, such as its information about the authenticity of the prophethood of a number of previous prophets, as has been previously discussed.

It therefore follows that a Muslim, after he has accepted the teachings of Islam, is not required to evaluate the truth of Christianity or Judaism or such religions, because belief in Islam necessarily entails belief in the past messengers and prophets (`a). It is consequently unnecessary for Muslims to investigate and inspect the truth of the miracles of the prophets of these religions, because a Muslim is supposed to believe in these religions and prophets once he believes in Islam.

However, if one investigates the religion of Islam but is not convinced of its truth by the evidence provided, it becomes obligatory upon one, on the grounds of reason and necessity of knowledge and inspection, to investigate the truth of Christianity, because it is the last religion before Islam. If one, after investigation, does not reach certitude, then he is required to investigate the last religion before Christianity, which is supposedly Judaism, until one reaches conviction of a religion, or reject them all.

The issue is contrary for those who have grown up believing in Judaism or Christianity; a Jew's belief in his religion does not release him from the liability of investigating the truth of Christianity and Islam; rather, it is obligatory upon him to inspect and have knowledge of the other religions according to reason. Similarly, it is not correct for a Christian to satisfy himself with his belief in Jesus Christ (`a); rather it becomes obligatory upon him to investigate and evaluate

22

PROVING THE DIVINE STATUS OF ISLAM AND PAST RELIGIOUS LAWS

IF A NON-MUSLIM needs reasons to demonstrate the truth of Islam, we can prove it through its immortal miracle, namely the Holy Qur'in and by reference to its miraculous nature, as we have explained earlier. This is our way of convincing ourselves when suspicion and curiosity confronts men of free thinking at the onset of the establishment of their beliefs.

However, before we believe in the Holy Qur'in or accept the faith of Islam as our one and only belief, we need evidence to convince ourselves with the validity of past religious laws contained within Judaism and Christianity. Unfortunately, we lack evidence to convince one who doubts or wonders about these religions, because they do not hold an immortal miracle like the Holy Qur'in. The followers of these religions, who recount marvelous miracles of the past prophets, are in reality suspected in their recounting and judging of these miracles. Moreover, the currently available books that are attributed to the past prophets (`a), such as the Old and New Testaments, are devoid of any proof that can verify the immortal miracle. However, Islam verifies them with decisive and convincing testimonies through the Holy Qur'in.

from investigating and evaluating them, because the Holy Prophet, Muḥammad (ﷺ), has confirmed:

لَا نَبِيَّ بَعْدِي.

No prophet will come after me.⁽¹⁾

̄ıB 7□τνρ& !∃τ/ρ& |□≤9υτ\X τβ%ξ. ∃♦B
 ζOσ?∃ψζυρ ↔!∃# τA0||□♣□ ⊕3≈σ9υρ \NTM3≠9%ψ ̄η□
 >TM |⊙ξ↔ ∪ε≡TM3ε/ ♠!∃# τβ%ξ.υρ 3 ζ ̄η□ε;♦Ψ9∃#

∩⊆⊃ ∃ς9□≠=τ⊙

Muhammad is not the father of any of your men, but he is the Messenger of Allah and the Last of the Prophets; and Allah is cognizant of all things. (33/40)

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Prophet, Muḥammad (ﷺ), is reported to have said:

أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ! إِنَّهُ لَا نَبِيَّ بَعْدِي، وَلَا سُنَّةَ بَعْدَ سُنَّتِي؛ فَمَنْ ادَّعَى ذَلِكَ
 فَدَعَوَاهُ وَيَدْعُهُ فِي النَّارِ. وَمَنْ ادَّعَى ذَلِكَ فَاقْتُلُوهُ وَمَنْ اتَّبَعَهُ،
 فَأَنَّهُمْ فِي النَّارِ.

“O People! Indeed, there shall not come a prophet after me and there shall not come a Sunnah (a body of traditions and practices) after my Sunnah. If one claims the opposite, then his claim and heresy shall be in Hellfire. Hence, you may kill anyone who claims it and kill his followers, for they shall verily be in Hellfire.”

See *al-Amḥ* by Shaykh al-Mufḥd (AH 413), pp. 53; *Wasʾil al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amilḥ (AH 1104), 28:337, H. 34900, 3rd *ʾadḥ* in Section: *bjb ʾukm man shatama al-nabiyya aw idda`j al-nubuwwata kjdhiban* (Rulings Appertained to One Who Insults the Holy Prophet Or Claims Being Prophet Falsely).

The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) is also reported as saying:

□

the truth of Islam, because both Christianity and Judaism do not deny the coming of a new religion that would abrogate the laws of these two religions. Moreover, neither Prophet Moses (ﷺ) nor Prophet Jesus (ﷺ) claimed that no prophet would come after them.

How is it then acceptable for Jews and Christians to rest on their beliefs and lean on their religions before they investigate the religion that is next to theirs, namely Christianity and Islam for the Jews and Islam for the Christians. By virtue of reason, it is also obligatory upon the followers of these religions to investigate the authenticity of the subsequent claim of prophethood so that they might follow it if proven true; otherwise, it would be wise for them, by virtue of reason too, to abide by their current beliefs and religions.

As has been previously cited, a Muslim, when accepting the belief of Islam, is not required to investigate the other religions, including the past ones and the coming ones that claim coming with a new religion, because:

As regarding the past religions, a Muslim is supposed to believe in these religions; therefore, he is not required to ask for proofs on them. The matter is predetermined for him. The laws of Islam abrogate all laws of previous religions. As a result, a Muslim must not act upon those laws.

As regarding future religions,⁽¹⁾ a Muslim is also exempted

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Qurʾān has confirmed that prophethood is sealed by the prophethood of Muḥammad—peace be upon him and his Household:

□

In the view of Muslims, the Holy Prophet, Muḥammad (ﷺ), is unquestionably the most honest and most truthful of all. He is as exactly as described by Almighty Allah in the Holy Qur'in:

□ωε) υθδ |βε) ηζυ #□υθολ;ε# η τθ ↓,ε←Zτ□ ετBυρ
ηζυ 4θυρθθ□ √θ ρυρ

Nor does he (the Holy Prophet) speak from his own desire. This is naught but a revelation from Us.
(53/3-4)

A Muslim is thus not required to inquire a proof on the authenticity of a later prophethood.

On account of the long period between us and the age of

adfq (AH 381), pp. 74-79, Section: *bjb ma`nj qawl al-nabiyy li`aliyyin: anta minnε bimanzilati hjrεna min mεsj illj annahε lj nabiyya ba`dε* (The Significance of the Holy Prophet's Saying to `Alε: "For me, you occupy the same position that (Prophet) Aaron enjoyed with (Prophet) Moses. Yet, there shall not be a prophet coming after me."), H. 1&2; *al-Amjle* by Shaykh al-εsε (AH 465), pp. 171, 253, 307, 342, 548, 555, 558, 566, 598, 599; *Musnad Abε-Djwεd al-εayilisε* (AH 204), pp. 29; *al-Muεannaf* by `Abd al-Razziq al-`an`jnε (AH 211), 11:226, H. 20390; *Musnad Aḥmad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 1:184, 3:23; *al-εle Muslim* (AH 261), 7:120; *Sunan Ibn Mijah* (AH 273), 1:45, H. 121; *Sunan al-Tirmidhe* (AH 279), 5:304, H. 3814; *al-Sunan al-Kubri* by al-Nassi'ε (AH 303), 5:44, 45, 108, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 144, 240, H. 8138, 8141, 8143, 8399, 8429, 8433, 8435, 8438, 8441, 8442, 8444, 8446, 8447, 8511, 8780; *Sunan al-Bayhaqe* (AH 458), 9:40. Commenting on this *adεth*, al-Bayhaqe says, "This *adεth* has been mentioned by al-Bukhjrε and Muslim in their books of *al-εle* on the authority of Shu`bah. Thus did tens of other reference books of *adεth*."

فِي أُمَّتِي كَذَّابُونَ وَدَجَّالُونَ، سَبْعَةٌ وَعِشْرُونَ؛ مِنْهُمْ أَرْبَعُ نِسْوَةٍ. وَإِنِّي خَاتَمُ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ، لَا نَبِيَّ بَعْدِي.

"There shall be twenty-seven liars and impostors in my nation. Four of them shall be women. I am verily the Seal of the Prophets. No prophet shall come after me."

See *Musnad Aḥmad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 5:396; *Majma` al-Zaw'id* by al-Haythamε (AH 807), 7:332, Section: *bjb mj ji'a fε al-kadhhdhjbεn* (Traditions Concerning the Liars).

The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) is also reported as saying:

كَانَتْ بَنُو إِسْرَائِيلَ تَسُوسُهُمُ الْأَنْبِيَاءُ؛ كُلَّمَا هَلَكَ نَبِيٌّ خَلَفَهُ نَبِيٌّ. وَإِنَّهُ لَا نَبِيَّ بَعْدِي.

"The Children of Israel (i.e. the Israelis) used to be headed by the prophets; therefore, when a prophet died, another prophet would succeed him. Verily, there shall not be a prophet coming after me."

See *al-εle al-Bukhjrε* (AH 256), 4:144; *al-Sunan al-Kubri* by al-Bayhaqe (AH 458), 8:144; *al-εle Muslim* (AH 261), 6:17.

Through his famous discourse with `Alε ibn Abε-εlib, the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) confirmed that he would be the last of the prophets. So, he is reported to have said in the uninterruptedly reported *adεth* known as '*adεth al-manzilah*':

أَنْتَ مِنِّي بِمَنْزِلَةِ هَارُونَ مِنْ مُوسَى؛ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ لَا نَبِيَّ بَعْدِي.

"In relation to me, you occupy the same position that (Prophet) Aaron occupied in relation to (Prophet) Moses except that (you are not a prophet because) there shall not be a prophet coming after me."

See *al-Maḥsin* by al-Barqe (AH 274 or 280), 1:259, Chapter: *kitjb al-εafwah* (Book of the Elite), Section: *bjb al-infirjd* (Peculiarity), H. 99; *al-Ghjrjt* by al-Thaqafε al-Kεfε (AH 283), 1:62; *al-Kife* by al-Kulaynε (AH 329), 8:107; *Ma`jnε al-Akhbjr* by Shaykh al-

The one and only conviction that one must attain is that one has pursued the best of all ways that is believed to release one from responsibilities and duties towards Almighty Allah and to approach the conviction that one is not liable for any duty before the Lord and is released from the Lord's punishment or reproach since one has followed

Our Doctrines Concerning:

- ⌘ **Imamate**
- ⌘ **Infallibility of the Iṃm**
- ⌘ **Attributes and Knowledge of the Iṃm**
- ⌘ **Obedience to the Iṃms**
- ⌘ **Love for the Ahl al-Bayt**
- ⌘ **The Holy Iṃms**
- ⌘ **Imamate being Decided by Divine Commission**
- ⌘ **Number of the Iṃms**
- ⌘ **Al-Mahḍ**
- ⌘ **The Return (Raj`ah)**
- ⌘ **Taqiyyah (Pious Dissimulation)**

PART THREE

IMAMATE

such knowledge of religious duties, such as the Imim, according to the faith of the *Imimiyyah*, and others, according to each sect's faith.

Even if man does not believe in Imamate and does not suppose that it is a fundamental of Islam, he should, examine the concept of Imamate, if only to absolve himself of responsibility in this matter.

We also believe that Imamate, just like Prophethood, is a necessary grace of Almighty Allah. As a result, there must be in each age an *imim* (leader) to represent the Prophet in his missions of guiding and leading human beings towards the right path that they might achieve prosperity and pleasure in this world as well as the next. Such a leader must also enjoy the same authority enjoyed by the Prophet, such as supreme authority over the people, so that he can manage their affairs and interests, maintain justice among them and wipe out injustice and oppression.

Accordingly, Imamate is only a continuation of prophethood, and the reason for which Almighty Allah sends messengers and prophets is also the reason why the Prophet must be succeeded by an Imim.

In view of that, we, the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah*, state that Imamate cannot be decided without a commission from Almighty Allah conveyed to us by the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) or the previous Imim (`a). Imamate is thus not subordinate to selection or choice by the people, for they are not authorized to nominate anyone to this position if they desire and to depose anyone they do not like from this position and thus remain without an Imim, because:

مَنْ مَاتَ وَلَمْ يَعْرِفْ إِمَامَ زَمَانِهِ مَاتَ مَيِّتَةً جَاهِلِيَّةً.

23

IMAMATE

WE BELIEVE that Imamate⁽¹⁾ is one of the fundamentals of the religion; one's faith is imperfect without belief in Imamate. It is also unacceptable to depend upon one's fathers, folks, or mentors as regards the belief in Imamate, no matter how great these individuals might be; rather it is obligatory upon every individual to investigate and evaluate the matter of Imamate as exactly as it is obligatory to investigate the Unity of the worshipped Lord and Prophethood.

Release from one's liability from religious duties and obligations depends upon one's belief in Imamate, as it is then obligatory to obey the Imim in the performance of one's religious duties. However, if Imamate is not accepted as one of the fundamentals of religion, it is then obligatory on account of reason to believe in Imamate to be released from one's liability from religious duties and obligations because not all duties and obligations can be decided with certainty without sufficient knowledge; therefore, it is necessary to refer to persons who we believe have achieved

⁽¹⁾ Imamate (*imamah*) stands for belief in the Divinely commissioned leadership of the Holy Twelve Imim and belief in their inerrancy, immaculacy, and other affairs discussed in books dedicated to this subject. [translator]

whether they like him or not, support him or not, obey him or not, or whether he is present or absent from their sight.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ Imjm `Alç Amçr al-Mu'minç (a) is reported to have said:

لَا تَخْلُو الْأَرْضُ مِنْ قَائِمٍ لِلَّهِ بِحُجَّةٍ؛ إِمَّا ظَاهِرًا مَشْهُورًا أَوْ خَائِفًا
مَعْمُورًا، لِئَلَّا تَبْطُلَ حُجُجُ اللَّهِ وَبَيِّنَاتُهُ.

“The earth will never be empty of one who maintains Almighty Allah’s argument (against His creatures); be he known and recognized (by people) or alienated and unknown, so that Almighty Allah’s arguments and clear proofs be not ineffective.”

See *Nahj al-Balighah*, with a commentary by Muammad `Abduh, 4:37, Section: *bjb al-mukhtjr min ikam amçr al-mu'minç* (Selected Maxims of Amçr al-Mu'minç). This maxim was also cited within Imjm `Alç’s discourse addressed to Mjlik al-Ashtar, No. 147. See also *Kamil al-Dçn wa-Tamjm al-Ni`mah* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), pp. 294; *Tu`af al-Uqçl* by Ibn Shu`bah al-`arrinç (the seventh century of Hjirah), pp. 17 (The English version of this book is entitled ‘*Tu`af al-Uqçl*: Masterpieces of the Intellects, translated by Badr Shahin, Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 2001.); *Khaççir al-A`immah* by al-Sharçf al-Murtaçç (AH 406), pp. 106; *al-Ghjrjt* by al-Thaqafç al-Kçfç (AH 283), 1:153; *Mançqib Amçr al-Mu'minç* by al-Kçfç (app. AH 300), 2:96; *al-Hidjyah al-Kubrj* by al-Khaççbç (AH 334), pp. 362; *Dustçr Ma`jlim al-ikam wa-Ma`thçr Makjrim al-Shiyam* by Ibn Saljmah (AH 454), pp. 84; *Nuzhat al-Nj`ir wa-Tanbçh al-Khççir* by al-`alwjinç (the fifth century of Hijrah), pp. 57; *Tjrchkh Madçnat Dimashq* by Ibn `Asçkir (AH 571), 14:18, 5:253, 254; *Yanjbç` al-Mawaddah* by al-Qanadçzç al-`anafç (AH 1294), 1:89, H. 34. Many other reference books of traditions have recorded this maxim, which has been described by Ibn `ajar al-`Asqaljinç as being one of the most authentic maxims. See *Fatç al-Bjrch Sharç al-çç al-Bukhjrç* by Ibn `ajar al-`Asqaljinç (AH 852), 6:359.

He who dies without recognition of the Imjm of his time has in fact died just like the ignorant ones who died before accepting Islam.⁽¹⁾

Through uninterruptedly transmitted narrations, reporters quoted the Holy Prophet (ç) as having confirmed the previous decision.

From the above, we conclude that it is impossible that any age can be devoid of a Divinely commissioned leader, it being obligatory on the people to obey him (i.e. the Imim),

⁽¹⁾ This tradition has been mentioned in both Sunni and Shi`çte reference books of *adçth*, yet with little difference in expression, such as: *al-Ma`jisin* by al-Barqç (AH 274), 1:92, 154, 155, published by Djr al-Kutub al-Islimiyyah; *Baççir al-Darajit al-Kubrj* by al-`affir (AH 290), pp. 279, 529, 530; *Qurb al-Isnçd* by al-`imyarç al-Baghdjdç (AH 300), pp. 351; *al-Kjçç* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 1:377, 378, 397, 2:20, 21, 8:146; *al-Imjmah wa`l-Tabçirah Min al-`ayrah* by Ibn Bjawayh al-Qummç (AH 329), pp. 152; *al-Ghaybah* by al-Nu`mjnç (AH 380), pp. 127, 130, 134, 135; *Uyçn Akhbjr al-Riçç* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 1:130; *Musnad Abç-Djwçd al-`ayçlisç* (AH 204), pp. 259; *Musnad A`mad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 4:96; *Musnad Abç-Ya`lç al-Mawçilç* (AH 307), 13:366, H. 7375; *al-Mu`jam al-Kabçr* by al-`abarjinç (AH 360), 19:388; *Sharç Nahj al-Balighah* by Ibn Abç`l-`adçd, the Mu`tazilite (AH 656), 9:155, 13:242; *Majma` al-Zawçid* by al-Haythamç (AH 807), 5:225, Section: *bjb luzçm al-jamj`ah wa`l-nahy `an al-khurçj `an al-ummah wa qitlihim* (Holding by the Congregation and Warning Against Separation from and Fighting Against the Nation); *Kanz al-`Ummjl* by al-Muttaqç al-Hindç (AH 974), 1:103, 208, H. 464, 1038, 1:65, H. 14863; *Yanjbç` al-Mawaddah* by al-Qanadçzç al-`anafç (AH 1249), 3:372, Section No. 91, H. 3.

In the same way as it is acceptable for the Prophet (ﷺ) to absent himself from people's sights, such as his disappearance from view in the cave⁽¹⁾ or in the col,⁽²⁾ it is acceptable for the Imim to absent himself from view, be his occultation long or short, according to reason. Almighty Allah has said in the Holy Qur'in:

وَلَقَدْ جَاءَهُمْ بِآيَاتِنَا فَكَذَّبُوا فَسَاءَ لِمَا كَانُوا يَكْسِبُونَ

And there is a guide for every people. (13/7)

وَلَقَدْ جَاءَهُمْ بِآيَاتِنَا فَكَذَّبُوا فَسَاءَ لِمَا كَانُوا يَكْسِبُونَ

وَلَقَدْ جَاءَهُمْ بِآيَاتِنَا فَكَذَّبُوا فَسَاءَ لِمَا كَانُوا يَكْسِبُونَ

There is not a nation but a warner has passed among them. (35/24)

⁽¹⁾ This indicates the Holy Prophet's absence from view in the Cave 'arj' where he received the first Divine revelation. [translator]

⁽²⁾ This also indicates his confinement to the Col of Abf-±lib for a few years after the social boycott imposed upon him and his relatives by the polytheists of the Quraysh. [translator]

24

INFALLIBILITY OF THE IMiM

WE BELIEVE that an Imim, just like a Prophet, must be infallible from all vices and defects, whether open or concealed, from childhood up to death, deliberately or unintentionally.

An Imim must be free from inadvertence, error, or unawareness, because the Imims, just like the Prophets, are maintainers of the religious law and they must stand out firm for it. The proofs that have convinced us to believe in the inerrancy of the Prophets are the same as those that have convinced us to believe in the inerrancy of the Imims. An Arabic verse says:

It is not impossible for Allah to unite the whole world
in one person.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ This poetic verse has been composed by Abŧ-Nuwġs, one of the famous Arab poets. See *Mukhtaŧar al-Ma`ġnŧ* by al-Taftazġnŧ (AH 792), pp. 306.

.Ξζ9]≠⊙ □≠T | □∈□ ⊃β>♣□

O Lord, increase my knowledge!⁽¹⁾

Psychological studies have proven that each human being passes by an hour or several hours in his lifetime during which he can have knowledge of a number of things by intuition, which is part of inspiration, by virtue of the power that Almighty Allah has granted man to acquaint himself with such knowledge. This power, however, differs among people; increase or decrease owing to each man's nature. During such hours, man's mind suddenly gets to know certain things without intervention of the thought process or instruction of mentors. In fact, each individual can experience such states many times in his lifetime.

On the grounds of this experimental fact demonstrated by ancient and recent philosophers, certain people can attain their utmost inspirational competence.

On the strength of this fact, we can conclude that the Holy Imims (`a) hold the highest degree of the power of intuition, especially when we come to know that they

⁽¹⁾ This supplication is part of the holy verse that reads:

\\≡ψφ \\σ? □ωρ 3 □,ψσ/9Ξ# ∇7≠=ψ9/9Ξ# ♠!Ξ# □v?≈ψ(τΓσ] ψ7/□σ9∈) #⊙|⊙)⊙□ βρ& ∪≡)6σ% ¯ΞB ∪β#v™)□∇) /9ΞΞ∈/ Ξζ9]≠⊙ □≠T | □∈□ ⊃β>♣□ ≡%υρ (...| μ⊙□ | μυρ

∩⊃⊃⊃

“Supremely exalted is therefore Allah, the King, the Truth. And do not make haste with the Qur'ān before its revelation is made complete to you. And say, ‘O my Lord! Increase me in knowledge.’” (20/114)

25

ATTRIBUTES AND KNOWLEDGE OF THE IMIM

WE BELIEVE that an *imim*, just like a prophet must be the best of all mankind in attributes of human perfection, such as courage, generosity, chasteness, truthfulness, decency, prudence, reason, wisdom, and morality.

The evidence on this doctrine is the same as that which we gave for the prophet's superiority.

An *imim* receives all Divine knowledge and laws, as well as information, from the Prophet or the Imim preceding him.

When a new question arises, he must have knowledge of it through inspiration, which he receives by way of power of sacredness that Almighty Allah has placed in him. Hence, when he gives attention to something and wills to know it in actuality, he will neither miss nor fail to hit it, without reason-based proofs or instructions of mentors. The knowledge of an *imim* can however be increased and intensified. As a result, the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) used to pray to Almighty Allah saying,

In spite of this they never delayed an answer to any question that was addressed to them. Moreover, their tongues never uttered the statement, 'I do not know,'⁽¹⁾ and

In the beginning, Yazd refused, but the attendants urged him to do so, saying, "Amr al-Mu'min! Allow him to ascend the pulpit so that we can hear something new from him."

Yazd replied, "If he ascends the pulpit (and says something), he will not leave it before begetting scandals for me and for the family of Abf-Sufyin!"

One of the attendants said, "Amr al-Mu'min! What can such a boy do? Seemingly, he masters nothing!"

Yazd replied, "He is from the Household whose members have been fed with knowledge without intervention!"

However, the attendants insisted upon Yazd until they compelled him to allow the Imjm to deliver a speech.

The Imjm ('a) thus ascended the pulpit, started his speech with words of praise and thanks to Almighty Allah, and then delivered a speech that was so soul-stirring that all the attendants could not help weeping.

References: Bi'ir al-Anwjr by al-Majlis (AH 1111), 45:138; Lawj`ij al-Ashjin f Maqtal al-usayn by Mu'sin al-Amn (AH 1371), pp. 233. A similar narration has been recorded in al-Futl by Ibn A'tham al-Kff (AH 314), 5:132-133 and Maqtal al-usayn by al-Khawrizm (AH 568), 2:69-71.

⁽¹⁾ Imjm Ja`far al-idq ('a) is reported to have said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَجْعَلُ حُجَّةً فِي أَرْضِهِ يُسْأَلُ عَنْ شَيْءٍ فَيَقُولُ: 'لَا أَدْرِي!'

"As He establishes a 'ujjah (one maintaining Almighty Allah's pleas against His creatures) on His lands, Almighty Allah never makes him answer any question with, 'I do not know'."

□

possess the purest minds that are ready to receive information at all times, in all states, and under all circumstances. Accordingly and as has been previously maintained, when the Imim gives attention to something and wills to know it, he will know it through this holy inspirational power without premeditation, introduction, or instruction of mentors. Such information will then manifest itself in the minds of the Holy Imims in the same way as visible things reflect themselves in mirrors without dimness or obscurity.

This fact reveals itself very clearly in the history of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and Imims (`a) who never attended the classes of any mentor, nor received the instructions of any scholar since early childhood up to maturity. Nobody ever taught them any aspect of science or art, including reading and writing. History tells us that they were never reported to have joined elementary schools or studied under a teacher.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ It is an accepted fact that the Holy Imjm of the Ahl al-Bayt ('a) received perfect knowledge in essence; i.e. without intervention of a mentor or a teacher. This fact was even declared by the tyrant Yazd ibn Mu`jwiyah during the following event:

After Yazd had killed Imjm al-usayn ibn `Al (‘a)—the delight of the Holy Prophet’s (s) eyes—Imjm `Al ibn al-usayn (Zayn al-`abidn ('a)) was made captive. He had been taken from the battlefield, at Karbal', and led to Damascus, the capital of Yazd. Imjm Zayn al-`abidn ('a) asked Yazd to allow him to ascend a pulpit in order to deliver a speech, saying, "Yazd! Allow me to ascend these pieces of wood and utter a few words that will bring about Almighty Allah's pleasure and (Divine) reward for these attendants."

□

they never withheld the answer to a question so as to consult others or deliberate,... etc.

Unlike the Holy Imims (`a), biographies of every Muslim jurisprudent, narrator, or master scholar contains information about the names of those who educated, taught, and trained them in fields in which they excelled. Moreover, such biographies contain situations in which such scholars could not find answers to many questions and doubted many others. This is indeed ordinary in the lives of human beings in all places and times.

of Allah's Plea; Those Are The Holy Imjm); *Kamjl al-Dcn wa-Tamjm al-Ni`mah* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 223, H. 15, Section: *bjb ittiyl al-waiyyah min ladun jdam wa anna al-arqa lj takhl min ujati alljhi* (Attachment of Successorship Since Adam And The Earth Cannot be Devoid of a Maintainer of Allah's Plea).

This *adeth* is reported in the following reference books: *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 1:227, Section: *(bjb) anna al-a'immata `indahum jamu al-kutubi allat nazalat min `indi alljhi* (The Holy Imjm Hold All the Divinely Revealed Books), H. 1; *al-Imjmah wa'l-Tabirah* by Ibn Bjbawayh al-Qumm (AH 329), pp. 139, H. 159; *al-Tawid* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 275, H. 1, Section: *bjb al-raddu `alj alladhna qil inna alljha thlithu thaljthatin* (Refutation of Those Who Claimed Allah Being One of Three Gods); *al-Fuyl al-Muhimmah f Uyl al-A'immah* by al-urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 1:490, Section No. 7, H. 19/691.

Imjm Ja`far al-`idiq ('a) is also reported to have said:

إِنَّ الْأَرْضَ لَا تَتْرَكَ إِلَّا بِعَالِمٍ؛ يَحْتَاجُ النَّاسُ إِلَيْهِ وَلَا يَحْتَاجُ إِلَى النَّاسِ، يَعْلَمُ الْحَلَالَ وَالْحَرَامَ.

“Verily, the earth shall never be left without a knowledgeable person whom people need but he needs none, since he has full acquaintance with what is lawful and what is not.”

This *adeth* is reported in the following reference books: *Al-Majsin* by al-Barq (AH 274), 1: 366/794, H. 196, Chapter: *kitjb maibi al-`ulam* (Lanterns of Glooms), Section: *bjb lj takhl al-arou min `jlim* (The Earth Cannot Be Devoid Of A Knowledgeable Person); published by the Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly; *Bai'ir al-Darajit* by al-`affir (AH 290), pp. 156, H. 4, Section: *bjb mj `inda al-a'immati min kutub al-awwalcn* (The Books Of The Ancient Generations That Are Held By The Holy Imjm ('a)).

A similar *adeth* has been reported in the following reference books: *Bai'ir al-Darajit* by al-`affir (AH 290), pp. 347, H. 4, Section: *bjb f al-a'immatu warith al`ilma min rasli alljhi* (The Holy Imjm: The Inheritors of Knowledge From the Messenger of Allah); pp. 505, H. 8, Section: *bjb al-arou lj takhl min al-ujjatu wa hum al-a'immatu* (The Earth Cannot be Devoid of Maintainers

□

The Pure Islam and The Laws Of The Religion), H.14.

When Abf-BaYcr asked him about the exegesis of the aforementioned holy verse, Imjm Ja`far al-jdiq ('a) answered:

نَزَلَتْ فِي عَلِيٍّ بْنِ أَبِي طَالِبٍ وَالْحَسَنِ وَالْحُسَيْنِ.

“This verse was revealed about `Alc ibn Abc-±ilib, al-°asan, and al-°usayn.”

Abf-BaYcr asked, “People may ask why the names of `Alc and his Household were not mentioned openly in the Book of Allah (i.e. the Holy Qur'jn)!”

The Imjm ('a) taught:

فَوَلُّوا لَهُمْ: إِنَّ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ 3 نَزَلَتْ عَلَيْهِ الصَّلَاةُ وَلَمْ يُسَمَّ اللَّهُ لَهُمْ ثَلَاثًا وَلَا أَرْبَعًا حَتَّى كَانَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ 3 هُوَ الَّذِي فَسَّرَ ذَلِكَ. وَنَزَلَتْ عَلَيْهِ الزَّكَاةُ وَلَمْ يُسَمَّ لَهُمْ مِنْ كُلِّ أَرْبَعِينَ دِرْهَمًا دِرْهَمٌ...

“You may answer those as follows: Prayer was revealed to the Messenger of Allah without mentioning its details and method (as how many units each prayer should contain); therefore, it was the Messenger of Allah who spelled out its details. Similarly, the poor-rate (zak;t) was revealed to the Messenger of Allah without mentioning as how much the levy of each item should be...”

See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 1:286, Section: *bjb mj naYya alljhu `azza wa jalla wa rasfluhc `alj al-a'immati wj'idan fa-wj'idan* (Texts of Almighty Allah and His Apostle Concerning the Nomination of Each Imjm), H. 1.

Imjm Muammad al-Bjqir ('a), explaining the holy verse,

□□□<□p[& #□v<€)v□ □A0□□♣□9□# □v<€) | v□□□v □\θσ9v□
τ|| %♥!□# | μψθ≠ψ\σ9 \NΣκ|]≠B □□/BΦ{□#
\NΣκ|]≠B ...| μτP0™<€7/ZoK (Y□□

□

26

OBEDIENCE TO THE IMiMS

WE BELIEVE that the Holy Imims (`a) are the very men of authority whom Almighty Allah has ordered people to obey,⁽¹⁾ the witnesses over the nations, the doors

⁽¹⁾ Explaining the holy verse:

(#0@□□<□p& (#|0@ΨτB#v™ τ|| %♥!□# □πκ□□p□↓≈τ□
□□<□p[& v□ τA0□□♣□9□# (#0@□□<□p&v□ ♥!□#
. (O™3Z≠B □□\ΔΦ{□#

“O you who believe! Obey Allah and obey the Messenger and those in authority from among you.” (4/59)

Imjm Muammad al-Bjqir ('a) is reported to have said:

الْأَيُّمَةُ مِنْ وَلَدِ عَلِيٍّ وَقَاطِمَةِ إِلَى أَنْ تَقُومَ السَّاعَةُ.

“The Imjm are from the descendants of `Alc and Fj§imah until the Hour (of Resurrection) shall come.”

See *al-Imjmah wa'l-TabYirah* by Ibn Bjbawayh al-Qummc (AH 329), pp. 133, H. 145. See also *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 1:276, H. 1, Section: *(bjb) anna al-imjma ya`rifu al-imjma alladhc yakEnu min ba`dih* (An Imjm Knows The Imjm To Succeed Him); *UyEn Akhbjr al-Ri□j* by Shaykh al-`adfc (AH 381), 1:139, Section: *(bjb) mj katabahc al-ri□j lil-ma'mEn fc ma'□ al-isljm wa sharji'i` al-dcEn* (Imjm al-Ri□j's Epistle To al-Ma'mEn Concerning

□

☐

has spoken and act by His Command. (21/26-7)

Furthermore, they are those whom Almighty Allah has kept away from impurity and cleansed with a thorough cleansing.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ This is an indication to the following holy verse:

©N06Zτ© | =εδJ □□□9 ♠!ε# ↓□□□□□ □ψ9↓Pε)

εM/□τ7/9ε# □≡ |δρ& }♣ | _εη□9ε#

ηCCU # [□□εγ | ←σ? \ /TM.υ□εδγσ←□□υρ

Allah only desires to keep away impurity from you, O people of the House, and to purify you a thorough purifying. (33/33)

See the following reference books: *al-«□j|* by Ibn Shīdhīn al-Azdī al-Naysībī (AH 260), pp. 170; *al-Ghīrīt* by al-Thaqafī al-Kffī (AH 283), 1:199; *Manqib Amīr al-Mu'minīn* by al-Kffī al-Qīqī (app. AH 300), 1:157, 2:132, 152, 161, 505; *al-Mustarshid fī Imjmat Amīr al-Mu'minīn* by al-±abarī (the Imjmite) (the early years of the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 598, 685; *al-Amjīl* by Shaykh al-±fī (AH 460), pp. 264; *Tathbīt al-Immah* by al-Hīdī al-Zaydī al-Yamanī (AH 298), pp. 34; *Musnad Aīmad ibn °anbal* (AH 241), 3:259, 4:107, 258, 6:292, 298, 304; *Sunan al-Tirmidhī* (AH 279), 5:31, 328, 361, H. 3258, 3875, 3966; *Kitāb al-Sunnah* by °Amr ibn Abī °aīim al-°aīīk (AH 287), pp. 589; *al-Sunan al-Kubrī* by al-Nassī'ī (AH 303), 5:113, H. 8409; *Maqītil al-±libīyyīn* by al-Iḥfāhīnī (AH 356), pp. 33; *al-Mustadrak °Alī al-°aī'ayn* by al-°īkim al-Naysībī (AH 405), 3:172; *Shawhīd al-Tanzīl li-Qawī'id al-Tafīl* by al-°īkim al-°asakīnī (the fifth century of Hijrah), 2:103; *al-°awī'īq al-Mu'riqah* by Ibn °ajar al-Haythamī (AH 974), pp. 143.

For more details, refer to the following books:

- *°yat al-Taṣhīr* (Verse of Purification) by Mu'ammad Mahdī al-°īfī (contemporary), Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt ('a)

□

further demonstrated their positions by saying,

مَثَلُ أَهْلِ بَيْتِي فِي هَذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ كَسَفِينَةِ نُوحٍ؛ مَنْ رَكِبَهَا نَجَا، وَمَنْ تَخَلَّفَ عَنْهَا غَرِقَ وَهَوَى.

The likeness of my Household in this nation is the Ark of Noah; whosoever embarked upon it was saved, but whoever turned away from it was drowned.⁽¹⁾

As for the Glorious Qur'in, it has described them, saying:

...| μτP00)ε7 (Y0□ □ω ηεευ □χ00Bυ□J 3□B ·□ετ6ε©)ετ/

ηεευ □χ0(=ψ9 \|τ□ —εvε□/Bpεε/ N(δυρ ⊃A)0σ)/9εεε/

[They are] honored servants who speak not until He

°Ajlfnī al-Jarrī'ī (AH 1162), 2:327.

⁽¹⁾ This *°adēth* is recorded in the following reference books: *Da'ī'im al-Islīm* by al-Qīqī al-Nu'mīn al-Maghribī (AH 363), 1:28, 80; *°Uyīn Akhbīr al-Rīqī* by Shaykh al-°adīq (AH 381), 1:30; *al-Amjīl* by Shaykh al-°adīq (AH 381), pp. 342; *Kamīl al-Dīn wa-Tamīm al-Nīmah* by Shaykh al-°adīq (AH 381), pp. 241; *Tu'af al-°Uqīl* by Ibn Shu'bah al-°arrīnī (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 113; *Khaī'ī'ī al-A'immah* by al-Sharīf al-Raīqī (AH 406), pp. 77; *al-Mu'jam al-°aghīr* by al-±abarīnī (AH 360), 1:139-140; *al-Mustadrak °Alī al-°aī'ayn* by al-°īkim al-Naysībī (AH 405), 2:343, 3:151; *Sharī Nahj al-Balīghah* by Ibn Abī °l-°adīd al-Mu'tazīlī (AH 656), 1:218; *Majma' al-Zawī'id* by al-Haythamī (AH 807), 9:168; *al-Jīmi' al-°aghīr* by al-Suyfī (AH 911), 1:373, 2:532, H. 2442, 8162; *Kanz al-°Ummīl* by al-Muttaqī al-Hindī (AH 974), 12: 94, 95, 98, H. 34144, 34151, 34169, 34170; *al-°awī'īq al-Mu'riqah* by Ibn °ajar al-Haythamī (AH 974), pp. 152.

The *°adēth* can also be found in other reference books of *°adēth*.

It is thus obligatory to submit to them, give oneself over to them, and accept whatever they say.

Pursuant to this, we believe that the religious laws, commissioned by Almighty Allah, must not be derived from any resource other than their salubrious resources, yet it is invalid to take these laws from other than them, and the religious responsibility of any person who refers to other than them is not fulfilled. Indeed, such a person must not feel content that he has carried out the duties imposed upon him by Almighty Allah unless he carries them out according to the teachings of the Holy Imims (`a).

In this tumultuous ocean overcrowded with billows of seditious, misleading, litigious, and fallacious matters, the Holy Imims (`a) represent Noah's Ark; whosoever embarks upon it will be definitely saved, but whoever falls behind will be drowned.

In this thesis, we will not seek to prove that the Holy Imims

See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 1:76, H. 10, Section: *bjb ikhtilif al-adceth* (Discrepancy in Narration), 7:412, H. 5, Section: *(bjb) karjhiyyat al-Irtifi` ilj Quat al-Jawr* (Discommendation of Submitting before an Unjust Judge); *al-Kifc fc'l-Fiqh* by al-°alabc (AH 447), pp. 425; *Tahdhcb al-A'kjm* by Shaykh al-±fsc (AH 460), 6:218, H. 6, Section: *bjb man ilayhi al-ukm wa aqsjm al-quat wal-muftcn* (The Authorized for Judgment and the Kinds of Judges and Muftis), Chapter: *(kitjb) al-qacjyj wa'l-a'kjm* (Issues and Laws); *al-Fu¥l al-Muhimmah fc U¥l al-A'immah* by al-°urr al-°milc (AH 1104), 1: 538, H. 1, Section No. 20: *(bjb) wujfb al-rujfc` ilj ruwt al-adceth min al-shc`ah fc mj rawawhu min al-a'kjm* (The Obligation of Reference to the Shi`te Narrators of °adceth in Laws).

Furthermore, we believe that the commandments of the Holy Imims (`a) are verily the commandments of Almighty Allah, their prohibitions are His prohibitions, to obey them is to obey Him, to disobey them is to disobey Him, to adhere to them is to adhere to Him, and to show enmity towards them is to show enmity towards Him. It is also forbidden to reject them, because to reject them is to reject the Holy Messenger (¥), and to reject the Holy Messenger (¥) is to reject Almighty Allah.⁽¹⁾

World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1417/AD 1996.

- *¥at al-TaShcr Ru'yatun Mubtakarah* (A Unique Prospect On The Verse of Purification) by al-Fiail al-Lankarjnc & Shihjb al-Dcn al-Ishrjqc, First Edition, AH 1416/ AD 1995.
- *¥at al-TaShcr: Dirjsatun fi'l-Madjlcl wa'l-Ahdjfc* (Verse of Purification: A Survey of Denotations and Objectives) by `Abd al-Zahrj' `Uthmjn Muammad, First Edition, AH 1414.
- *Ma`a al-Doctor al-Sjlfs fc ¥at al-TaShcr* (With Dr. al-Sjlfs on the Verse of Purification) –No. 16 in the Series of *`Alj Mj'idat al-`Aqcdah* (On the Table of Doctrine) by `Alc al-°usaync al-Mcljnc.

The reader is also advised to see the major reference books of *tafscr* (exegesis of the Holy Qur'in) concerning this holy Verse of Purification (33:33) as well as the major reference books of Islamic heritage.

⁽¹⁾ At the end of Ibn °an°alah's Accepted Narration (*maqblah*), Imjm Ja`far al-°idiq ('a) is reported to have said:

الرَّادُّ عَلَيْنَا رَادُّ عَلَى اللَّهِ، وَهُوَ عَلَى حَدِّ الشَّرْكَ بِاللَّهِ.

... To reject our words is to reject the Words of Almighty Allah, which is as unacceptable as ascribing partners unto Him.

statement:

إِنِّي قَدْ تَرَكْتُ فِيكُمْ مَا إِنْ تَمَسَّكْتُمْ بِهِ لَنْ تَضِلُّوا بَعْدِي
أَبَدًا؛ الثَّقَلَيْنِ، وَأَحَدُهُمَا أَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْآخَرِ: كِتَابَ اللَّهِ،
حَبْلُ مَمْدُودٌ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ إِلَى الْأَرْضِ، وَعِثْرَتِي أَهْلَ
بَيْتِي. أَلَا وَإِنَّهُمَا لَنْ يَفْتَرِقَا حَتَّى يَرِدَا عَلَيَّ الْحَوْضَ.

Verily, I am leaving among you that which shall
forever save you from straying off [the straight path
of the religion] as long as you hold fast to them.
They are the Two Weighty Things [*thaqalayn*]⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ The Arabic word '*thaqalayn*' is the dual form of the word '*thaqal*', which, in Arabic, means luggage that is burdened on a riding-animal. The word has been used in the Holy Qur'an to denote men and jinn:

وَنُفِثْنَا فِي الْأَرْضِ نَاقِرَاتُ الْعُقَدِ حَامِلَاتُ الْوِقْدِ

*We shall dispose of you, O ye two [weighty] dependents:
man and jinn. (55/31)*

Men and jinn are called '*thaqalayn*' because they are considered the two poles of the earth, as if they have burdened it. The Holy Prophet (s), in this famous *adath*, has likened the Holy Qur'an and the Household to two weighty things, because religion depends upon them in its validity and it lives long in the same way as the earth lives as long as men and jinn are existent in it. Al-Zamakhshari (AH 538), in his book of *al-Fiqh fī Gharīb al-^oadath*, pp. 150, writes down, "He (i.e. the Holy Prophet (s)) has called these two (i.e. the Holy Qur'an and the Household) weighty things, because to abide by them and to act upon them is a weighty (i.e. burdensome) thing. Each important, precious thing can be called '*thaqal* (weighty)'. Therefore, he has called them '*thaqalayn*' owing to their momentous value and their stately standing."

□

(`a) were the legal caliphs (i.e. religious and political leaders of the Muslim nation) and successors of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ), and that they possessed Divine authority, because proving it will not bring back the circle of time or restore the usurped rights to their due owners. The most important point in this thesis is to prove the obligation of referring to the Holy Imams (`a) in obtaining the religious laws of Almighty Allah, and in gaining the directions of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) in their most accurate forms.

The purpose of this discussion is to verify the fact that to receive the religious laws of Islam from reporters and scholars who have not derived them from the Holy Imams' (`a) pure resources and have not sought light from their luminous sources is definitely deviation from the straight path of religion. Moreover, a Muslim, who learns his religious duties from any other source besides the Holy Imams (`a), must not be sure that he has fulfilled his duties towards Almighty Allah because there is a great divergence in opinions among the different sects of Muslims regarding the laws of Islam. An ordinary Muslim faces immense difficulty in choosing for himself from these divergent sects and schools. He is required to probe and investigate until he acquires a decisive pretext before Almighty Allah to follow a certain sect that he believes will lead him to the actual laws enacted by the Lord and thus, fulfill his duties toward Him. Generally, a certain engagement with a duty is required for certain release from it.

Categorical proofs demonstrate that it is obligatory to refer to the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) in the learning of the religious laws and that they are the genuine resources of the Divinely revealed laws of the religion after the Holy Prophet (ﷺ); at least on account of his authentically reported following

This does not mean that the descendants of `Adnġn are actual cousins of the Holy Prophet (s); rather, they are so in comparison with the descendants of Qa|šġn. Hence, this statement has been used metaphorically and after the deletion of the many additions of kinships, such as the son of the cousin of the forefather, and the like. If we thus consider the deletion of such additions, Abġ-Bakr's intention might have been true, since one of his forefathers was one day within the `Itrah of one of the Holy Prophet's (s) forefathers.

However, the Holy Prophet (s) declared who the members of his `Itrah were. He said:

إِنِّي تَارِكٌ فِيكُمْ الثَّقَلَيْنِ... وَعَثَرَتِي أَهْلَ بَيْتِي.

"I am leaving among you the two weighty things... my `Itrah; my Household."

On another occasion, he (s) declared who the members of his Household were. As regarding the following holy verse:

©N06Zτ©|=δJ □□□9 ♠!3# ↓□□□□□ □ψ9↓Pε)

εM/□τ7/93# □≡|δp& }♣ | _□□93#

ηCCU #[□□εγ | ←σ? \™.υ□εδγσ←©□υρ

Allah's wish is but to remove impurity from you, O Folk of the Household, and cleanse you with a thorough cleansing.
(33/33)

When this verse was revealed to him, the Holy Prophet (s) covered them (i.e. Imġm `Alġ, Lady Fġšġmah, Imġm al-°asan, and Imġm al-°usayn ('a)) with a cloak and said:

اللَّهُمَّ هَؤُلَاءِ أَهْلُ بَيْتِي، فَأَذْهَبْ عَنْهُمْ الرَّجْسَ.

"O Allah: These are the Folk of my Household; so, (please do) remove all impurity from them."

One may ask as whom Imġm `Alġ ('a) meant by the aforementioned section of his speech. The answer is that he meant his two sons and

□

one of which is more significant than the other: [first] the Book of Almighty Allah, which is a rope extending from the heavens to the earth, and [second] my progeny [*itrah*],⁽¹⁾ the members of my

See also *al-Nihġyah fġ Gharġb al-°adġth wa'l-Athar* by Ibn al-Athġr al-Jawzġ (AH 606), 1:216.

⁽¹⁾ The Arabic word '*itrah*' stands for one's clan. Originally, it is the name of a plant that grows in different phyla. See *al-Fġ'iq fġ Gharġb al-°adġth*, pp. 150.

In one of his sermons, Imġm `Alġ ('a) says:

وَكَيْفَ تَعْمَهُونَ وَيَبَيِّنُكُمْ عَثَرَةُ نَبِيِّكُمْ؟ وَهُمْ أَزْمَةُ الْحَقِّ وَأَعْلَامُ الدِّينِ وَالسَّيْنَةُ الصَّدَقُ! فَأَنْزَلُوهُمْ بِأَحْسَنِ مَنَازِلِ الْقُرْآنِ، وَرَدُّوهُمْ وَرُودَ الْهَيْمِ الْعِطَاشِ.

"...How long shall there be bewilderment and why? Your prophet's family (`itrah), the definite rulers, speakers of honesty and truth, leaders of religion, are among you: place them up on the best positions, the Qur'anic positions and turn to them like thirsty camels going to a watering place."

(*Nahj al-Balġhah*, Sermon No. 87)"

Commenting on this section of the sermon, Ibn Abġ'l-°adġd says, "The actual `Itrah of the Prophet (s) is his nearest household and progeny. Inaccurate is the claim of those who say that his `Itrah is his kinsfolk including those remote in lineage. As for Abġ-Bakr's saying on the Day of Saqġfah (or after that day), "We are the `Itrah of Allah's Messenger (s) and his egg that brought him," he has used this expression metaphorically, because the people of Quraysh can be the `Itrah of the Prophet (s) in comparison with other tribes. However, they are not the Prophet's (s) `Itrah in reality. Similar to this, a descendant of `Adnġn (one of the two ancestors of the Arabs) vies in glory with a descendant of Qa|šġn (the other ancestor of the Arabs) saying, "I am the cousin of Allah's Messenger (s)."

□

as the following books:

- *°adeth al-Thaqalayn* by Mu'ammad Qiwi al-Den al-Qumm al-Washnaw; Cairo: *Djr al-Taqrab Bayna al-Madhhib al-Islimiyyah*.
- *°adeth al-Thaqalayn Tawjuruḥ Fqghuḥ* by `Al al-usayn al-Mlīn; Qum: The Author, First Edition, AH 1413.
- *Mu'ammad wa-°adeth al-Thaqalayn* by Najm al-Den al-Sharḥ al-Askar (AH 1390); Najaf: al-`adb Press; Fourth Edition.

For further benefit, let us refer to the following reference books that have cited the *°adeth al-Thaqalayn*: *Ba'ir al-Darajit al-Kubri* by al-`affir (AH 290), pp. 432-4, Section No. 17: (*bjb*) *f qawli rasli allhi inn tirikun fckum al-thaqalayni kitba allhi wa-ahla bayt* (The Holy Prophet's Saying: I am leaving with you the two weighty things; the Book of Allah and my Household); *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 1:294, 2:415; *al-Imimah wa'l-Tab'irah* by Ibn Bawayh al-Qumm (AH 329), pp. 149-150; *Da'im al-Islim* by al-Qi al-Nu'min al-Maghrib (AH 363), 1:28; *Kitb al-Ghaybah* by al-Nu'min (AH 380), pp. 43, 73; *al-Amil* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 500, H. 686/16, Session (*majlis*) No. 843/1, Session No. 79; *al-Khiyl* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 65, 67; *Kitb al-Irshid* by Shaykh al-Mufd (AH 413), 1:176, 233 (The English version of this book is entitled *Kitb al-Irshid*, translated by Dr. Howard, Qum: Ansariyan Publications); *al-Amil* by Shaykh al-`as (AH 460), pp. 255, 548; *Rawat al-Wi'`n* by al-Fatt al-Naysibfr (AH 508), pp. 273; *al-Itijj* by al-`abris (AH 560), 1:75, 191, 221, 391, 407, 2:47, 252; *Dhakhir al-Uqb f Manqib Dhaw'l-Qurb* by al-`abar (AH 694), pp. 16; *Musnad Ibn Ju'd* (AH 230), pp. 397; *al-Mu'annaf* by Ibn Shaybah al-Kf (AH 235), 7:176, Section No. 27, H. 5, 7:418; *Musnad A'lad ibn °anbal* (AH 241), 3:14, 17, 26, 59, 4:367, 371,

□

Household [*Ahl al-Bayt*]. Verily, they shall never separate from one another until they join me at the Divine Pond.⁽¹⁾

himself. In fact, the Imim ('a) originally meant himself, because his two sons followed him and their relation to him during his existence was similar to the relation of stars to the rising sun. Confirming this fact, the Holy Prophet (s) said:

وَأَبُوكُمَا خَيْرٌ مِنْكُمَا.

“Your father is preferred to (both of) you.”

(*Shar' Nahj al-Balighah* by Ibn Ab'l-°ad al-Mu'tazil (AH 656), 6:373-6)

Imim `Al Amr al-Mu'min ('a) was once asked to identify the *`Itrah* as one of the two weighty things. He answered:

(الْعِثْرَةُ) أَنَا وَالْحَسَنُ وَالْحُسَيْنُ وَالْأَيُّمَةُ النَّسْعَةُ مِنْ وَلَدِ الْحُسَيْنِ؛ تَأْسِعُهُمْ مَهْدِيُهُمْ وَقَائِمُهُمْ، لَا يُفَارِقُونَ كِتَابَ اللَّهِ وَلَا يُفَارِقُهُمْ حَتَّى يَرْتَدُّوا عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ ﷺ حَوْضَهُ.

“The *`Itrah* stands for me, al-°asan, al-°usayn ('a), and the nine Imim from al-°usayn's offspring. The ninth of them is their Mahd, the Riser. They shall neither leave the Book of Allah nor shall the Book of Allah leave them until they all join Allah's Messenger at the Pond.”

See *Uyfn Akhbir al-Ri* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), 2:60, H. 25, Section: *bjb al-nu' al-ri bil-imimati f jumlati al-a'immati al-ithnay `ashar* (Proofs Of The Divine Leadership Of Al-Ri Among The Twelve Imim ('a)).

⁽¹⁾ *°adeth al-Thaqalayn* (Tradition of the Two Weighty Things) is one of the uninterruptedly reported traditions by both Sunni and Shc'ite reporters. Owing to the significance of this *°adeth*, writers have dedicated sections and chapters of their books to discussing it. Other scholars have used this *°adeth* as the title of their works, such

□

What the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) has left with us is the Two Weighty Things together, which he has considered one thing and has declared that it is not sufficient to hold fast to one of them and leave the other; rather, safety from straying off can be achieved only through holding fast to both of them.

Another example, very clear is the purport of the following statement:

These two will never be separated from each other until they join me at the Pond.

Whoever separates these two from one another and shuns holding fast to both of them shall never touch on true guidance. In view of this fact, the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) have been the ark of salvation and the security for the inhabitants of the earth; sinking into the bottomless tumults of deviation is the unavoidable fate of everyone who fails to join them; and perdition will be the end result.

To claim that such holding fast to them stands for mere love for them without accepting their instructions and following their course is definitely fleeing from the right; a method adopted by the extremists who deliberately design to ignore the accurate course of interpreting Arabic words.

This tradition has been unanimously narrated by both Sunnç and Shc`ite reporters alike. If you consider this momentous tradition carefully, you will come across marvelous and persuasive structure and significance. For instance, how remarkable the following statement is:

I am leaving among you that which shall forever save you from straying off [the straight path of religion] as long as you hold fast to them.

5:182, 190; *al-Muntakhab min Musnad `Abd ibn `umayd* (AH 249), pp. 114, H. 265; *Sunan al-Djrimç* (AH 255), 2:432; *Mj Ruwiya fç'l-°awqï wa'l-Kawthar* by Ibn Mukhallad al-Qurşubç (AH 276), pp. 88; *Kitjb al-Sunnah* by `Amr ibn Abç-`a°im al-°a°ik (AH 287), pp. 336-337, H. 754, pp. 629, H. 1551, 1552, 1553, pp. 630, H. 1554, 1555; *al-Sunan al-Kubrj* by al-Nassj'ç (AH 303), 5:45, H. 8148, pp. 51, H. 8175, pp. 130, H. 8464; *Kha°i°i° Amçr al-Mu°minçn* by al-Nassj'ç (AH 303), pp. 93; *Musnad Abç-Ya°lç al-Maw°ilç* (AH 307), 2:297, H. 1021, pp. 303, H. 1027, pp. 376, H. 1140; *°a°ç° Ibn Khuzaymah* (AH 311), pp. 63; *al-Mu°jam al-°aghçr* by al-°abarjñç (AH 360), 1:131, 135, 3:374; *al-Mu°jam al-Awsa°* by al-°abarjñç (AH 360), 4:33; *al-Mu°jam al-Kabçr* by al-°abarjñç (AH 360), 3: 65, 66, 67, 180, H. 2678, 2679, 2780, 2681, 2683, 3052, 5:153, 154, 166, 167, 170, 182, 183, 186, H. 4921, 4922, 4923, 4969, 4970; *al-Mustadrak `Alç al-°a°ç°ayn* by al-°ikim al-Naysjbçrç (AH 405), 3:109, 148; *al-Sunan al-Kubrj* by al-Bayhaçç (AH 458), 7:30, 10: 114; *Shar° Nahç al-Balçghah* by Ibn Abç'l-°adçd al-Mu°tazilç (AH 656), 9:133; *Nu°um Durar al-Sim°ayn* by al-Zarandç al-°anafç (AH 750), pp. 233; *Majma° al-Zawj'id* by al-Haythamç (AH 807), 9:163, 164, 10:363; *Kanz al-°ummj°l* by al-Muttaçç al-Hindç (AH 975), 1:185, 186, 187, 188, 189, H. 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 957, 958, 5:289-290, H. 12911, 13:104, H. 36340, 13:641, H. 37620, 14:435, H. 39192.

The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) said:

حُبُّ أَهْلِ بَيْتِي عَلَامَةُ الْإِيمَانِ، وَبُغْضُهُمْ عَلَامَةُ
النَّفَاقِ. مَنْ أَحَبَّهُمْ أَحَبَّ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ، وَمَنْ أَبْغَضَهُمْ
أَبْغَضَ اللَّهَ وَرَسُولَهُ.

Love for my Household is a sign of belief, and to show enmity towards them is a sign of hypocrisy.⁽¹⁾

وَالْحَسَنَ وَالْحُسَيْنَ: أَصْحَابَ الْكِسَاءِ عَلَيْهِمُ السَّلَامُ.

“Liars are they. It was revealed exclusively for us—the Ahl al-Bayt; namely, `Alī, Fīṣmah, al-ʿasan, and al-ʿusayn (ʿa); the Group of the Cloak.”

See *al-Kif* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 8:93.

ʿAbdullāh ibn ʿAbbās is reported to have recounted that when the verse involved was revealed, the Holy Prophet (s) was asked, “Who are your kinsfolk the love for whom has become obligatory upon us?” He (s) replied, “*They are `Alī, Fīṣmah, and their two sons (ʿa).*” See *Majma` al-Zawj'id* by al-Haythamī (AH 807), 7:103; *al-Mu`jam al-Kabīr* by al-ṭabarī (AH 360), 3:47, H. 2641, 11:351; *Fayḍ al-Qadīr Sharḥ al-Jamī` al-ʿaḡḡ* by al-Mannīwī (AH 1331), 1:283, H. 302.

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Prophet (s) is reported to have said to Imām `Alī (ʿa):

أُبَشِّرُ بِأَعْلَى! فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ قَدْ عَاهَدَ إِلَيَّ أَنَّهُ لَا يُحِبُّكَ إِلَّا
مُؤْمِنٌ وَلَا يُبْغِضُكَ إِلَّا مُنَافِقٌ.

“O `Alī: Here are good tidings! Almighty Allah has promised me that none loves you save a believer and none hates you save a hypocrite.”

Reference: *al-Amīl* by Shaykh al-ʿadīq (AH 381), pp. 197.

It has been also reported that the Holy Prophet (s) said to Imām `Alī (ʿa):

27

LOVE FOR THE AHL AL-BAYT

Almighty Allah says in the Holy Qur'in:

قُلْ إِنَّمَا أَسْأَلُكَ بِمَا نَزَّلْتُ فِيْنَا خَاصَّةً: فِي أَهْلِ الْبَيْتِ؛ فِي عَلِيٍّ وَفَاطِمَةَ

قُلْ إِنَّمَا أَسْأَلُكَ بِمَا نَزَّلْتُ فِيْنَا خَاصَّةً: فِي أَهْلِ الْبَيْتِ؛ فِي عَلِيٍّ وَفَاطِمَةَ

Say (O Muḥammad, unto mankind): I do not ask for any wages for this except uncontaminated love and respect for my kinsfolk. (42/23)

WE BELIEVE that besides the obligation of holding fast to the Ahl al-Bayt (ʿa), each and every Muslim is under another obligation, which is to profess themselves to love the Ahl al-Bayt (ʿa) and hold them dear. This is because Almighty Allah, in the aforesaid holy verse, has clearly demanded the people's love for them.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ It has been reported that Imām al-ḥadiq (ʿa), once, asked Abī-Jaʿfar al-Aḡwal, “How do the scholars of al-Baḡrah explain this verse: ‘Say (O Muḥammad, unto mankind): I do not ask of a wage for this except love of my kinsfolk’?”

He answered, “May Allah accept me as ransom for you! They say that it includes the relatives of Allah's Messenger (s).”

The Imām (ʿa) said:

كُذِّبُوا! إِنَّمَا نَزَّلْتُ فِيْنَا خَاصَّةً: فِي أَهْلِ الْبَيْتِ؛ فِي عَلِيٍّ وَفَاطِمَةَ

□

□

Whosoever loves them has in fact loved Almighty Allah and His Messenger; and whosoever shows enmity towards them has in fact shown enmity towards Almighty Allah and His Messenger.⁽¹⁾

al-Kff al-Qi (app. AH 300), 2:469, H. 963, 2:478, H. 978, Section: *bjb f man a|abba`aliyyan wa f man abgha`ah* (Those Who Love `Al and Those Who Hate Him); *al-Khi`l* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 577, 633; *al-Amil* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 135, H. 131/1, Session No. 18, 197, H.207/1, Session No. 28, 525, H.708/4, Session No. 75; *Kifjyat al-Athar* by al-Khazziz al-Qumm (AH 400), pp. 31, 110; *Kitib al-Irshid* by Shaykh al-Mufd (AH 413), 1:40; *al-Amil* by Shaykh al-Mufd (AH 413), pp. 62, 308; *al-Amil* by Shaykh al-`s (AH 460), pp. 78, H.113/22, Session No. 3, 206, H.353/3, Session No. 8, 258, H.465/3, Session No. 10, 306, H.613/60, Session No. 11, 472, the last *adeth* of Session No. 16; *Rawat al-Wj`i`n* by Ibn al-Fattil al-Naysibf (AH 508), pp. 124; *al-Iltijj* by al-`abris (AH 560), 1:141, 243; *al-Thiqib f`l-Maniqib* by Ibn `amzah al-`s (AH 560), pp. 123, Section Two, Chapter One, H. 9, 10, 11, 236, H.202/3; *Musnad al-`imyar* (AH 219), 1:31, H. 58; *Musnad A|mad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 1:59, 128; *Kitib al-`mjin* by Mu|ammad al-`Adan (AH 243), pp. 80-81; *al-` Muslim* (AH 261), 1:60; *Sunan Ibn Mijah* (AH 275), 1:42, H.114; *Sunan al-Tirmidh* (AH 279), 5:306, H. 3819/94; *Kitib al-Sunnah* by `Amr ibn Ab-`ayim al-`a|k (AH 287), pp. 584, H.1325; *al-Sunan al-Kubri* by al-Nassi (AH 303), 5:47, 137, H.8153, 8485, 8486, 8487, 6:534, 535, H.11749, 11753; *Majma` al-Zawj'id* by al-Haytham (AH 807), 9:133; *al-D`bijj `Alj `a| Muslim* by al-Suyf (AH 911), 1:93, H.131.

⁽¹⁾ The Holy Prophet (s) is reported as saying:

إِنَّ لِكُلِّ بَنِي أَبِي عُصْبَةٍ يَنْتُمُونَ إِلَيْهَا إِلَّا وَلَدَ فَاطِمَةَ، فَأَنَا وَلِيُّهُمْ،

□

لَا يُحِبُّكَ إِلَّا مُؤْمِنٌ وَلَا يُبْغِضُكَ إِلَّا مُنَافِقٌ أَوْ وَلَدُ زَيْيَةٍ أَوْ حَمَلَتْهُ أُمُّهُ وَهِيَ طَامِتٌ.

“He who loves you is certainly a true believer, but he who hates you is nothing but a hypocrite, or an illegitimate son, or his mother conceived him while she was menstruous.”

Reference: *`Ilal al-Sharji`* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), 1:145, H. 12, Section No. 120: *bjb f anna`illata ma|abbati ahl al-bayti s`b al-wiljdati* (Legitimacy of Birth; A Reason Behind The Love For the Ahl al-Bayt); *Wasil al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 2:319, H. 2243/8, Section No. 24.

Imjm `Al Amr al-Mu'min (a) is also reported as saying:

وَاللَّهِ، إِنَّهُ مِمَّا عَهَدَ إِلَيَّ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ أَنَّهُ لَا يُبْغِضُنِي إِلَّا مُنَافِقٌ وَلَا يُحِبُّنِي إِلَّا مُؤْمِنٌ.

“I swear by Allah: One of the commandments of Allah’s Messenger to me was that none would hate me save a hypocrite, and none would love me save a true believer.”

Reference: *Musnad A|mad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 1:84; *Uyfn Akhbjr al-Ri`* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), 1:65, H. 235.

The Holy Prophet (s) is also reported to have said:

مَنْ أَبْغَضَ أَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ فَهُوَ مُنَافِقٌ.

“He who hates the Ahl al-Bayt must be a hypocrite.”

لَا يُحِبُّنَا أَهْلَ الْبَيْتِ إِلَّا مُؤْمِنٌ تَقِيٌّ، وَلَا يُبْغِضُنَا إِلَّا مُنَافِقٌ شَقِيٌّ.

“None loves us—the Ahl al-Bayt—save a pious believer; and none hates us save a wretched hypocrite.”

Reference: *Dhakhir al-`Uqb f Maniqib Dhaw`l-Qurbj* by A|mad ibn `Abdullh al-`abar (AH 694), pp. 18.

Narrations of the same purport have been recorded in various reference books, such as: *al-Ghirit* by Ibrh`m al-Thaqaf al-Kff (AH 283), 2:520, 946; *Maniqib Amr al-Mu'min* by Mu|ammad

□

Indisputably and unquestionably, love for the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) is one of the necessary fundamentals of Islam. This belief is held by all Muslims, despite their divergent and different opinions, except a few factions who adopted the enmity of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) and, as a result, were called 'Nawi'ib' (i.e. those who show open hostility to the Household of the Holy Prophet). Consequently, they are included with those who reject the decisive form of Islam. As a general rule, whosoever rejects the established form of the religion, such as the obligation of prayers and fasting, is decided as having rejected the origin of the Mission of Islam and the Mission of Islam altogether, as is confirmed by established proofs, even if one has uttered the profession of faith (i.e. *shahidah*).

Thus, hostility to the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) is one of the testimonies of one's hypocrisy, and to love them is one of the signs of true faith. Consequently, hostility to the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) is clear hostility to Almighty Allah and to the Holy Prophet (ﷺ).

3:109, H.1044; *Kimil al-Ziyar* by Ja`far ibn Qawlawayh (AH 368), pp. 335, H. 842/14, Section No. 107; *Man Lj Ya'uruh* by Shaykh al-`adfiq (AH 381), 2:613, 617; *al-Amjl* by Shaykh al-`adfiq (AH 381), pp. 466, H. 621/11, Session No. 60; *al-Fu'el al-Mukhtirah* by Shaykh al-Mufid (AH 413), pp. 245; *Tahdhib al-A'kim* by Shaykh al-`Isa (AH 460), 6:97, 101; *al-Amjl* by Shaykh al-`Isa (AH 460), pp. 248, H.437/29, Session No. 9, pp. 309, H.623/70, Session No. 11; *Manqib 'li Abi-jlib* by Ibn Shahr 'shab (AH 588), 2:217; *al-Mu'jam al-Kabir* by al-`abarj (AH 360), 1:319, H.947, 23:380; *Majma' al-Zaw'id* by al-Haytham (AH 807), 9:109, 131, 132; *Kanz al-'Ummil* by al-Muttaq al-Hind (AH 975), 11:610, 622, H.32952, 33024, 13:109, H.36358.

وَأَنَا عَصَبُهُمْ، وَهُمْ عِثْرَتِي، خُلِفُوا مِنِّي طَيِّبَتِي. وَيْلٌ لِلْمُكَذِّبِينَ بِفَضْلِهِمْ! مَنْ أَحَبَّهُمْ أَحَبَّ اللَّهَ، وَمَنْ أَبْغَضَهُمْ أَبْغَضَ اللَّهَ.

“The descendants of all persons have agnation to which they belong, except the descendants of Fajsimah. I am their guardian and I am their agnation. They are my progeny; they were created from the same clay from which I was created. Woe be to those who deny their excellences. Whoever loves them shall be loved by Almighty Allah and whoever hates them shall be hated by Him.”

Reference: *Kanz al-'Ummil* by al-Muttaq al-Hind (AH 975), 12:98, 103, 104, 116, H.34168, 34194, 34198...

The Holy Prophet (s) is also reported to have said:

أَنَا سَيِّدٌ وَلِدَ آدَمَ، وَأَنْتَ يَا عَلِيُّ وَالْأَيْمَةُ مِنْ بَعْدِكَ سَادَةُ أُمَّتِي. مَنْ أَحَبَّنَا فَقَدْ أَحَبَّ اللَّهَ، وَمَنْ أَبْغَضَنَا فَقَدْ أَبْغَضَ اللَّهَ، وَمَنْ وَالَّيْنَا فَقَدْ وَالَى اللَّهَ، وَمَنْ عَادَانَا فَقَدْ عَادَى اللَّهَ، وَمَنْ أَطَاعَنَا فَقَدْ أَطَاعَ اللَّهَ، وَمَنْ عَصَانَا فَقَدْ عَصَى اللَّهَ.

“I am the master of Adam's descendants. O `Al: you and the Imjm who shall succeed you are the masters of my nation. He who loves us has in fact loved Almighty Allah, and he who hates us has in fact hated Almighty Allah, and he who acts faithfully to us has in fact acted faithfully to Almighty Allah, and he who shows enmity towards us has in fact shown enmity towards Almighty Allah, and he who obeys us has in fact obeyed Almighty Allah and he who disobeys us has in fact disobeyed Almighty Allah.”

Reference: *al-Amjl* by Shaykh al-`adfiq (AH 381), H.658/16, Session No. 71.

For more details, the dear reader is advised to see the following reference books: *Manqib Amr al-Mu'min* by Mu'ammad al-Kf al-Qi (app. AH 300), pp. 481; *Shar' al-Akhhir* by al-Qi al-Nu'mjn al-Maghrib (AH 363), 1:154, H. 98, pp. 233, H. 223,

It is wrong to even imagine that Almighty Allah might impose upon us the love of someone who disobeys Him or fails to obey Him as He should be obeyed, because all Almighty Allah's creatures, in His view, are His servants whom He has created equally, the noblest among them, in His sight, being the most righteous.⁽¹⁾

Thus, the person/s whom Almighty Allah imposes upon His creatures to love and hold dear must be the most righteous and the most virtuous of all; otherwise, another person would be worthier of such love. It might also be said that Almighty Allah—far be it from Him—prefers some people to others unjustly or playfully without these preferred people deserving such preference!

[illegible]

O you men! Surely, We have created you of a male and a female, and made you tribes and families that you may know each other. Surely, the most honorable of you with Allah is the one among you most careful of his duty. Surely, Allah is Knowing, Aware. (49/13)

In this respect, our Imim, Ja`far al-`idīq (`a), says:

مَا جَاءَكُمْ عَنَّا مِمَّا يَجُوزُ أَنْ يَكُونَ فِي الْمَخْلُوقِينَ وَلَمْ
تَعْلَمُوهُ وَلَمْ تَفْهَمُوهُ فَلَا تَجْحَدُوهُ، وَرُدُّوهُ إِلَيْنَا. وَمَا
جَاءَكُمْ عَنَّا مِمَّا لَا يَجُوزُ أَنْ يَكُونَ فِي الْمَخْلُوقِينَ
فَاجْحَدُوهُ وَلَا تَرُدُّوهُ إِلَيْنَا.

Whatsoever, which is possible for the creatures to hold, is reported to you about us, but you have had no previous idea about it or you have not been able to understand it, then you must not deny it; rather, you must refer it to us. However, if what is reported to you about us is impossible for the creatures to hold, then you must deny it and you must not refer it to us.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ *Mukhtaṣar Baṣṣi'ir al-Darajit* by al-°asan al-°illç (the ninth century of Hijrah), pp. 92; *Biṣṣir al-Anwār* by al-Majlisç (AH 1111), 25:364, H. 1, Section No. 12; *Mustadrak Safçnat al-Biṣṣir* by al-Namjçç al-Shjhrçdç (AH 1405), 1:199.

28

THE HOLY IMIMS

Concerning our belief in our Holy Imims (`a), we do not imitate the Extremists (*ghulit*) and the Immanentists (*'ulçliyyçn*):

$$\beta \in) 4 \setminus N \in \gamma \notin \delta \blacklozenge \cup \theta / \upharpoonright \rho \& \mid \bar{\epsilon} B \Downarrow \lambda \odot \square / \square \rho B Z \pi \psi \theta \neq \square 2 \mid N \cup \square \odot 9 \xi .$$
$$\cap \in \cup \exists : . / \supset \square \xi . \square \omega \in) \square \chi \theta ^{TM} 9 \theta \circ) \tau \square$$

A monstrous word it is, issuing from mouths. (18:5)

WE BELIEVE that our Imims are human beings like ourselves, i.e. they enjoy the same rights that we enjoy and they are required to do the same obligations that we are required to do; except that they are noble servants of Almighty Allah Who has granted them special honor and bestowed upon them His authority, because they occupy the highest ranks of human perfection, such as knowledge, piety, courage, nobility, and chastity, as well as all moral standards and nobilities of character. Hence, no human being can ever attain the peculiarities that they hold.

Accordingly, they have been the worthiest of being leaders, guides, and authorities after the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) in giving instructions, interpretations and explanations of the religious laws and the Holy Qur'in as needed by people.

Without any difference, Imamate submits to the same laws of Prophethood in this respect. In plain words, no human being holds the right to express his opinion about the one whom Almighty Allah chooses as guide and leader for entire humanity. Similarly, none has the right to nominate, propose, or select such persons, because this mission needs one upon whom Almighty Allah has bestowed sacredness from His Sacred Spirit and who is ready to undergo the burdens of general leadership and capability to guide all human beings; and such a person cannot be nominated by anyone except Almighty Allah Who, alone, has the right to select him.

We also believe that the Holy Prophet, Muḥammad (ﷺ), did nominate his successor and representative who would be the leader (i.e. *imim*) after him. He thus declared his cousin, `Alī ibn Abī-ṭalīb (ʿa), to be the commander of the believers, the keeper of the Divine Revelation, and the leader of people on many occasions. Moreover, the Holy Prophet (ﷺ), on that day in *Ghadḡr Khumm* (known as the *Ghadḡr* Day), appointed Imim `Alī (ʿa) to the position of the next leadership and ordered the attendants to pay homage to him as their next leader. He thus said:

أَلَا، مَنْ كُنْتُ مَوْلَاهُ فَهَذَا عَلِيٌّ مَوْلَاهُ. اللَّهُمَّ وَال مَنْ
وَالَاهُ، وَعَادِ مَنْ عَادَاهُ، وَأَنْصُرْ مَنْ نَصَرَهُ، وَاخْذُلْ
مَنْ خَذَلَهُ، وَأَدِرْ الْحَقَّ مَعَهُ كَيْفَمَا دَارَ.

Behold! `Alī is (now) the master of everyone who has regarded me as his master. O Allah! (please do) support whoever supports `Alī; and be the enemy of whoever incurs the hostility of `Alī; and aid

Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 2002.)

29

IMAMATE BEING DECIDED BY A DIVINE COMMISSION

WE BELIEVE that Imamate, like prophethood, can not be decided by anything except a commission from Almighty Allah that is declared by His Messenger or the Divinely commissioned Imim when he nominates his successor in Imamate.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ For more information in this regard, the reader is advised to refer to the following book:

Al-Murjja`it: Reciprocal Correspondences Between Shaykh Saḥm al-Bishrī, the Head of al-Azhar University, and Sayyid Sharaf al-Dīn al-`amilī, Letters No. 20 and on; revised by `usayn al-Rīḡī, Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (ʿa) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422. ((The English version of this book is entitled '*al-Murjja`it*: A Sunni-Shi` Dialogue, translated by Yūsūf al-Jibfī, Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 2000.))

Na`ariyyat al-Naḥḥ `Alī al-Imamah fī'l-Qur'ān al-Karīm (Conception of the Divine Ordinance of Imamate in the Holy Qur'ān), by Muḥsin al-`rīkī, London: Book Extra, First Edition, AH 1421/AD 2000.

Al-Naḥḥ wa'l-Ijtihād by `Abd al-`usayn Sharaf al-Dīn al-`amilī (AH 1377), revised by Abī Mujtabī, Qum: Sayyid al-Shuhadī' Press, First Edition, AH 1404. (The English version of this book is entitled '*al-Nass wel-Ijtihad*, translated by Abdullah al-Shahin,

□

That was not the first occasion; in fact, the first occasion on which the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) declared the leadership (Imamate) of Imim `Alç (‘a) was when the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) invited his nearest relatives and members of his clan and declared the following before all of them:

إِنَّ هَذَا أَخِي، وَوَصِيِّي، وَخَلِيفَتِي مِنْ بَعْدِي؛ فَاسْمَعُوا لَهُ وَأَطِيعُوا.

Verily, this (`Alç) is my brother, my successor, and my vicegerent after me. You must then listen to him and obey him.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ Imim `Alç ibn Abç-±lib (‘a) narrated the following:

When the holy verse, ‘And warn your nearest relatives, (26:214)’ was revealed, the Holy Prophet... spoke, “O sons of `Abd al-Muṣṣalib! By Allah I swear, I do not know an Arab man who can bring to his people a matter better than what I am bearing to you. I am conveying to you the welfare of this world as well as the Hereafter. Almighty Allah has ordered me to invite you to this matter. Who will support me in this affair?”

I was the youngest among them when I promptly declared, “I will.” But they began to laugh at me and left the place and said to Abç-±lib, “Well, he orders you to listen to and obey your son!” References: Sharḥ Nahj al-Balighah by Ibn Abç’l-°adçd al-Mu’tazilç (AH 656), 13:210 as quoted from Tjrch al-±abarç. See also Kanz al-`Ummjil by al-Muttaqç al-Hindç (AH 974), 13:133, H. 36419.

For acquainting oneself with more Sunni reference books of *adçth* that have recorded this tradition, the reader is advised to refer to *al-Murjja`it*: Reciprocal Correspondences Between Shaykh Salçm al-Bishrç, the Head of al-Azhar University, and Sayyid Sharaf al-Dçn al-`amilç, Letters No. 20 & 21; *al-Ghadçr* by al-Amçnç (AH 1392),

□

whoever aids `Alç; and forsake whoever forsakes `Alç; and make the right turn to any side that `Alç takes.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ This *adçth* has been recorded in the following reference books: *Baḩj`ir al-Darajit al-Kubrj* by al-`affjr al-Qummç (AH 290), pp. 97; *Qurb al-Isnjd* by al-°imyarç al-Baghdidç (AH 300), pp. 57; *al-Kjç* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 1:287, 294, 295, 296, 420, 4:149, 566, 8:27; *Ilal al-Sharj`i`* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 1:144; *Musnad Aḩmad ibn °anbal* (AH 241), 1:84, 118, 119, 152, 331, 4:281, 370, 5:347, 366, 370, 419; *Sunan al-Tirmidhç* (AH 279), 5:297; *al-Mustadrak `Alj al-`aḩçayn* by al-°jkim al-Naysjbçrç (AH 405), 3:109, 110, 116, 134, 371, 533.

About the authenticity of the °adçth of Ghadçr, Ibn °ajar al-`Asqaljnç (AH 852) says, “As regarding the *adçth* that begins with, ‘*man kuntu mawljuhu fahjdhi `aliyyun mawljuhu*, it has been recorded by al-Tirmidhç and al-Nassj`ç. In fact, this *adçth* has been reported from very numerous ways of narration, which have been collected by Ibn `Uqdah in an independent book. Most of the series of narration of this *adçth* are authentic (ḩaḩç) and acceptable (ḩasan). I have quoted *Imjm Aḩmad* (ibn °anbal) as saying, ‘We have not received narrations about any of the `aljbah as many as we have received about `Alç ibn Abç-±lib (‘a).’” See *Fatḩ al-Bjrç Sharḥ `aḩç al-Bukhjrç*, 7:16. Also, refer to the first footnote of the chapter No. 22 (The Proof of Islam and the Previous Religions).

For more details about the °adçth *al-Ghadçr*, see the book of *al-Ghadçr* by al-Amçnç al-Najafç (AH 1329), Volume One.

Besides, many holy Qur'anic verses and traditions have confirmed the general leadership of Imim `Alç (`a), such as the following holy verse:

...©&!0ll□□□□ ♠!# ©N™3□□≠9□□ ∃□K↓P∈)
 τβθll9□□)□□ τll ≠%♥!# (#θ©ZτB#□™ τll ≠%♥!#□□
 \Nδ□□ vo40ξ.♦□9# τβθ\?|σ□□□□ vo40v='39#
 ∩∈∈∪ τβθ©\≠.♦□□

*Only Allah is your Guardian, and His Messenger,
 and those who believe—those who keep up prayers
 and pay the poor-rate while they bow. (5/55)*

This holy verse was revealed to speak of Imim `Alç (`a) when he gave his ring as alms while he was bowing in a prayer.⁽¹⁾

Bayhaqç (AH 458), 9:40; *Majma` al-Zawj'id* by al-Haythamç (AH 807), 9:109-111; *Fatç al-Bjrc Sharç al-çç al-Bukhjrç* by Ibn °ajar al-`Asqaljnç (AH 852), 7:60, 9:53.

⁽¹⁾ *Al-Mi`yjr wa'l-Muwjzanah* by al-Iskifç (AH 220), pp. 228; *Da`im al-Isljm* by al-Tamçmç al-Maghribç (AH 363), 1:16, 21; *Tuqaf al-Uqfl* by Ibn Shu`bah al-°arrjnç (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 459; *Uy£n Akhbjr al-Riçj* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 2:58; *al-Amjlc* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), pp. 186; *Rawçat al-Wj`içn* by Ibn al-Fattjl al-Naysjbçrç (AH 508), pp. 102; *Jimi` al-Bayjn* by al-±abarç (AH 310), 6:388; *al-Mu`jam al-Awsaç* by al-±abarjnç (AH 360), 6:218; *Akjm al-Qur'in* by al-Ja¥a¥ al-Rjzi (AH 370), 2:557, 558; *Shawjhid al-Tanzçl* by al-°ikim al-°asakjnç (the fifth century of Hijrah), 1:212, H.221, pp. 216, H.224, pp. 217, H.225, pp. 233, H.236, pp. 234, H.237; *Sharç Nahj al-Balighah* by Ibn Abç'l-°adçd al-Mu`tazilç (AH 656),

□

When the Holy Prophet (¥) said the above about him, Imim `Alç (`a) had not yet come of age.

On many other occasions, the Holy Prophet (¥) repeated the following statement:

يَا عَلِيُّ، أَنْتَ مِنِّي بِمَنْزِلَةِ هَارُونَ مِنْ مُوسَى، إِلَّا أَنَّهُ لَا نَبِيَّ بَعْدِي.

O `Alç! Your position in relation to me is the same as (Prophet) Aaron's position in relation to (Prophet) Moses except that no Prophet is to come after me.⁽¹⁾

2:278, Title: *adçth bad' al-da`wah fç'l-sunnah wa'l-tjrkçh wa'l-adab* (The Tradition of the Start of the Promulgation For Islam In The Sunnah, History, and Literature).

A big number of Shi`çte reference books of *adçth* have also recorded this tradition, such as *Manqib Amçr al-Mu'minçn* by al-Kfçç al-Qiçç (app. AH 300), 1:370, Section: *tafsçr iyat al-indhjr* (Exegesis of The Verse of Warning), H.294 and on; *Ilal al-Sharç'i* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 1:170; *Kitjb al-Irshjd* by Shaykh al-Mufçd (AH 413), 1:49; *Rawçat al-Wj`içn* by al-Fattjl al-Naysjbçrç (AH 508), pp. 52.

⁽¹⁾ *Al-Ma'jisin* by al-Barqç (AH 274 or 280), 1:159; *al-Kjfc* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 8:107; *Da`im al-Isljm* by al-Tamçmç al-Maghribç (AH 363), 1:16; *Ilal al-Sharç'i* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 1:66, 137, 138, 202, 2:474; *Uy£n Akhbjr al-Riçj* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 1:209; *Musnad Abç-Djw£d al-±ayjlisç* (AH 204), pp. 28, 29; *al-Mu¥annaf* by al-`an`jnç (AH 211), 5:406; H.9745, 11:226, H.20390; *ççç Muslim al-Naysjbçrç* (AH 261), 7:120, 121; *Sunan al-Tirmidhç* (AH 279), 5:302, H.3808, pp. 304, H.3813, 3814; *al-Mustadrak `Alj al-ççççayn* by al-°ikim al-Naysjbçrç (AH 405), 2:337, 3:109, 133; *al-Sunan al-Kubrj* by al-

□

The purpose for which this thesis has been written does not conduce to citing or explaining all the holy verses and traditions concerning the Imamate of Imim `Alī (`a).

In the same manner, Imim `Alī (`a) declared the Imamate of Imim al-°asan (`a) and Imim al-°usayn (`a). The latter declared the Imamate of Imim `Alī ibn al-°usayn (Zayn al-°abidīn) (`a) and so did every Imim concerning the next Imim up to the last of them who will be discussed in an independent chapter of this book.

13:277; *Nu`um Durar al-Simşayn* by al-Zarandī al-°anafī (AH 750), pp. 86.

(Supportive Points Proving the Imamate of the Twelve Imjm) by Abf-Fat| al-Kar|jakc (AH 449); Beirut: D|r al-Aw| Publishers, Second Edition, Ah 1405.

- *Istiqf|' al-Na`ar f| Imjmat al-A'immah al-Ithnay `Ashar* (Deep Investigation on the Imamate of the Twelve Imjm) by Ibn Maytham al-Ba|r|nc (AH 679).
- *Kitjb al-Ghaybah* (Book of Occultation) by Abf-Zaynab al-Nu`m|nc (AH 380); Chapter: *m| ruwiya anna al-a'immata ithnj `ashara min sharq al-`jmmati wa m| yadullu `alayhi min al-qur'jn wa'l-tawr|h* (Sunni Narrations About the Imjm Being Twelve and Indications From the Qur'jn and the Torah).
- *±uruqu `adqth al-A'immah Ithnj `Ashar* (Ways of The Narration of The Imjm Beings Twelve) by K|`im `l-Nf| (AH 1360); Baghdad: D|r al-Ma`jrif Publications.
- *Risjlatun MukhtaFaratun f|'l-Nuflf `Alj Imjmat al-A'immati al-Ithnay `Ashar* (A Brief Treatise On the Authentic Narrations Confirming the Imamate of the Twelve Imjm) by Jawjd al-M|rzj al-Tabr|z|.
- *Min `adqth al-Nabiy Yakfnu Lihjdhihi al-Ummati Ithnj `Ashara Qayyiman* (The Holy Prophet's (s) Saying: Twelve Custodians Shall Be In This Nation) by Murtaq| al-`Askar|; Beirut: P.O. Box 124/24.
- *Yanjbc` al-Mawaddah Li-Dhawc`l-Qurbj* by Sulaym|n ibn Ibrjhcm al-Qanadfcz al-`anaf| (AH 1294); revised by `Al| Jamjl Ashraf al-`usaync, Vol. 3, Section No. 77: Investigations of the tradition, "After me, there shall come twelve successors."; D|r al-Uswah Publishers, First Edition, AH 1416.

See also *Musnad Ab-Djwfd al-±ayjlisc* (AH 204), pp. 105, 180; *Musnad A|mad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 5:86-108; *`a|c| al-Bukhjr|*

□

30

THE NUMBER OF IMIMS

WE BELIEVE that the Holy Imims, who are truly the worthiest of holding Imamate in its actual sense,⁽¹⁾ are our authorities in the religious laws of Islam and they are twelve in number⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ The actual sense of Imamate in Muslim terminology is the leadership of the Muslim nation that is commissioned by Almighty Allah through His Messenger.

⁽²⁾ Indubitably, reference books of Muslim heritage have recorded intricate, authentic traditions corroborating the Holy Imjm being twelve in number. Moreover, some master scholars have compiled independent books or chapters for the details of this unquestionable fact. Let us refer to the following as examples:

- *Kifjyat al-Athar f|'l-Naflf `Alj al-A'immati al-Ithnay `Ashar* (Sufficiency of Traditions Concerning The Imjm Being Twelve) by `Al| ibn Mu`ammad al-Khazziz al-Rizi (the fourth century of Hijrah); revised by `Abd al-La|cf al-`usaync al-Kfhkamar| al-Khf'|; Qum: Bcdjr Publications, AH 1401.
- *Muqtaqab al-Athar f|'l-Naflf `Alj al-A'immati al-Ithnay `Ashar* (Summary of Traditions Concerning Imjm Being Twelve) by A|mad ibn `Ubaydull|h ibn `Ayyish al-Jawhar| (AH 401); revision, correction, and commentary by H|shim al-Rasfl|; Qum: al-±abj|abj'|c Library.
- *Al-Istinflr f|'l-Naflf `Alj al-A'immati al-Ashjr*

□

kings because they were more than twelve and because they ruled with notorious injustice and persecution except `Umar ibn `Abd al-`Azqz and also because they did not belong to Ban£-Hjshim, since the Holy Prophet (s), according to the narration of `Abd al-Malik on the authority of Jjbir, had declared that all the Successors would be from Ban£-Hjshim. Confirming this fact, it is reported that the Holy Prophet (s) uttered this very statement with a low voice, because the attendants would not welcome the fact that Ban£-Hjshim would rule after the Holy Prophet (s). The tradition cannot be also applied to the `Abbjsid kings, because they were more than the required number and because they failed to abide by the holy verse, "Say: I do not ask of you any reward for it but love for my near relatives, (42/23)" as well as the famous °adqth al-Kisj' (Tradition of the Cloak).

In view of the above, this |adqth can only be applied to the Twelve Imjm from the Holy Prophet's (s) Household and family, because they were the most knowledgeable of the people of their ages, the most sublime, the most pious, the most religious, the foremost in high lineage, and the most honored by Almighty Allah. Their sciences were linked to the sciences of their fathers who obtained their sciences and knowledge from their grandfather, the Holy Prophet (s), through heritage, and through personal competence. Such have they been known by people of knowledge, investigation, Gnosticism, and high erudition. The famous °adqth al-Thaqalayn (Tradition of the Two Weighty Things), as well as the numerous traditions cited in this book and many other books, testifies and gives evidence and preference to the fact that the Holy Prophet (s), by foretelling the coming of twelve successors after him, meant the Twelve Imjm ('a) from his household and family."

The Holy Prophet ('a) said, "This religion will continue to remain in existence until twelve successors come after me who attain the consensus of this nation." This has been explained by al-Qanad£zq

□

(AH 256), 8:127; ¯a|q| Muslim (AH 261), 6:403; Sunan Abq-Djw£d al-Sajistjñq (AH 275), 2:309, Section: Kitjb al-Mahdq, H.4279, 4280; Sunan al-Tirmidhq (AH 279), 3:340, H.2323, Section: bjb mj jj'a fq'l-khulafj' (Reports About The Successors); al-Mu`jam al-Kabqr by al-±abarjñq (AH 360), pp. 195, 196, 232; al-Mustadrak `Alj al-¯a|q|ayn by al-°jkm al-Naysjb£rç (AH 405), 3::617, 618; al-Kifjyah fq' Ilm al-Riwjyah by al-Kha§qb al-Baghdjdq (AH 436), pp. 95; Shar| ¯a|q| Muslim by al-Nawawq (AH 676), 12:201; Majma` al-Zawj'id by al-Haythamq (AH 807), 5:190, 191, Section: bjb al-khulafj' al-ithnj `ashar (The Twelve Successors)... etc.

Many Sunni scholars have been unable to apply the actual sense of these narrations to the actual leadership of the Islamic states throughout history. This is because they have had to submit to the authenticity of these traditions and their uninterrupted transmission. Although they assumed innumerable probabilities, they could not reach a consensual decision. For more information, see the following reference books: Fat| al-Bjrç Shar| ¯a|q| al-Bukhrç by Ibn °ajar al-`Asqaljñq (AH 852), 13:182 and on; Tu|fat al-A|wadhq fq' Shar| ¯a|q| al-Tirmidhq by al-Mubjrakffrç (AH 1353), 6:391-396, Section: bjb mj jj'a fq'l-khulafj' (Reports About The Successors).

However, al-Qanad£zq al-°anafq (AH 1294), after recording ten narrations dealing with this very matter, quotes the following word of a researcher: "Narrations indicating that the Successors after the Holy Prophet (s) would be twelve in number have been widely known because they are reported from various ways of narration. By indications of time, place, and events, it is concluded that the Messenger of Allah (s) intended the Twelve Imjm from his household and family. It is impossible to apply this |adqth to the Orthodox Caliphs (al-khulafj' al-rjshid£ñ) because they are less than twelve, and it is also impossible to apply it to the Umayyad

□

who have been commissioned by Almighty Allah to hold the position of leading the Muslim nation. The Holy Prophet, Muḥammad (ﷺ), had referred to all of them by name⁽¹⁾

belief. Similarly, the prophethood of the Prophets ('a) was not injured or distrusted because their people rejected, turned away from them or killed them.” See *al-ʿawḍim al-Muhriqah fī Naqd al-ʿawḍiʿiq al-Muʿriqah* by al-Qiṣṣ al-Tustarī (AH 1019), pp. 95.

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kiṣṣ* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 1:525, 526, H. 1, Chapter: *Kitāb al-ʿujjah* (The Book of Argument), Section: *bāb mī jīʿa fī l-ithnay ʿashar wa l-naḥḥ ʿalayhim*; *Kiṣṣat al-Athar fī l-naḥḥ ʿAlī al-Aʿimmi al-Ithnay ʿAshar* (Reports About the Twelve Imām and Decrees About Them) by al-Khazzīz al-Qummī al-Riḥī (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 53, Section: *bāb mī jīʿa ʿan jībīr ibn ʿabdillāh al-anḥīrī ʿan rasūl illāhi fī l-nuḥḥ ʿalī al-aʿimmi al-ithnay ʿashar* (Narrations Reported From Jībīr Ibn ʿAbdillāh al-Anḥīrī From Allah’s Messenger About the Twelve Imām), pp. 169, Section: *mī ruwīya ʿan al-ʿusayn ibn ʿalī ʿan rasūl illāhi fī l-nuḥḥ ʿalī al-aʿimmi al-ithnay ʿashar* (Narrations Reported From al-ʿusayn Ibn ʿAlī From Allah’s Messengers About the Twelve Imām); *Mukhtaṣar Baḥḥir al-Darajī* by al-ʿillī (the ninth century of Hijrah), pp. 39, 122-123; *Dalīl al-Imām* by al-ʿabarī (the early fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 448-449; *al-Hidīyah al-Kubrī* by al-Khaḥḥbī (AH 334), pp. 375; *al-Ikhtīṣār* by Shaykh al-Muḥḥd (AH 413), pp. 210; *Bīr al-Anwār* by al-Majlisī (AH 1111), 36:226-372, Section No. 41: *nuḥḥ al-rasūl* (The Messenger’s Reported Decrees); *Yanīb ʿal-Mawaddah li-Dhawc`l-Qurbī* by al-Qanadīz al-ʿanafī (AH 1294), 3:281 and on, Section No. 76: *fī bayn al-aʿimmi al-ithnay ʿashar bi-asmīhim* (References to the Twelve Imām by Names).

In his book of *ʿFarīd al-Simṣayn*, al-Juwaynī has reported the Holy Prophet (ʿa) as saying:

□

al-ʿanafī as meaning that the Muslim nation will unanimously submit to the Imamate of these Twelve Imām at the advent of the Riser, Imām al-Mahdī—may Allah be pleased with them all.” See *Yanīb ʿal-Mawaddah li-Dhawc`l-Qurbī* by al-Qanadīz al-ʿanafī (AH 1294), 3:292-293, Section No. 77: *fī taḥḥiq ʿadḥ baḥḥ ithnī ʿashara khalīfatan* (Investigation About the Prophetic Tradition, ‘After Me, There Shall Come Twelve Successors).

The aforementioned tradition can also be found in *Sunan Abī-Djwūd al-Sajistīnī* (AH 275), 2:309, H.4279; *Fatḥ al-Bīr Sharḥ al-ʿalī al-Bukhārī* by Ibn ʿajar al-ʿAsqalīnī (AH 852), 13:182 and many other reference books of *ʿadḥ*.

ʿAllīmah al-Tustarī says, “Our Imimiyyah scholars have cited these authenticated traditions as proofs of the fact that the Twelve Imām (ʿa) have the right more than anyone else to succeed the Holy Prophet (s) and lead the Muslim community in religious and political affairs. As a matter of fact, except for the Imimiyyah, no other sect has ever claimed the Imām being restricted to this number (i.e. twelve). Indicated by reason and traditions, Imamate and succession (*khalīfah* or Caliphate) of the Holy Prophet (s) requires that an *imām* or *khalīfah* must be infallible and commissioned by Almighty Allah and His Messenger (s). This condition does not violate the fact that some of the Holy Imām (ʿa) were unable, even outwardly, to put their commands into effect. Foretelling this fact, the Holy Prophet (s) said about Imām al-ʿasan (ʿa) and Imām al-ʿusayn (ʿa):

إِنِّي هَذَانِ إِمَامَانِ؛ قَامَا أَوْ قُعِدَا.

“These two sons of mine are Imām whether they will hold (practically) the leadership or be prevented from it.”

To sum it up, the fact that the Holy Imām were prevented from holding the position of Caliphate—the position that Almighty Allah had commissioned them to hold—because others tyrannized over them; cannot act as a point of refutation of our

□

before each Imim declared the name of the person who would be the next Imim after him. They are thus as follows, Peace be upon them all:

1. Ab£l-°asan, `Al¢ ibn Ab¢±ilib, *al-Murta±i* (the Well-Pleased); BH (before Hijrah) 23 - AH (After Hijrah) 40.
2. Ab£-Mu|ammad, al-°asan ibn `Al¢, *al-Zak¢* (the Pure); AH 2 - AH 50.
3. Ab£-`Abdullah, al-°usayn ibn `Al¢, Sayyid al-Shuhadi' (The Master of Martyrs); AH 3 - AH 61.

age of this world, Almighty Allah will prolong it, so that my son, al-Mahd¢, reappears and the Spirit of Allah- Jesus son of Mary, descends, to follow him in prayer. The earth shall then shine with the light of its Lord, and his authority shall cover the east and the west of the earth.”

This *ad¢th* has been quoted by `Allimah al-`Askar¢ from a manuscript found in the Central Library of Tehran University under No. 1164/1690-1691, pp. 60. See Book No. 6 in the series of *al-mj'idat al-qur'in wa'l-sunnah* (On the Table of the Qur'in and Sunnah) entitled *min ad¢th al-nab¢ yak£nu lihjdhih¢ al-ummati ithnj ashara qayyiman* (The Prophet's Saying: For This Nation, There Shall Come Twelve Custodians).

For more information about the traditions mentioning the names of the Twelve Imim ('a), the reader is advised to read the introduction of the scholar, Shaykh Lu\$fulljh al-`if¢ al-Gulpaygjn¢, to the book *Muqta°ab al-Athar f¢ l-Na¥¥ `Alj al-A'immati al-Ithnay `Ashar* by A|mad ibn `Ubaydulljh ibn `Ayyish al-Jawhar¢ (AH 401). Moreover, this book comprises many Prophetic traditions that are uninterruptedly reported by non-Shi`te scholars and indicate the Imamate of the Twelve Imim ('a) belonging to the Holy Prophet's Household.

أَنَا سَيِّدُ النَّبِيِّينَ، وَعَلِيُّ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ سَيِّدُ الْوَصِيِّينَ، وَإِنْ أَوْصِيَانِي بَعْدِي اثْنَا عَشَرَ: أَوَّلُهُمْ عَلِيُّ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ وَآخِرُهُمُ الْمَهْدِيُّ.

“I am the master of the prophets. `Al¢ ibn Ab¢±ilib is the master of the Prophets' successors. My successors who shall come after me are twelve in number. The first of them is `Al¢ ibn Ab¢±ilib and the last one is al-Mahd¢.”

إِنَّ خُلَفَائِي وَأَوْصِيَانِي وَحُجَجُ اللَّهِ عَلَى الْخَلْقِ بَعْدِي الْإِثْنَا عَشَرَ: أَوَّلُهُمْ أَخِي وَآخِرُهُمْ وَلَدِي.

“Verily, my vicegerents and successors, who are Almighty Allah's arguments against His creatures and who shall come after me are twelve. The first of them is my brother and the last is my son.”

Having declared this statement, the Holy Prophet (s) was asked, “O Allah's Messenger: Who is your brother to whom you have referred?” He answered:

(أَخِي) عَلِيُّ بْنُ أَبِي طَالِبٍ.

“My brother is `Al¢ ibn Ab¢±ilib.”

“Who is your son to whom you have referred?” the Holy Prophet (s) was asked. He answered:

(وَلَدِي) الْمَهْدِيُّ الَّذِي يَمْلُؤُهَا قِسْطًا وَعَدْلًا كَمَا مَلَأْتُ ظُلْمًا وَجَوْرًا. وَالَّذِي بَعَثَنِي بِالْحَقِّ بَشِيرًا وَنَذِيرًا، لَوْ لَمْ يَبْقَ مِنَ الدُّنْيَا إِلَّا يَوْمٌ وَاحِدٌ لَطَوَّلَ (اللَّهُ) ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمَ حَتَّى يَخْرُجَ فِيهِ وَلَدِي الْمَهْدِيُّ. فَيَنْزِلُ رُوحُ اللَّهِ عَيْسَى بْنُ مَرْيَمَ فَيُصَلِّي خَلْفَهُ، وَتُشْرِقُ الْأَرْضُ بِنُورِ رَبِّهَا وَيَبْلُغُ سُلْطَانُهُ الْمَشْرِقَ وَالْمَغْرِبَ.

“My son is al-Mahd¢ who shall fill it (i.e. the earth) with fairness and justice after it would be filled with injustice and prejudice. I swear by Him Who has sent me with truth as bearer of good tidings (to the believers) and warner (about His chastisement), that even if a single day remains from the

4. Ab£-Mu'ammad, `Al¢ ibn al-°usayn, Zayn al-`°bid¢n (The Adornment of the Worshipers); AH 38 - AH 95.
5. Ab£-Ja`far, Mu'ammad ibn `Al¢, al-Biqir (The Ripper of Knowledge); AH 57 - AH 114.
6. Ab£-`Abdullih, Ja`far ibn Mu'ammad, al-`idiq (The Veracious); AH 83 - AH 148.
7. Ab£-Ibrih¢m, M£si ibn Ja`far, al-Ki`im (The Suppressor of Rage); AH 128 - AH 183.
8. Ab£'l-°asan, `Al¢ ibn M£si, al-Rixi (The Amiable); AH 148 - AH 203.
9. Ab£-Ja`far; Mu'ammad ibn `Al¢, al-Jawid (The Magnanimous); AH 195 - AH 220.
10. Ab£'l-°asan, `Al¢ ibn Mu'ammad, al-Hid¢ (The Guide); AH 212 - AH 254.
11. Ab£-Mu'ammad, al-°asan ibn `Al¢, al-`Askar¢ (Resident of `Askar City); AH 232 - AH 260.
12. Ab£'l-Qisim, Mu'ammad ibn al-°asan, al-Mahd¢ (The Well-Guided); AH 256 - ...

The twelfth Imim, al-Mahd¢ (`a), is Almighty Allah's argument against His creatures in the present day. He is the awaited savior who shall reappear (after occultation) to fill the earth with fairness and justice as it is filled with injustice and prejudice; may Almighty Allah hasten his advent and make easy his reappearance.

overcome by injustice and oppression,⁽¹⁾ are indisputably reported from the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) by all Muslims who, apart from their various sects and opinions, have recorded and reported his traditions in this regard.

The belief in the advent of Imim al-Mahdç (‘a) during the last period of existence of this globe is not an inventive idea that is embraced by the Shç`ah alone due to their being oppressed, as is falsely claimed by some malevolent, mistaken writers. They exert all efforts to rim this Divine, deep-rooted belief with a baseless frame, alleging that the belief in the advent of a leader who shall cleanse the earth from the filths of oppression has been the produce of the dreams of the Shç`ah.

Among the other unquestionable beliefs that were brought by Islam, the belief in al-Mahdç (‘a) has been firmly established in the minds of all Muslims. Their intellects were saturated with it to the extent that those who claimed Mahdism in the first century after the advent of Islam—such as the followers of Kaysiniyyah,⁽²⁾ the ‘Abbisids,⁽¹⁾ a group

⁽¹⁾ For more details about the Prophetic tradition that Imjm al-Mahdç (‘a) will spread justice and equity in the globe after it would be overcome by injustice and oppression, refer to the aforementioned book, 1:94, 114, 121, 123, 170, 265, 364, 3:11, 12, 40, 61, 202, 307, 318, 323, 4:225, 350, 361, 497, 5:281, 358.

⁽²⁾ The followers of the Kaysiniyyah faith, one of the Shç`ah sects, believe that Mu‘ammad ibn al-‘anafiiyyah (son of Imjm ‘Alç ibn Abç-±jlib (‘a)) is the Imjm, because he, not al-‘asan (‘a) or al-‘usayn (‘a), bore the pennon of his father during the Battle of the Camel (*al-jamal*) that took place in al-Ba‘rah. The name ‘*Kaysiniyyah*’ has come to this sect from their chief, al-Mukhtjr ibn Abç-‘Ubayd al-Thaqafç, who was surnamed ‘*Kaysin*’, because



31

AL-MAHDç

THE GOOD TIDINGS of the advent of Imim al-Mahdç (‘a),⁽¹⁾ a descendant of Lady Fišimah al-Zahri’ (‘a)⁽²⁾ who will spread justice and equity throughout the globe after it has been

⁽¹⁾ For more details in this respect, the reader is advised to refer to the following books: *Kitjb al-Ghaybah* by Abç-Zaynab al-Nu‘mĩnç (the third century of Hijrah); *Ba‘th ‘awla al-Mahdç* by Mu‘ammad Bjqir al-‘adr (AD 1980); *al-Mahdç* by ‘adr al-Dçn al-‘adr; *Mawsf‘at al-Imjm al-Mahdç, Tjrçkh al-Ghaybah al-Kubrj* by Mu‘ammad Mu‘ammad ‘ĩdiq al-‘adr (AD 1998); *Muntakhab al-Athar fç Imjmat al-Imjm al-Thjñç ‘Ashar* by al-‘fç al-Gulpaygĩnç (contemporary); *al-Radd ‘Alj Shubuhjt A‘mad al-Kjtib ‘awla Imjmat Ahl al-Bayt wa Wujfd al-Mahdç al-Munta‘ar* by Sayyid Sjmç al-Badrç (contemporary). Furthermore, there are hundreds of books on Imjm al-Mahdç (‘a).

⁽²⁾ For more details about Imjm al-Mahdç (‘a) being one of the descendants of Lady Fišimah (‘a), refer to the book of *Mu‘jam A‘jdçth al-Mahdç* by ‘Alç al-Kfrĩnç (contemporary), 1:137, 138, 189, 566, 3:191. The author of this book has cited tens of reference books for both Shi‘çte and Sunni writers confirming Imjm al-Mahdç (‘a) being a descendant of Lady Fišimah (‘a).

For details about Imjm al-Mahdç (‘a) being a descendant of Imjm al-‘usayn (‘a), refer to the aforementioned book, 1:394, 3:15.

regulations and opinions, their heresies and distortions of its laws and seditious arguments that they have been attaching to it.

The religion of Islam cannot restore its strength unless a great reformer appears to lead it, reunify the divergent word of its followers, refute the distortions of the vain doers, and abrogate the heresies and heterodoxies attached to it through custody and grace from Almighty Allah. He will make this reformer a well-guided person enjoying a momentous position and grant him general authority over human beings and an extraordinary power to fill the earth with justice and fairness and root out injustice and oppression.

In short, the current corruptive conditions of humanity, which have attained their climax in dishonesty and wrong—despite our belief in Islam as the truest and the sealing of all religions—demand that we must expect this reformer, namely Imim al-Mahdç, to come and save the world from its sufferings.

In view of this fact, all Muslim sects and non-Muslims believe in this expectation; yet the difference between the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* and the others is that the *Imimiyyah Shç`ah* believe that this reformer is a definite, well-known person who was born in AH 256 (AD 870) and still alive. He is the son of al-°asan al-`Askarç (`a) and his first name is Mu|ammad, as has been proven through predictions of the Holy Prophet (¥) and the Holy Imims (`a) as well as the uninterrupted narrations about his birth and his concealment from human sight.

It is impossible to suspend Imamate in any age even though the Imim may be invisible for a certain time before

of the `Alawiyyah,⁽²⁾ and many others—easily deceived the public and used this belief to grab power and authority. The false claim of Mahdism was thus the surest way to influence the public and prevail over them.

We, the Shç`ah, incontrovertibly believe in the religion of Islam as the truest and the seal of all Divine religions and we do not expect any other religion to reform humanity. We are witnessing great oppression on this globe, the dangerous spread of corruption, the Muslims' retreat from their religion, the inactivation of the laws and regulations of Islam in all Muslim countries, and the Muslims' non-compliance with even one per mil of the laws of Islam. In spite of all that, it is still imperative for us to wait for the Relief that will restore Islam's power and capability to reform the world that is sinking in the arrogance of oppression and corruption.

Besides, Islam cannot restore its power and domination over entire humanity while it is still encountering the current and earlier diversity of its followers in its laws,

his constabulary officer, whose name was Kaysin and whose appellation was Abç-`Amrah, was more excessive in words, deeds, and massacres, than al-Mukhtçr. See *Firaq al-Shç`ah* by al-Nawbakhtç (the third century of Hijrah), pp. 23.

⁽¹⁾ The `Abbçsids, a dynasty of rulers who ruled the Muslim nation after the overthrow of the Umayyad dynasty, were the descendants of al-`Abbçs ibn `Abd al-Muççalib, the Holy Prophet's uncle. [translator]

⁽²⁾ The `Alawiyyah were some descendants of Imim `Alç ibn Abç-±çlib (`a) who formed a political front against the ruling authorities, especially the `Abbçsid dynasty. [translator]

themselves with these instructions and duties in their best manners through following the most accurate ways that lead to them, enjoin the right, and forbid the evil. Verily, "All of you must be supervisors and all of you are responsible for your subjects."⁽¹⁾

For that reason, no Muslim individual is allowed to dispense with his duties under the pretense that he is expecting al-Mahdç (`a), the reformer guide, because such unfounded pretense neither releases any Muslim individual from liabilities nor authorize him to postpone the doing of a duty.

⁽¹⁾ This *adçth* can be found in the following reference books: *Kashf al-Ma`ajjah li-Thamarat al-Muhjah* by Ibn ʿawf (AH 664), pp. 39; *ʿAwjç al-La`ijç* by Ibn Abç-Jumhçr (app. AH 880), 1:129, H.3 & pp. 364, H.5; *Biçr al-Anwçr* by al-Majlisç (AH 1111), 72:38, H.36; *Musnad Açmad ibn ʿanbal* (AH 241), 2:5, 54, 111, 112; *ʿaçç al-Bukhçrç* (AH 256), 1:215, 2:79, 3:88, 125, 189, 6:146, 152; *ʿaçç Muslim* (AH 261), 6:8; *Sunan Abç-Dçwçd* (AH 275), 2:13, 3:24.

he reappears on a day predefined by Almighty Allah other than Who none can predict or determine.

It is also believable that the disappearing Imim's survival for such a long time is a miracle granted to him by Almighty Allah—a miracle that is not more marvelous than the miracle of his holding the responsibility of Imamate while he was just five years old after his father passed away and moved towards the Supreme Comrade. It is also as marvelous as the miracle of Prophet Jesus (`a) who spoke to people as a Prophet while he was a child in the cradle.

Besides, to live longer than the natural age of human beings, as is imagined by people, does not contradict or disagree with biological sciences. Even though modern science has not yet gained access to what may prolong man's life, it is undeniable that Almighty Allah has power over all things and can do whatever He wills. Examples are already touched on; the Holy Qur'in has informed us about the long life span of Prophet Noah (`a) and about the continuous existence of Prophet Jesus (`a). However, if we doubt the Holy Qur'in, then we must bid farewell to Islam!

It is thus very surprising for a Muslim individual who claims absolute belief in the Holy Qur'in to wonder about the possibility of such an occultation.

It is worth mentioning and worth remembering in this respect that our expectation of al-Mahdç (`a), the savior and reformer, does not mean, by any means, that Muslims should not lift a hand to support their religion, restore their rights, strive painstakingly for its sake, act upon its laws and regulations, enjoin the right, or forbid the evil. Quite the opposite, Muslims are always required to carry out the religious duties, act upon the religious instructions revealed by their Lord, exert all possible efforts to acquaint

resurrected on the Day of Judgment to receive the reward or punishment that they deserve because of their deeds. This is understood from Almighty Allah's information in the Holy Qur'in about the manners of those who would not take advantage of the first raising from the dead in this world before they will be again resurrected on the Day of Judgment. After they incur hatred from Almighty Allah, they will desire a third resurrection through which they will wish to perhaps act righteously and make amends. Reporting their desire, the Holy Qur'in says:

وَلَمَّا نَسُوا مَا وَعُودُوا قُلُوبُهُمْ فَلَا تَعْمَلُ لَهُمْ سَاءَ مَا يَحْكُمُونَ
 وَلَمَّا نَسُوا مَا وَعُودُوا قُلُوبُهُمْ فَلَا تَعْمَلُ لَهُمْ سَاءَ مَا يَحْكُمُونَ
 53:61-62 ﴿لَا يَحْصِي السَّعِيرُونَ﴾ (40/11)

[They will say:] Our Lord! Thou hast caused us to die two deaths, and Thou hast given us twice to live; now we confess our sins. Is there any way to go forth? (40/11)

As the Holy Qur'in has actually proclaimed the Return to this world, reported traditions of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) have confirmatively given details of this belief and the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* have unanimously agreed upon its authenticity. However, a few Imamite individuals have interpreted the Return as the restoration of political authority and power to the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) when the Awaited Imim, al-Mahdç (`a), shall come. Yet, they have denied the return of certain personalities and the raising of others from the dead.

As for Sunnç Muslims, they consider the belief in the Return to be so heretical that to believe in it is hideous atheism. Similarly, Sunnç biographers have decided the belief in the

32

THE RETURN (RAJ`AH)

adopting the **THE IM^aIYYAH SHç`AH**, reported traditions of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a), believe that, after the advent of Imim al-Mahdç (`a), Almighty Allah will raise some people from the dead⁽¹⁾ in the very forms that they had had before their death so as to honor a group of them and dishonor others, and to give ascendancy to the right group over the wrong and restore the rights of the oppressed ones from the oppressors.

This return will be restricted to those who enjoy supreme ranks of faith and those who enjoy notorious degrees of corruption. After the return, they will die again and be

⁽¹⁾ For more details about the doctrine of *al-Raj`ah* (the Return), the reader is advised to see the following books:

- *Al-Raj`ah aw al-`Awdah Ilj al-`ayjt al-Dunyj Ba`d al-Mawt* (Return or Restoration to Life After Death), Book No. 12, *Salsalat al-Ma`jirif al-Dçniyyah* (Series of Religious Knowledge), published by Markaz al-Rislah, Qum, First Edition, AH 1418.
- *Al-Raj`ah* by `Abd al-Karçm ^al-Najaf (contemporary), Book No. 7, *Salsalat fç Ri`jb Ahl al-Bayt* (Series of In The Space of the Ahl al-Bayt), Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422.

confess or deny it. As a general rule, it is not easy for man's imagination to admit something that man has not encountered before, exactly like those who find strange the resurrection on Judgment Day; so, they, as the Holy Qur'in demonstrates, wonder:

®O□≠Bυ□ }□≠δυρ ζN≈σ∇≠∪9Ξ# ⊗© |Π©□ τB

'Who will revive these bones after they rot and become dust?' (36/78)

τA♦pp& !∃ψδρτ±Σρ& \□≠%♥!∃# ∃πκ□□ (σ©□)≡\%

∩∟®∪ {O□≠=τ(≡,]=ψζ ∪ε≡™3 ∈/ υθ\δυρ (;ο♣□τB

Say: 'He will revive them Who brought them into existence at first, and He is Cognizant of all Creation.' (36/79)

In such a situation, where there is no intellectual evidence either to deny or to prove it, we must have recourse to religious texts, which stand as the resources of Divine Revelation. The Holy Qur'in, the most authentic and major source of Divine Revelation, has comprised texts proving the possibility of the return to the worldly life after death, such as the miracle of Prophet Jesus (`a) who restored the dead to life. In this respect, the Holy Qur'in reads:

⊗© (ρ[&υρ □↑υ□)∕Φ{∃#υρ τμψ9[2Φ{∃# ↔□□√&υρ

.↔!∃# ∪β/□∈*∈/ 4□σA\θυK)9Ξ#

[Jesus said] And I heal the blind and the leprous and bring the dead to life with Allah's permission. (3/49)

The Holy Qur'in also reads:

ψ□ \τ/ ♠!∃# ≠v□≈ψδ —□ (σ©□ 4□↓Tp& τAΞσ%

have they caused them to be charged of atheism.

Too many are the examples of such baseless beliefs: some of them believe that the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) was liable to forget, to be inattentive, or even to disobey Almighty Allah!⁽¹⁾ Others believe that the Holy Qur'in is as eternal as Almighty Allah!⁽²⁾ Others believe in Almighty Allah's (conditional) threat! Others believe that the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) did not nominate a successor!

Nevertheless, the two aforementioned probabilities are false. As already cited, the Return is a sort of somatic resurrection and the final assemblage (after death), which is not impossible, and the only difference between the Return and the Resurrection is that the Return will take place at a predefined time in this world, and all points of evidence proving the Resurrection are applicable to the Return. There is no reason for astonishment except that we have not come across such raising of the dead during our lifetime and we also ignore the reasons for or the obstacles against the happening of such Return due to which we

⁽¹⁾ For more details in this respect, the dear reader is advised to see the following book: *al-`a'qā' min Sḥrat al-Nabī al-A`am* by al-`amilī (contemporary), 5:175, Section Three: *Dhu'l-Shajmīlayn and the Prophet's Inadvertence*. In this section, the author has quoted traditions from *al-Bukhārī* and *Muslim*.

⁽²⁾ Due to excessive veneration and honor to the Holy Qur'in, the °anbaliyyah and the Ash'ariyyah believe that it is as eternal as Almighty Allah. Exceeding all limits, some of them believe in the eternity of the papers and covers of the Holy Qur'in and they believe that they share Almighty Allah in essence! See *Dirisjt fē'l-Qur'in al-Karīm* by `Alī Mu'ammad al-`ayifī, pp. 80.

Judaism can obviously be seen in Shc`ism through the belief in the Return (*Raj`ah*).⁽¹⁾

To answer this claim, Judaism can also be seen in the Holy Qur'in more obviously through the same doctrine of the Return, which is mentioned on many occasions in the Holy Qur'in, as has been previously cited.

Moreover, Judaism and Christianity must be seen in many of the doctrines and laws of Islam, because the Holy Prophet, Mu`ammad (ﷺ), has come confirming the bygone Divine religions even though he has abrogated some of their laws. As a result, the emergence of Judaism and Christianity in some doctrines of Islam is not a fault of Islam, even if it be the doctrine of the Return, as is claimed by A`mad Am`n.

In any case, the doctrine of the Return is not among the fundamentals of the religion that must be investigated and believed; rather, we have believed in it corresponding to the authentic traditions reported from the Holy Imims of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) whom we believe to be inerrant. The belief in the Return is finally one of the unseen matters that we have adopted because of the information received from our Holy Imims (`a) and which is not impossible for Almighty Allah.

⁽¹⁾ *Fajr al-Islim* by A`mad Am`n, pp. 276.

♣N\O 5ΘΞτ© σπσ□(ΞΞB ♠!Ξ# | μσ?ΞτBρΞσ] (ΞψγγΞ?)θτB
....| μσςψ\τ/

[Uzair wondered] When will Allah give it life after its death? So, Allah caused him to die for a hundred years then raised him to life. (2/259)

As has been previously cited, the Holy Qur'in reads:

□]]τΦτL/OΞ# ΞσΨ↑ΦτBρ& !ΞυZ↑/υ□ (#θ™9Ξσ%
ΞσΨ]]υ□ψI | ©ΞΞσ] □]]τΦτL/OΞ# ΞυZτΓ | υ□ | μρ&υρ
5Ξ□ ∈ 6ψ□ ¯ΞιB 8λρ©□™ζ 4□v<€) \Ξψγγσ] ΞσΨ ∈ /θ | P™□ ∈ /
ⲁⲃⲃⲃ

[They will say] Our Lord! Thou hast cause us to die two deaths, and Thou hast given us twice to live; now we confess our sins. Is there any way to go forth? (40/11)

This holy verse cannot hold any reasonable sense unless it is interpreted to denote the doctrine of the Return (to the worldly life after death), even though some exegetes of the Holy Qur'in have exerted overabundant efforts to drive it away from this doctrine, but all their efforts have been incompatible with the sense of the holy verse.

As for the second aforesaid probability, it is unfounded because the issue of the Return is one of the necessary subjects on which the Holy Imims (`a) have laid great stress through their uninterrupted reported traditions.

On balance, it is rather odd that a famous writer, namely A`mad Am`n, who claims holding considerable knowledge, says in his book of 'The Dawn of Islam (*Fajr al-Islim*)':

forefathers.⁽¹⁾

Qum: The Author, AH 1418, 2 volumes.

For further details, refer to *Ajwibat Mas'il Jirullih* by `Abd al-`usayn Sharaf al-D`n al-Mfaww (AH 1377), Question No. 10, Revised by `Abd al-Zahrj' al-Yjsir, Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1416/AD 1995.

⁽¹⁾ This tradition is cited in the following reference books: *Da`im al-Islim* by al-Qi al-Nu`m al-Maghrib (AH 363), 1:110, 160, 2:132; *Awj al-La'jil* by al-I'si' (AH 880), 2:104, H.286.

The same tradition has been quoted in many other reference books, yet with a little difference, such as *al-Ma'isin* by al-Barq (AH 274 or 280), Section: *bjb al-taqiyyah*, 1:397, H. 890 according to the edition of The Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly, and 1:255, H. 286 according to the edition of Dir al-Kutub al-Islimiyyah Publishers; *Was'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 16:210, H.21379, Section: *bjb wujlb al-taqiyyah ma'a al-khawf* (Obligation of Practicing Taqiyyah At Situations of Fear), H.4; *Mishkit al-Anwjr f Ghurar al-Akhhjr* by al-`abris (the seventh century of Hijrah), Ch.11: *Taqiyyah*, H.1, pp. 87; *al-irj al-Mustaqm Ilj Mustal'iqq al-Taqqm* by al-`amil al-Nabbj (AH 877), 3:71.

Imjm Muammad al-Bjir ('a) is also reported to have said:

التَّقِيَّةُ مِنْ دِينِي وَدِينِ آبَائِي، وَلَا إِيْمَانَ لِمَنْ لَا تَقِيَّةَ لَهُ.

“Taqiyyah is part of my religion and the religion of my forefathers. Faithless is he who does not hold taqiyyah.”

See *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:219, Section: *bjb al-taqiyyah*, H. 12; *Was'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 16:204, H.21359, Section: *bjb wujlb al-taqiyyah ma'a al-khawf* (Obligation of Practicing Taqiyyah At Situations of Fear), H.4.

33

PIOUS DISSIMULATION (TAQIYYAH)

IMa AL-`aDIQ ('a) is reported to have said in an authenticated tradition:

التَّقِيَّةُ دِينِي وَدِينُ آبَائِي.

Taqiyyah⁽¹⁾ is my belief and the belief of my

⁽¹⁾ For more details about the notion of *taqiyyah* and its principles, the reader is advised to refer to the following books:

- *Al-Taqiyyah f' l-Fikr al-Islim*, Book No. 7 in the series of *Salsalat al-Ma'rif al-Islimiyyah* (Series of Muslim Knowledge), published by *Markaz al-Rislah*, Qum, First Edition, AH 1419.
- *Al-Taqiyyah `Inda Ahl al-Bayt* by Mu`safj Qa`r al-`amil (contemporary), Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly, Second Edition, AH 1415.
- *Wiqi` al-Taqiyyah `Inda al-Madhhib wa'l-Firaq al-Islimiyyah Min Ghayr al-Shc`ah al-Imimiyyah* by Thjmir Hjsim `abeb al-`Amdd, Qum: al-Ghadr Center for Islamic Studies, AH 1416/AD 1995.
- *Al-Taqiyyah* by Murtaqj al-An`jr (AH 1214-1282), Revised by Fjris al-`assfn, Qum: *Qj'im l-Muammad* Foundation, First Edition, AH 1412.
- *Al-Taqiyyah f' Fiqh Ahl al-Bayt*, a thesis by al-Djwar (contemporary), Revised by Muammad `Al al-Mu`allim,

□

Muslims, unify their situations, and reunite their scattered intentions.

Taqiyyah is still the distinctive feature of the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* amongst the other sects and nations. As required by the naïve nature of sound reason, it is normal for every human being to conceal his beliefs and guard himself against pitfalls when he anticipates that a danger will befall him or his property if he proclaims or speaks out his beliefs openly.

History confirms that the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* and their Imims (`a) faced more tyrannical oppression than any other sect or nation.⁽¹⁾ Most of the time, the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah*

إِنَّمَا جُعِلَتِ التَّقِيَّةُ لِيُحَقَّقَ بِهَا الدَّمُ، فَإِذَا بَلَغَ الدَّمُ فَلَيْسَ بِتَقِيَّةٍ.

“In fact, *taqiyyah* has been decreed so as to prevent bloodshed; hence, when a matter reaches the level of bloodshed, then *taqiyyah* is no longer effective (i.e. when one is forced to shed the blood of someone else, he must not practice *taqiyyah*).”

See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 2:220; *Tahdhçb al-A`kim* by Shaykh al-±lsç (AH 460), 6:172; *Wasj`il al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 16:234.

⁽¹⁾ Fore more details in this respect, the gentle reader is advised to see the following books:

- *Al-Shc`ah wa`l-°ikimçn* by Mu`ammad Jawid Mughniyah (AD 1982), Beirut: Djr al-Hilçl Publishers & Djr al-Jawid Publishers, Fifth Edition, AD 1981.
- *Fç `ilçl al-Tashayyu`* by Mu`ammad `Alç al-°usaynç, Kuwait: al-Alfayn Library, First Edition, AH 1403/AD 1983.

Many other reference books dealing with the history of the Holy

□

He (`a) also said,

مَنْ لَا تَقِيَّةَ لَهُ لَا دِينَ لَهُ.

Whosoever has no *taqiyyah*⁽¹⁾ has no belief.⁽²⁾

Raised as their motto, the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) used to practice *taqiyyah* in order to protect themselves and their followers from harm, prevent bloodshed,⁽³⁾ enhance the conditions of

⁽¹⁾ This means that whoever does not believe in and practice *taqiyyah*...

⁽²⁾ The tradition in this very form has been mentioned in the following books: *Fiqh al-Riçj* by Ibn Bçbawayh (AH 320), pp. 338; *Awj`il al-Maqçlçt* by Shaykh al-Mufçd (AH 314), pp. 216; *Biççir al-Anwçr* by al-Majlisç (AH 1111), 75:347.

The most common form of the tradition reads, “Faithless is he who does not hold *taqiyyah*.” In addition to the references mentioned in the previous footnote, see *Man Lç Yaçuruhçl-l-Faqçh* by Shaykh al-`adçq (AH 381), 2:128, H.1928; *ifçt al-Shc`ah* by Shaykh al-`adçq, pp. 3 ((The English version of this book is entitled ‘Qualities of the Shc`ah’ and it is published together with two other books of the same author—namely, *al-mawj`i`* (The Sermons), and *faççilçl ush-shc`ah* (The Merits of the Shc`ah)—in one book entitled *al-Mawj`i`*, translated by Badr Shahin, Qum: Ansariyan Publications, Second Edition, AD 2005)); *al-Kifç* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 2:217, Section: *bçb al-taqiyyah*, H.2; *Wasj`il al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 10:131, H.13033, Section: *bçb jawçz al-ifççir li`l-taqiyyah* (Permissibility of Breaking One’s Fast Due To Dissimulation), H.3 & 16:210, H.21378, 16:215, H.21394; *Mishkçt al-Anwçr fç Ghurar al-Akhhçr* by al-±abrisç (the seventh century of Hijrah), pp. 89; *Kanz al-`Ummçl* by al-Muttaqç al-Hindç (AH 974), 3:96, H.5665.

⁽³⁾ Imçm Mu`ammad al-Bçqir is reported to have said:

□

and writings of the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah* on various subjects such as jurisprudence, laws of Islam, theology, and doctrines are too many to be counted and much more than any other nation or sect.

Our doctrine of *taqiyyah* has been used by rivals of the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah* as another reason to kill them. It seems as if nothing will quench their thirst but that swords find their way to the necks of the Shā`ah so as to annihilate them as was done during the rule of the enemies of the Holy Prophet's (ﷺ) Household, such as the Umayyad, `Abbasid, and Ottoman dynasties.

However, if those who vituperate the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah* for their belief and practice of *taqiyyah*, claiming that this practice is illegal on grounds of religious laws, we must then invite them to listen to the following points:

First: We follow our Imims (ʿa) and abide by their instructions, which represent the most excellent guidance to the truth. These Holy Imims (ʿa) have ordered us to believe in and practice *taqiyyah* and imposed it upon us to practice it when necessity rules. Moreover, in the view of our Holy Imims (ʿa), *taqiyyah* is part of the religion, as expressed by Imim al-ʿIdiq's previously cited saying:

مَنْ لَا تَقِيَّةَ لَهُ لَا دِينَ لَهُ.

Whosoever has no *taqiyyah* has no belief.

Second: The legitimacy of *taqiyyah* is proclaimed in the Holy Qur'in:

بِأَنَّهُمْ يُخْفُونَ كَلِمَاتٍ لَا تُحَرِّمُهَا إِلَّا الْفَاسِقُونَ

...not he who is compelled while his heart is at rest

had to practise *taqiyyah* to conceal their actual beliefs from their rivals and hide their doctrines and private rites in order to avoid persecution in their worldly and religious affairs. This is why the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah*, and none else, have been known for their abidance of *taqiyyah*.

Mentioned in detail in the books of Shā`ite jurisprudence, *taqiyyah* has certain rules and regulations in terms of its obligation or non-obligation that are defined according to the diversity of the conditions that bring about anticipated harm.

Taqiyyah is thus not obligatory under all circumstances; rather it is sometimes allowable while on other occasions, it becomes forbidden, such as in conditions like when support of the religion and serving and striving for Islam rely upon the open declaration and demonstration of the truth. In such conditions, neither property nor lives should be preferred to religion.

Correspondingly, *taqiyyah* becomes forbidden under such circumstances; killing of innocent people, circulation of the wrong, causing corruption to religious principles, or serious injuries to Muslims by misleading them or exposing them to injustice and oppression.

Contrary to the opinion of the rivals of Shā`ism, *taqiyyah* does not mean that the *Imimiyyah Shā`ah* should form a secret association purposed for demolition and destruction, nor does it mean that the religion and its laws become such undiscovered secrets that those who believe in them must never divulge them. This is definitely untrue, because books

Imām and their followers have referred to this topic.

وَقَدْ أَذِنْتُ لَكُمْ فِي تَفْضِيلِ أَعْدَائِنَا إِنْ أَلْجَأَكَ الْخَوْفُ إِلَيْهِ، وَفِي أَظْهَارِ الْبَرَاءَةِ إِنْ حَمَلَكَ الْوَجَلُ عَلَيْهِ، وَفِي تَرْكِ الصَّلَوَاتِ الْمَكْتُوبَاتِ إِنْ خَشِيتَ عَلَى حَشَاشَةِ نَفْسِكَ الْآفَاتِ وَالْعَاهَاتِ. فَإِنْ تَفْضِيلُكَ أَعْدَائِنَا عِنْدَ خَوْفِكَ لَا يَنْفَعُهُمْ وَلَا يَضُرُّنَا، وَإِنْ إِظْهَارُكَ بَرَاءَتِكَ مِنَّا عِنْدَ تَفْيِيتِكَ لَا يَقْدَحُ فِيْنَا وَلَا يُنْقِصُنَا. وَلَنْ تَبْرَأَ مِنَّا سَاعَةً بِلِسَانِكَ وَأَنْتَ مُوَالٍ لَنَا بِجَنَانِكَ لِتُبْقِيَ عَلَى نَفْسِكَ رُوحَهَا الَّتِي بِهَا قِوَامُهَا وَمَالُهَا الَّذِي بِهِ قِيَامُهَا وَجَاهُهَا الَّذِي بِهِ تَمَسُّكُهَا وَتَصُونُ مَنْ عُرِفَ بِذَلِكَ مِنْ أَوْلِيَائِنَا وَإِخْوَانِنَا فَإِنَّ ذَلِكَ أَفْضَلُ مِنْ أَنْ تَتَعَرَّضَ لِلْهَلَاكِ وَتَنْقُطِعَ بِهِ عَنْ عَمَلٍ فِي الدِّينِ وَصَلَاحِ إِخْوَانِكَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ. وَإِيَّاكَ ثُمَّ إِيَّاكَ أَنْ تَتْرَكَ التَّقِيَّةَ الَّتِي أَمَرْتُكَ بِهَا فَإِنَّكَ شَائِطٌ بِدَمِكَ وَدِمَاءِ إِخْوَانِكَ، مُعَرِّضٌ لِنِعْمَتِكَ وَنِعْمَتِهِمْ لِلزَّوَالِ، وَمُذِلٌّ لَهُمْ فِي أَيْدِي أَعْدَاءِ دِينِ اللَّهِ. وَقَدْ أَمَرَكَ اللَّهُ بِإِعْزَازِهِمْ فَإِنَّكَ إِنْ خَالَفتَ وَصِيَّتِي كَانَ ضَرَرُكَ عَلَى إِخْوَانِكَ وَنَفْسِكَ أَشَدَّ مِنْ ضَرَرِ النَّاصِبِ لَنَا، الْكَافِرِ بِنَا.

“... I also command you to practice taqiyyah in the affairs of your religion, because Almighty Allah says, ‘Let not believers take unbelievers rather than believers for friends; and whosoever does this shall have nothing of the guardianship of Allah. Guard yourselves against them, guarding carefully; and Allah makes you cautious of retribution from Himself; and to Allah is the eventual coming.’ (3/28) I permit you all to declare preference of our enemies over us when fear impels you to do so; and [I permit you all] to speak out disavowal of us when dread drives you to do so; and [I permit you all] to stop offering

□

on account of his faith. (16/106)

This holy verse was revealed to discuss the manner of `Ammir ibn Yisir who had to show disbelief in order to save himself from the enemies of Islam.⁽¹⁾

On another occasion, the Holy Qur'in clarifies:

...except that when you [have to] guard yourselves against them with thorough guarding... (3/28)⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *Tafsir al-Ayyish* by Ibn `Ayyish al-Salam al-Samarqandī (AH 320), 2:272-273, H.76; *Tafsir al-Qumm* (AH 329), 1:390; *ʿaqʿiq al-Taʿwēl fī Mutashjibah al-Tanzēl* by al-Sharʿf al-Raʿf (AH 406), pp. 76; *al-Tibyjn fī Tafsir al-Qurʿin* by al-ʿabris (AH 460), 6:428; *Majmaʿ al-Bayjn fī Tafsir al-Qurʿin* by al-ʿabris (AH 560), 6:203; *Tafsir al-Qurʿin* by `Abd al-Razzīq al-ʿanʿin (AH 211), 2:360; *Jimiʿ al-Bayjn ʿan Taʿwēl ʿy al-Qurʿin* by al-ʿabar (AH 310), 7:355, 14:237; *Alkim al-Qurʿin* by al-Jaʿay (AH 370), 3:249; *al-Mustadrak ʿAlī al-ʿaʿayn* by al-ʿikim al-Naysib (AH 405), 2:357; *Zid al-Masʿr fī ʿilm al-Tafsir* by Ibn al-Jawz (AH 597), 4:362, as well as many other book reference of *ʿadeth* and *tafsir*.

⁽²⁾ In this respect, Imjm `Al Amr al-Mu'min (a) says in one of his argumentative speeches:

... وَأَمْرُكَ أَنْ تَسْتَعْمِلَ التَّقِيَّةَ فِي دِينِكَ، فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَقُولُ:

﴿... وَأَمْرُكَ أَنْ تَسْتَعْمِلَ التَّقِيَّةَ فِي دِينِكَ، فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَقُولُ:﴾

﴿... وَأَمْرُكَ أَنْ تَسْتَعْمِلَ التَّقِيَّةَ فِي دِينِكَ، فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَقُولُ:﴾

﴿... وَأَمْرُكَ أَنْ تَسْتَعْمِلَ التَّقِيَّةَ فِي دِينِكَ، فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَقُولُ:﴾

﴿... وَأَمْرُكَ أَنْ تَسْتَعْمِلَ التَّقِيَّةَ فِي دِينِكَ، فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَقُولُ:﴾

□

قَتْلٌ، وَلَا إِلَىٰ إِيْمٍ، فَإِنَّهُ لَا عُذْرَ لَهُ.

“Taqiyyah (or tuqj:h) is to speak with one’s tongue while the heart is full of faith. However, to practice taqiyyah does not include the killing of someone or committing an offense. Such being the case, no excuse is admitted.”

See *al-Mustadrak `Alj al-`a|ç|ayn* by al-°|kim al-Naysjbfrç (AH 405), 2:291; *al-Sunan al-Kubrj* by al-Bayhaqç (AH 458), 8:209. Other reference books of *adçth* have also quoted this saying.

Under the title of ‘Sense and Ruling of *Taqiyyah*’, Abç-Bakr al-Ja¥¥a¥ says:

“Almighty Allah says, ‘...but you should guard yourselves against them, guarding carefully (*tuqj:h*)... (3/28)’ This means that if you expect damage of yourselves or some of your organs, then you should behave with dissimulation (*taqiyyah*); that is to show loyalty to them (i.e. the enemies) without having faith in them. This is the overt sense of *taqiyyah* as is necessitated by the word *tuqj:h*. This opinion is unanimously adopted by the majority of scholars. The holy verse denotes the permissibility of stating disbelief (*kufr*) under *taqiyyah*. Similar to this is the following holy verse: ‘He who disbelieves in Allah after his having believed, not he who is compelled while his heart is at rest on account of faith. (16/106)’ Permissibility of practicing *taqiyyah* under such circumstances is considered permission granted by Almighty Allah.”

Reference: *A|kjm al-Qur’in* by Abç-Bakr al-Ja¥¥a¥ (AH 370), 2:12.

Concerning the exegesis of the previously mentioned holy verse, al-±abarç has reported Ibn `Abbjs as saying:

“Taqiyyah is practiced by tongue only. That is to say, one who is compelled to say a word that is considered disobedience to Almighty Allah may utter that word for fear of people, while the heart is full of faith. There is no objection to such a deed as long as taqiyyah must not exceed

□

the obligatory prayers when you expect hardships and adversities to befall you. In fact, to prefer our enemies to us at situations of fear will neither benefit them nor harm us; and to disavow us before our enemies because of taqiyyah will neither slander nor belittle us. If you disavow us for an hour with your tongue while you are loyal to us in your heart to save your life, your property and your prestige, and save our loyalists and brothers who are known for their adherence to us, this will definitely be better than exposing yourself to perdition. If you do not then you will no longer be able to do a rightful act for your religion or an act bringing about a benefit for your brethren-in-faith. Do not ever shun practicing taqiyyah with which I have commanded you, lest you cause bloodshed to yourself and your brethren-in-faith, expose your own and their livelihood to loss, and make them subservient to the mercy of the enemies of Almighty Allah’s religion. Almighty Allah has commanded you to bring them dignity. If you violate my instruction, you will bring upon yourself and your brethren-in-faith harm that is worse than the harm expected from those who incur our hostility and disbelieve in us.”

See *al-I’tijj* by al-±abrisç (AH 506), 1:354-356; *Madçnat al-Ma`jjiz* by al-Ba|rjnc (AH 1107), 1:360; *Was’il al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 16:229, H.21431, Section: *bjb jawjz al-taqiyyah fç i`hjr kalimat al-kufr* (Permissibility of Speaking Out the Word of Atheism As A Practice of *Taqiyyah*), H.10; *Bi’jr al-Anwjr* by al-Majlisç (AH 1111), 10:75, Section No. 4: *i’tijjuhç `alj al-çabçb al-y£nçnç* (His Argument Against the Greek Physician).

`Abdulljh ibn `Abbjs—may Almighty Allah be pleased with him—is reported to have said:

النُّقَاةُ التَّكَلُّمُ بِاللِّسَانِ، وَالْقَلْبُ مُطْمَئِنٌّ بِالْإِيْمَانِ. فَلَا يَبْسُطُ يَدَهُ فِي

□

On a third occasion, the Holy Qur'in says:

□χ)θτ©)□≠]⊃A#υ™ | ¯ειB √ ¯εB |σ□B ·≡©_υ□ τA∃σ%υρ

□...|μυZ≈ψθ□ε)⇒O|ΦJ3τ□

And a believing man of Pharaoh's people who hid his faith... (40/28)

the tongue.”

A similar narration has been reported from al-@a_{ii}k. **Reference:** *Tafṣr J̣mi` al-Baỵn* by al-±abarç (AH 310), 3:310-311.

Al-Qurşubç has reported al-°asan (al-BaŸrç) as saying:

“Taqiyyah is allowed for men up to the Day of Judgment.
Yet, there is no taqiyyah in matters of murder.”

Al-Bukḥrç has also reported a similar tradition from al-°asan al-BaŸrç.

Reference: *al-J̣mi` li-A|ḳim al-Qur'̣n* by al-Qurşubç (AH 671), 4:57; ¯a|ç| *al-Bukḥrç* (AH 256), 8:55, Chapter: *Kiṭb al-Ikṛh* (Compulsion).

For further details, the reader is advised to refer to the exegesis of the previously mentioned holy verses in the reference books of *tafṣr*.

- **Prelude**
- **Supplication (*Du`i`*)**
- *Supplications of al-`a`fah al-Sajjidiyyah*
- *Pilgrimages to the Holy Shrines*
- *The Meaning of Sh`ism According to the Ahl al-Bayt (`a)*
- *Oppression and Injustice*
- *Cooperation with Oppressors*
- *Holding Offices in Despotic Governments*
- *Calling upon Islamic Unity*
- *Mutual Rights of Muslims*

PART FOUR:

**TEACHINGS
OF THE AHL AL-BAYT
FOR THEIR FOLLOWERS**

religious sciences. However, we can allude to some doctrines that the Holy Imims (`a) taught their followers to ensure they constituted a righteous community, approximated them to Almighty Allah, cleansed them of the filth of sins and vices, and gave rise to decency and honesty in their inner selves.

Among such socially useful teachings of the Holy Imims (`a) is *taqiyyah*, discussed in the previous chapter. We will therefore mention some other teachings.

PRELUDE

THE HOLY IM^aMS of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) had already concluded that they would not assume the political leadership of the Muslim nation (of which they are worthier than any other person and for which Almighty Allah had prepared them) so long as they are alive, and that their followers (Shç`ah) would suffer under the authority of others who consider it necessary to persecute the Shç`ah with all means of violence and cruelty.

As a result, it was very natural, on the one hand, that the Shç`ah, under the commandments of their Imims, adopt *taqiyyah* as their style of life and technique in the same way as their Imims had practiced it before them, as long as *taqiyyah* would be the one and only means of preventing their enemies from shedding their blood and as long as it would do evil neither to them nor to the religion in general, so that they would survive the seditious conditions of their ages and the enmity incurred by the ruling authorities against the Ahl al-Bayt (`a).

On the other hand, it was necessary for the Holy Imims (`a), in their capacity as the Divinely commissioned guides of the Muslim nation, to devote themselves to teaching their followers the laws of Islam, guiding them to the path of religiousness and righteousness, and directing them to a socially useful course so that they would be perfect examples of decent Muslim individuals.

The present brief thesis cannot comprehend the Ahl al-Bayt's (`a) methodology of teaching, which is present in the huge books of traditions that comprise much of such

السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالْأَرْضِ.

Supplication has thus become one of the distinctive features of the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* who have excelled all others in this peculiarity. As a result, they have written down tens of books, both brief and elaborate, on the merits and etiquettes of supplicating. Such books have also comprised the prayers and supplications reported from the Holy Imims of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a), achieving the purpose which the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and his Household (`a) aimed at when they urged and aroused the interests of people to supplicate Almighty Allah through numerous statements and traditions, such as the following:

أَفْضَلُ الْعِبَادَةِ الدُّعَاءُ.

Supplication is the most favorite act of worship.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:466, Chapter: *Kitjb al-Du`i`* (Book of Supplication), Section: *bjb al-du`i` wa`l-athth`alayh* (Supplication and Urging On It), H.1; *al-Mujtanj min Du`i`* *al-Mujtabj* by Ibn aawf (AH 664), pp. 5; *Wasj`il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-amil (AH 1104), 7:30-31, Section: *bjb isti`bjb ikhtiyjr al-du`i``alj ghayrih min al-ibjdjt al-musta`abbah* (The Recommendation of Preferring Supplication Over Other Recommended Acts of Worship), H.1/8625.

In H.7/8631, it is recorded that the Holy Prophet (a) is reported to have said:

أَفْضَلُ الْعِبَادَةِ الدُّعَاءُ؛ وَإِذَا أَدْنَى اللَّهُ لِعَبْدٍ فِي الدُّعَاءِ فَتَحَ لَهُ أَبْوَابَ الرَّحْمَةِ. إِنَّهُ لَنْ يَهْلِكَ مَعَ الدُّعَاءِ أَحَدٌ.

“The best of worship is supplication. If Almighty Allah permits a servant to supplicate to Him, He opens the doors to (His) mercy before the servant. A suppliant shall never perish.”

□

34

SUPPLICATION (*DU`i`*)

THE HOLY PROPHET has described supplication (*du`i`*)⁽¹⁾ as the weapon of true believers, the pillar of the religion, and the light of the heavens and the earth:⁽²⁾

الدُّعَاءُ سِلَاحُ الْمُؤْمِنِ، وَعَمُودُ الدِّينِ، وَنُورُ

⁽¹⁾ For more details about the philosophy, manners, worldly and religious effects, and reasons for response or rejection of *du`i`*, the reader is advised to refer to the following books: *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:466-595, Chapter: *Kitjb al-Du`i`* (Book of Supplication) –this section comprises an elaborate, comprehensive treatise on *du`i`*. See also *al-Du`i``Inda Ahl al-Bayt* by Muammad Mahd al-`if (contemporary); *al-`Abd al-Mawlj Niqj\$ al-Tamjs* by Muammad K`im al-Kirmani, an essay issued in *Risjlat al-Thaqalayn* Magazine, Issue No. 19-20.

⁽²⁾ This *adeth* can be found in the following reference books: *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:468, H.1, Section: *bjb anna al-du`i` silj al-mu`min* (Supplication: The Believers' Weapon); *UyEn Akhbjr al-Rij* by Shaykh al-adfq (AH 381), 1:40, H.95; *al-Mustadrak`Alj al-`a`ayn* by al-`kim al-Naysjbfr (AH 405), 1:492; *Majma` al-Zawj'id* by al-Haytham (AH. 807), 10:147, Section: *bjb al-istin`ijr bi`l-du`i`* (Seeking Aid By Means of Supplication); *Musnad Abc-Ya`lj al-Maw`ilc* (AH 307), 1:344, H.439; *al-Jjmi` al-`aghcr* by al-Suyf\$ (AH 911), 1:655, H. 4258.

الدُّعَاءُ شِفَاءٌ مِنْ كُلِّ دَاءٍ.

Supplication is a remedy for all maladies.⁽¹⁾

Narrations have described Imim `Alc Amcr al-Mu'minçn (`a) as markedly suppliant.⁽²⁾ A great deal of supplication is

See also *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 2:469; Section: *bjb anna al-du`j' yaruddu al-balj' wa'l-qaçj'* (Supplication Repels Afflictions and Predestinations); *al-Khiçjl* by Shaykh al-adfc (AH 381), pp. 620; *Tu'af al-Uqçl* by Ibn Shu`bah al-arrinc (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 110; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amilc (AH 1104), 7:36, Section: *bjb jawjz al-du`j' biraddi al-balj' al-muqaddar wa şalab taghyçr qaçj' al-sçl' wa isti|bjb dhjlika* (The Permissibility of Supplicating For Repelling A Predestined Affliction and Praying For Changing Evil Predestination and Recommendation for That); *Kitjb al-Du`j'* by Sulaymçn ibn A|mad al-çabarinc (AH 360), pp. 30; *al-Mustadrak `Alj al-aç|ayn* by al-çkim al-Naysjbçrc (AH 405), 3:481; *al-Jçmi` al-aghçr* by al-Suyççç (AH 911), 1:206, 655, 656, H.1390, 4262, 4265; *Kanz al-Ummjl* by al-Muttaçç al-Hindç (AH 974), 2, 62, 63, 69, H.3118, 3120, 3121, 3161, 3162.

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 2:470, Section: *bjb anna al-du`j' shifj' min kulli dçj'* (Supplication: Remedy For Every Malady), 6:413; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amilc (AH 1104), 7:45, H.8677, Section: *bjb isti|bjb al-du`j' `inda nuzçl al-maraç wa'l-saqam* (Recommendation of Supplications At Afflictions of Sicknesses and Ailments).

⁽²⁾ Imçm Ja`far al-çdiç (`a) is reported to have said:

كَانَ أَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ رَجُلًا دَعَاءً.

Amcr al-Mu'minçn (Imçm `Alc) (`a) was seen frequently supplicating.

See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 2:468, *bjb al-du`j' wa'l-|athth `alayh* (Supplication and Urging On It), H.8; *Uddat al-Dj`ç*

□

أَحَبُّ الْأَعْمَالِ إِلَى اللَّهِ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ فِي الْأَرْضِ الدُّعَاءُ.

For Almighty Allah, supplication is the most desirable act (of worship) that is done on this earth.⁽¹⁾

Moreover, the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) said:

إِنَّ الدُّعَاءَ يَرُدُّ الْقَضَاءَ وَالْبَلَاءَ.

Verily, Supplication may hold off predetermined calamities and misfortunes.⁽²⁾

See *Biçjr al-Anwçr* by al-Majlisç (AH 1111), 90:302, H. 39; *al-Mustadrak `Alj al-aç|ayn* by al-çkim al-Naysjbçrc (AH 405), 1:491, Chapter: *kitjb al-du`j' wa'l-takbçr wa'l-tahlçl...*; *al-Jçmi` al-aghçr* by al-Suyççç (AH 911), 1:120, H.1281; *Kanz al-Ummjl* by al-Muttaçç al-Hindç (AH 974), 2:64, H.3134.

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 2:468, Chapter: *Kitjb al-Du`j'* Book of Supplication), Section: *bjb al-du`j' wa'l-|athth `alayh* (Supplication and Urging On It), H.8 (In this book, the *adçth* is reported from Imçm `Alc Amcr al-Mu'minçn); *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amilc (AH 1104), 7:31, H. 8628; *Mustadrak al-Wasj'il* by al-Nçrc al-çabrisç (AH 1320), 5:17, 171, H.5592, 5588; *Musnad A|mad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 2:362; *Sunan Ibn Mçjah* (AH 275), 2:1258, H.3829; *al-Mustadrak `Alj al-aç|ayn* by al-çkim al-Naysjbçrc (AH 405), 1:490, Chapter: *kitjb al-du`j' wa'l-takbçr wa'l-tahlçl...*; *Kashf al-Khafj' wa-Muzçl al-Ilbçs* by al-`Ajalçnc (AH 1162), 2:169, H.2141.

⁽²⁾ See *Qurb al-Isncd* by al-imyarç al-Baghdjçç (AH 300), pp. 32. In this reference book, it is recorded that Imçm al-çdiç (`a) has said:

إِنَّ الدُّعَاءَ يَرُدُّ الْقَضَاءَ، وَإِنَّ الْمُؤْمِنَ لَيَأْتِي بِالذَّنْبِ فَيُحْرَمُ بِهِ الرِّزْقَ.

“Verily, supplication repels predestination. A believer may be deprived of sustenance due to committing a sin.

□

They contain such marvelous Divine facts and religious directives that provide an advanced program of education for true Muslims.

If carefully observed, the supplications of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and Imims (‘a) contain an excellent pattern of conduct that a Muslim individual can follow. They arouse the powers of true faith and conviction, stimulate the spirit of sacrifice for the truth, present the secrets of worship and the pleasant taste of confidential talk with the Almighty, and prescribe what one should learn from one’s religion, what brings one close to Almighty Allah, and what drives one away from corruption, whims and heresies.

In short, these supplications cover all aspects of morality and self-discipline as well as all aspects of Muslim belief. Furthermore, they are the most important references to philosophical views and scientific research in the fields of Divinity and ethics.

Had all people been able to abide by the points of true guidance that are introduced in the excellent contents of these supplications, there would have been no single trace left for corruption on this globe, which is overburdened with corruption, and these souls enchained with evil would have soared freely high overhead in the skies of truth. Nevertheless, how can humanity listen to the words of the reformers and respond to the calls of the truth after

See *Iqbil al-A`mil* by Ibn al-awf (AH 664), pp. 220, Section No.8: *fc m j yata`allaqu bishahri sha`b;n al-mu`a`am* (Acts Appertained to the Honored Month of Sha`b;n); *al-Balad al-Am;n wa`l-Dir` al-`a`n* by al-Kaf`am (AH 900), pp. 265.

expected to be an outstanding feature of one who is described as the chief of the monotheists and the leader of the devout.

Like his sermons, Imim `Alc’s (‘a) supplications, one of which is the famous Supplication of Kumayl (known as *du`i’ kumayl*)⁽¹⁾, have been masterpieces of Arabic eloquence.

wa-Najil al-Sa`c by Ibn Fahad al-°illc (AH 841), pp. 33, 191 (The English version of this book has been published by Ansariyan Publications under the title ‘The Asset of the Supplicant’, translated by Dr. Aqili Ashtiyani).

⁽¹⁾ The famous supplication known as *du`i’ kumayl* begins with the following statement:

اَللّٰهُمَّ اِنِّيْ اَسْأَلُكَ بِرَحْمَتِكَ الَّتِي وَسِعَتْ كُلَّ شَيْءٍ، وَبِقُوَّتِكَ الَّتِي قَهَرَتْ بِهَا كُلَّ شَيْءٍ...

O Allah, I ask You by Your mercy, which embraces all things; And by Your strength, through which Thou dominatest all things...

This famous supplication, which is also called ‘*du`i’ al-kha`ir*’, has been reported by Kumayl ibn Ziyid al-Nakha`c from Imim `Alc Amc al-Mu`min (‘a). Laying emphasis on the significance of this *du`i’*, Imim `Alc (‘a) recommended it to Kumayl saying:

يَا كُمْيَلُ! اِذَا حَفِظْتَ هَذَا الدُّعَاءَ قَادَغُ بِهِ كُلَّ لَيْلَةٍ جُمُعَةٍ اَوْ فِي الشَّهْرِ مَرَّةً اَوْ فِي السَّنَةِ مَرَّةً اَوْ فِي عُمْرِكَ مَرَّةً تُكْفَ وَتُنْصَرُ وَتُرَزَقَ وَلَنْ تُعْذِمَ الْمَغْفِرَةُ.

“O Kumayl, if you memorize this *du`i’*, then you are recommended to say it every Thursday night, or once a month, or once a year, or once in your whole lifetime. If you do so, you will be granted protection, support and sustenance. Furthermore, you will never be deprived of forgiveness...”

جَرَى عَلَيَّ مِنْ ذَلِكَ بَعْضَ حُدُودِكَ، وَخَالَفْتُ بَعْضَ
أوامرك.

My God and my Protector! Thou put into effect through me a decree but I followed the caprice of my own soul, And [I] did not remain wary of the adorning of my enemy. So, he deluded me through my soul's caprice and therein destiny helped him. So, in what was put into effect through me in that situation, I transgressed some of Your statutes, and disobeyed some of Your commands.⁽¹⁾

Undoubtedly, to reveal such confessions in privacy is much easier than to reveal it in public in the presence of people although it is also one of the most difficult admissions made in private. If man tries, it will contribute greatly to the alleviation of the evil ardors within and training oneself on seeking goodness.

One who really intends to discipline oneself must achieve such privacy and call oneself to account. Hence, the easiest method of such introspection is to repeat these supplications till their contents penetrate into the depths of the self. For instance, one may repeat the following statement of the famous supplication known as *Du`i' Abḥ-°amzah al-Thamili*:⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *Iqbāl al-A`mil* by Sayyid Ibn al-Jawzi (AH 664), pp. 221; *al-Balad al-Amḥ* by al-Kaf'amḥ (AH 900), pp. 267, as well as other books of supplications.

⁽²⁾ *Du`i' Abḥ-°amzah al-Thamili* has been reported from Imām al-°Alī ibn al-°usayn Zayn al-°abidin ('a). This supplication, which is advisably read in the last hours of the Ramaḥin nights (*sa'ar*),



Almighty Allah has revealed their reality, saying:

مَنْ يَأْمُرْ بِالسُّوءِ يُعَذِّبْهُ مِمَّا عَفَا عَلَيْهِ وَإِنَّ أَوَّلَ الْفِتْنَةِ لَحَدُّهُ

Most surely, man's soul is wont to command him to do evil. (11/ 53)

وَمَا يَكْفُرُ بِهِ إِلَّا الْأُنثَى الْوَقُوفُ

وَمَا يَكْفُرُ بِهِ إِلَّا الْأُنثَى الْوَقُوفُ

And most men will not believe though you desire it eagerly. (11/103)

The pillar of evil in human souls lies in self-conceit, blinking at one's faults, and the false fancy that causes man to reckon that all his deeds are good. Such being the case, man begins to wrong and oppress others, lie to and deceive others, and give free rein to his lust to lead him wherever his caprice commands. Even so, man believes that he is doing exactly what he should do, shutting his eyes to wrongdoing, and treating too lightly his sins.

These supplications, on the other hand, are focused on teaching man how to achieve self-seclusion and devotion to Almighty Allah—two matters that lead man to confess his faults and admit that he is blameworthy and needs to apply himself solely to Almighty Allah, beg Him for forgiveness and acceptance of his repentance. Besides, these supplications point out man's places of vanity and sinfulness in his inner self, teaching him to say the following statement, quoted from the famous *Du`i' Kumayl*:

إِلَهِي وَمَوْلَايَ! أَجْرَيْتَ عَلَيَّ حُكْمًا إِنِّي بَعْتُ فِيهِ هَوَى
نَفْسِي، وَلَمْ أَحْتَرَسْ فِيهِ مِنْ تَرْبِيْنِ عَدُوِّي، فَعَرَّنِي بِمَا
أَهْوَى، وَأَسْعَدَهُ عَلَى ذَلِكَ الْقَضَاءُ؛ فَتَجَاوَزْتُ بِمَا

In fact, if anyone other than You has watched me while committing these sins, I may not commit them; and had I anticipated immediateness of punishment, I might have avoided doing them.

This confession of the existence of such extraneous factors and the necessity of concealing such evils in oneself arouses the desire to pray for Almighty Allah's pardon and forgiveness. One does not wish to be humiliated before people when Almighty Allah decides to punish one in this world or on the Day of Resurrection because of the evil deeds that one has done. Just then, one finds the pleasant taste of confidential conversation with the Almighty and devotes oneself to Him, praising and thanking Him for being tolerant and pardoning one although He has always had the power to do otherwise by disclosing one's faults before people. The supplication then continues:

فَلَا الْحَمْدُ عَلَى حِلْمِكَ بَعْدَ عِلْمِكَ، وَعَلَى عَفْوِكَ بَعْدَ قُدْرَتِكَ.

Hence, all praise be to You, for You act tolerably although You have full knowledge (of the faults); and for Your pardon even though You have the absolute authority (to punish).

The next paragraphs of the supplication inspire one with ways of admitting faults and seeking pardon for past violations on the grounds of Almighty Allah's lenience and pardon. The bond that attaches a servant with his Lord will not break and the servant will realize that his acts of disobedience to the Lord have not been based on his denial or belittling of Almighty Allah. So, the supplication continues:

أَيُّ رَبِّ جَلَّلَنِي بِسِثْرِكَ، وَاعْفُ عَنِّي تَوْبِيخِي بِكَرَمِ وَجْهِكَ.

O my Lord! Cover me with Your protective covering, and overlook reproaching me out of the Majesty of Your Face.

Pondering over the expression 'cover me...' shows that it arouses in the self the desire to conceal all its evils so that one may perceive these extraneous factors in oneself. The expression then alludes to a confession of this fact when one reads the following statement:

فَلَوْ اطَّلَعَ الْيَوْمَ عَلَى ذُنُوبِي غَيْرُكَ مَا فَعَلْتُهُ! وَلَوْ خِفْتُ تَعْجِيلَ الْعُقُوبَةِ لَاجْتَنَبْتُهَا!

begins with the following:

إِلَهِي لَا تُؤَذِّبْنِي بِعُقُوبَتِكَ، وَلَا تَمْكُرْ بِي فِي حِيلَتِكَ، مِنْ أَيْنَ لِي الْخَيْرُ يَا رَبِّ وَلَا يُوجَدُ إِلَّا مِنْ عِنْدِكَ؟...

"O Allah: Do not discipline me by means of Your punishment; and do not subject me to Your planned strategy. How can I attain welfare, O Lord, while it is not found anywhere save with You..."

See *al-ʿaḥḥah al-Kamilah al-Sajjadiyyah*, Supplication No. 116; *Muhaj al-Daʿawāt wa-Manhaj al-ʿIbādāt* by Sayyid Ibn ʿawās (AH 664), pp. 208; *al-Balad al-Amḥān wa'l-Dirʿ al-ʿaḥḥah* by al-Kaḥḥam (AH 900), pp. 288.

[This *duʿāʾ*, as well as many other famous supplications, has been translated into English and compiled in many different books the most comprehensive of which is entitled, 'Rites of Rajab, Shaʿbān, and Ramaḥān', translated by Badr Shahin, Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 2006. (translator)]

Would that I knew—my Master, My God and my Protector

Wilt Thou give the Fire dominion over faces that have prostrated themselves before Your Omnipotence;

over tongues that have sincerely professed Your Unity and given thanks to You in praise thereof;

over hearts that have acknowledged Your Divinity through verification;

over minds that have gained knowledge of You until they have become humble;

and, over bodily members that have sped to the places of Your worship in obedience and begged for Your forgiveness in submission?

No such opinion is held of You! Nor has such been reported -thanks to Your bounty- concerning You.

Re-read this passage and reflect upon the excellence, eloquence, and diction of these words of argument. At the same time as these words inspire the soul to concede its shortcomings in servitude to the Almighty, they instruct it not to despair of His mercy and kindness. Looking with a stealthy glance, these words address the souls and remind them of their primary duties by supposing that all the required duties towards the Almighty have been carried out, to lay stress on the fact that man will deserve forgiveness of Almighty Allah only after carrying out all these duties completely. This style fills man, who has not yet accomplished these duties, with the desire to review his manners and then make up for the duties, which he missed.

The following passage of the same supplication is another

وَيَحْمِلُنِي وَيَجَرُّنِي عَلَى مَعْصِيَتِكَ حُلْمًا عَنِّي!
وَيَذْعُونِي إِلَى قِلَّةِ الْحَيَاءِ سِثْرُكَ عَلَيَّ! وَيُسِرُّ عَنِّي إِلَى
التَّوْتُبِ عَلَى مَحَارِمِكَ مَعْرِفَتِي بِسَعَةِ رَحْمَتِكَ وَعَظِيمِ
عَفْوِكَ!

It is Your forbearance that gives me latitude and makes me dare to break Your laws; and it is Your concealment of my faults that makes me act shamelessly in Your presence; and it is my acquaintance with the broadness of Your mercy and the magnitude of Your pardon that makes me hurry to violate that which You have forbidden.

In this fashion, supplications pursue the course of confidential talks that aim at disciplining oneself and pledging obedience to Almighty Allah and shunning acts of disobedience.

This brief thesis does not allow me to cite more examples of such sublime supplications.

However, I am inclined to mention some supplications that carry a method of offering pleas before Almighty Allah for the sake of seeking His pardon and forgiveness, such as the following paragraph of *Du`i' Kumayl*:

وَلَيْتَ شِعْرِي يَا سَيِّدِي وَإِلَهِي وَمَوْلَايَ! أُنْسَلَطَ النَّارَ
عَلَى وَجْهِهِ خَرَّتْ لِعَظَمَتِكَ سَاجِدَةً؟ وَعَلَى أَلْسُنِ
نَطَقَتْ بِتَوْحِيدِكَ صَادِقَةً وَبِشُكْرِكَ مَادِحَةً؟ وَعَلَى
قُلُوبٍ اعْتَرَفَتْ بِإِلَهِيَّتِكَ مُحَقَّقَةً؟ وَعَلَى ضَمَائِرَ حَوَتْ
مِنَ الْعِلْمِ بِكَ حَتَّى صَارَتْ خَاشِعَةً؟ وَعَلَى جَوَارِحَ
سَعَتْ إِلَى أَوْطَانِ تَعْبُدِكَ طَائِعَةً وَأَشَارَتْ بِاسْتِغْفَارِكَ
مُذْنَعَةً؟ مَا هَكَذَا الظَّنُّ بِكَ وَلَا أَخْبَرْنَا بِفَضْلِكَ عَنْكَ!

should hold:

اللَّهُمَّ ارْزُقْنَا تَوْفِيقَ الطَّاعَةِ، وَبُعْدَ الْمَعْصِيَةِ، وَصِدْقَ النِّيَّةِ، وَعِرْفَانَ الْحُرْمَةِ، وَكُرْمَنَا بِالْهُدَى وَالْإِسْتِقَامَةِ، وَسَدِّدْ أَلْسِنَتَنَا بِالصَّوَابِ وَالْحِكْمَةِ، وَامْلَأْ قُلُوبَنَا بِالْعِلْمِ وَالْمَعْرِفَةِ، وَطَهِّرْ بُطُونَنَا مِنَ الْحَرَامِ وَالشُّبْهَةِ، وَاكْثِفْ أَيْدِينَا عَنِ الظُّلْمِ وَالسَّرْقَةِ، وَاغْضُضْ أَبْصَارَنَا عَنِ الْفُجُورِ وَالْخِيَانَةِ، وَاسْدُدْ أَسْمَاعَنَا عَنِ اللَّغْوِ وَالْغِيْبَةِ، وَتَفَضَّلْ عَلَيَّ عِلْمَانِنَا بِالزُّهْدِ وَالنَّصِيحَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْمُتَعَلِّمِينَ بِالْجُهْدِ وَالرَّغْبَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْمُسْتَمْعِينَ بِالِاتِّبَاعِ وَالْمَوْعِظَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ مَرْضَى الْمُسْلِمِينَ بِالشِّفَاءِ وَالرَّاحَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ مَوْتَاهُمْ بِالرَّأْفَةِ وَالرَّحْمَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ مَشَايِخِنَا بِالْوَقَارِ وَالسَّكِينَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الشَّابَّاتِ بِالْإِنَابَةِ وَالتَّوْبَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ النِّسَاءِ بِالْحَيَاءِ وَالْعِفَّةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْأَغْنِيَاءِ بِالتَّوَاضُّعِ وَالسَّعَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْفُقَرَاءِ بِالصَّبْرِ وَالْقَنَاعَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْعُزَازَةِ بِاللِّصْرِ وَالْغَلْبَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْأَسْرَاءِ بِالْخِلَاصِ وَالرَّاحَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الْأُمَرَاءِ بِالْعَدْلِ وَالشَّفَقَةِ، وَعَلَيَّ الرِّعِيَّةِ بِالْإِنْصَافِ وَحُسْنِ السَّيْرِ، وَبَارِكْ لِلْحُجَّاجِ وَالزُّوَّارِ فِي الزَّادِ وَالنَّفَقَةِ، وَأَقْضِ مَا أُوجِبْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ مِنَ الْحَجِّ وَالْعُمْرَةِ، بِفَضْلِكَ وَرَحْمَتِكَ يَا أَرْحَمَ الرَّاحِمِينَ.

O Allah; (please do) grant us success in obeying (You), remoteness from disobeying (You), true intention, and identification of sanctity. (Please do) honor us with true guidance and straight-forwardness. Dedicate our tongues to truth and wisdom. Fill our hearts with knowledge and learning. Purify our stomachs from illegally and

style of offering pleas:

فَهَبْنِي، يَا إِلَهِي وَسَيِّدِي وَمَوْلَايَ وَرَبِّي، صَبَرْتُ عَلَى عَذَابِكَ، فَكَيْفَ أَصْبِرُ عَلَى فِرَاقِكَ؟ وَهَبْنِي صَبَرْتُ عَلَى حَرِّ نَارِكَ، فَكَيْفَ أَصْبِرُ عَنِ النَّظَرِ إِلَى كَرَامَتِكَ؟

Then, suppose—O My God, Master, Protector, and Lord—that I am able to endure Your chastisement, but how can I endure separation from You? And suppose that I am able to endure the heat of Your Fire, but how can I endure not gazing upon Your generosity?

These statements draw the attentions towards the necessity of tasting nearness to Almighty Allah and touching on His honor and absolute power over all things by bearing love for Him and hankering after what He has prepared for His loving servants. They also emphasise the fact that such pleasure must attain such an elevated level that it influences souls more than chastisement and the heat of fire do. Supposing that man can stand the heat of Hellfire, he will not be able to stand separation from Almighty Allah.

Besides, the previously cited passage of the supplication tries to make us understand that such love and pleasure of gaining the favor of the worshipped and beloved Lord will be the best means a sinful individual can find to win His pardon and forgiveness. Undeniably, seeking the affection and favor of the Lord—the All-generous, All-forbearing, the Forgiver of sins, and the Acceptor of repentance—are definitely blessings that He confers upon His servants.

Let us end with a brief, yet comprehensive, supplication that encloses all nobility of character and demonstrates the praiseworthy features that each organ in the human body

recommend them to read these supplications as if they are expressing their personal states, with full observance of the etiquettes that the Ahl al-Bayt (‘a) have instructed us to do while reading them.

It is important to note that reading these supplications with absent minds and distracted hearts will be no more than shaking of tongues that neither increase knowledge, nor take man closer to the Almighty, nor his prayers achieve acceptance. It has been reported that:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ لَا يَسْتَجِيبُ دُعَاءَ بَظْهَرِ قَلْبٍ سَاهٍ؛
فَإِذَا دَعَوْتَ فَأَقْبِلْ بِقَلْبِكَ ثُمَّ اسْتَيْقِنْ بِالْإِجَابَةِ.

suspiciously gotten food. Withhold our hands from oppression and larceny. Turn our sights away from licentiousness and treachery. Block our hearings against vainness and backbiting. Bless our scholars with asceticism and good advice, our learners with hard work and desire (to learn), our listeners with following and learning (lessons), our Muslim patients with healing and comfort, our dead Muslims with forgiveness and mercy, our old ones with somberness and gentleness, our youths with turning (to You) and repentance, our women with shyness and chastity, our rich with modesty and generosity, our poor with patience and contentment, our warriors with triumph and primacy, our prisoners with release and comfort, our rulers with justice and sympathy, and our subjects with impartiality and good behavior. (Please do) Bless the pilgrims to Mecca and the visitors (to the tombs of the saints) with provision and expenditure. Help them settle the ‘ajj and ‘Umrah that You have made incumbent upon them. [Let this be] on account of Your grace and mercy; O the most Merciful of all those who show mercy.⁽¹⁾

Seizing this opportunity, I recommend my dear brethren, the readers, not to miss rehearsing these supplications, yet with full ponderation over their significances and objectives with presence of heart and devotion, and supplicate before Almighty Allah with reverence and submission. I also

⁽¹⁾ This supplication is reported from Imām al-Mahdī—may Allah hasten his advent. See *al-Balad al-Amṣn wa’l-Dir’ al-‘aṣṣn* by al-Kaf’amṣ (AH 900), pp. 480.

Almighty Allah will not respond to the prayer that is said while the heart is distracted; therefore, when you pray to Him, your heart must be present. Only then can you be sure of response.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:473; *Was'il al-Shah* by al-urr al-amil (AH 1104), 7:54, H.8702, Section: *bib isti'ib al-iqbil bi'l-qalb ilat al-du'i* (Recommendation of Heart Presence While Supplicating); *Makrim al-Akhlq* by al-abris (AH 548), pp. 270; *Uddat al-Di' wa-Najil al-Si'* by Ibn Fahad al-ill (AH 841), pp. 126; *Shar' Nahj al-Balighah* by Ibn Ab'l-ad al-Mu'tazil (AH 656), 11:229.

Imam Al Amr al-Mu'min (a) is reported to have said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ لَا يَسْتَجِيبُ دُعَاءَ قَلْبٍ لَاهٍ.

“Verily, Almighty Allah does not receive the supplication coming out of an inattentive heart.”

Reference: *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:437.

Imam Ja'far al-id (a) is also reported to have said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ لَا يَسْتَجِيبُ دُعَاءَ بَظْهَرِ قَلْبٍ قَاسٍ.

“Verily, Almighty Allah does not respond to the supplication coming out of a cruel heart.”

Reference: *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:474.

to his house, dejected and full of sorrow.⁽¹⁾ Nobody had the courage to visit him and he was unable to instruct people on what was obligatory upon them to do and most proper.

As a result, he had to resort to the style of supplicating which is, as has been already cited in this book, one of the finest educational courses of self-discipline. The Imim (`a) followed this style as a means of spreading the Qur'anic directives and the Ahl al-Bayt's method of education and to teach people the spirit of religiosity, asceticism, self-discipline and moral ethics.

periods prostrating himself before the Almighty Lord. [translator]

⁽¹⁾ He was such because he had witnessed the astounding tragedy of Karbali' during which the Umayyad ruler and his constabulary slew Imim al-°usayn ibn `Alç ('a), the delight of the Holy Prophet's eye and Master of the youth of Paradise, about whom the Holy Prophet (s) said:

حُسَيْنٌ مِنِّي وَأَنَا مِنْ حُسَيْنٍ.

“°usayn is part of me and I am part of °usayn.”

During that shocking event, Imim Zayn al-°abidçn's ('a) father, brothers, cousins, and their supporters were all slain. By Divine Care, Imim Zayn al-°abidçn ('a) survived that massacre because sickness had prevented him from participation in that military combat. However, he did not shun political combat against them and before the tyrant, Yazçd, while he was in captivity.

35

The Supplications of AL-°A|çFAH AL-SAJJIDIYYAH

AFTER THE TRAGIC battle of al-±aff⁽¹⁾ that took place at Karbali', and the Umayyad dynasty held the reins of leadership of the Muslim nation—overstepping all bounds in committing massacres, shedding the blood of the innocent, and despising all tenets of Islam—Imim `Alç ibn al-°usayn (`a), the Adornment of the Worshippers and the Master of the Prostrators,⁽²⁾ had no alternative but to confine himself

⁽¹⁾ According to Arabic-Arabic dictionaries, the word ‘\$aff’ stands for the Arab lands including the rural territories of Iraq. Exclusively, *al-±aff*, which refers to the banks of the River Euphrates, is a land in the outskirts of al-Kçfah on the outer way of the city. In this land, Imim al-°usayn ibn `Alç ('a) was slain. **Reference:** see *Mu`jam al-Buldjn* by Yiqçt al-°amawç (AH 626), 4:35.

⁽²⁾ These two titles are the most famous among the other titles of honor by which Imim `Alç ibn al-°usayn ('a) was known. The first, namely ‘The Adornment of the Worshippers (*Zayn al-°abidçn*) expresses the Imim's conspicuous worship, since he was regarded as a consummate exemplar of obedience to Almighty Allah. The second title, namely, The Master of the Prostrators (*Sayyid al-Sjjidçn*), refers to the custom of the Imim's prostrating himself to Almighty Allah, as he was well-known of spending very long

□

of the finest diction of the Arabic language. They are also considered the chief philosophical source of Divinity and Ethics.

Some of these supplications teach us how to glorify, venerate, praise and thank Almighty Allah.

Others teach us how to introspect by establishing a confidential conversation with Him, how to meditate by focusing on Him, and repent by devoting ourselves to Him.

Others clearly explain the significance of praying to Almighty Allah to shower His blessings upon His Prophet, Messengers and Saints.

Others teach us the meaning of kindness to parents.

Others classify one's duties toward parents, duties of fathers toward their sons, duties towards neighbors, duties toward relatives, duties toward Muslims in general, and duties of the rich towards the poor and vice versa.

Others call attention to what we should do when we are financially indebted to others, what we should do concerning our economic and financial affairs, how we should deal with our mates, friends, and people in general, and whom we should choose to serve us.

Others enumerate all traits of nobility of character; they act as a perfect course of ethics.

Others direct us how to face misfortunes and calamities patiently, and what to do in both sickness and health.

Others present the duties of Muslim armies and the duties of people toward them.

Striking all chords, these supplications deal with all topics necessitated by the instructions of the Holy Prophet and the

This was the method of dissemination that the Imim (`a) adopted to teach people their religion without arousing the suspicion of the ruling authorities who kept an eye on his activities, and not provide them with an opportunity to persecute him. The Imim (`a), therefore, composed many such supplications, some of which are in his famous *al-`a'ifah al-Sajjidiyyah*,⁽¹⁾ which is also called 'The Psalms of Islam or The Psalms of Mu'ammad's Household.'

In both style and significance, these supplications occupy the top position in the list of Arabic literature as well as comprise the noblest directions of Islam, the finest secrets of monotheism and Prophethood, and the most accurate method of teaching people the Holy Prophet's (ﷺ) high moral standards and the ethics of Islam.

Dealing with various topics of religious education, these supplications become a method of teaching the true religion and morality in the form of prayers, or prayers in the form of teaching the true religion and morality.

Coming after the Holy Qur'in and *Nahj al-Balighah*,⁽²⁾ the supplications of Imim `Alī ibn al-`usayn (`a) are composed

⁽¹⁾ The English version of this book is entitled "*al-`a'ifah al-Kamilah al-Sajjidiyyah*; the Psalms of Islam," translated by William C. Chitticks, and published by Ansariyan Publications. [translator]

⁽²⁾ *Nahj al-Balighah* [Peak of Eloquence] is a collection of sermons, epistles, and aphorisms of Imim `Alī ibn Abī ḥlib compiled by al-Shar'f al-Raz' (AH 406/AD 1015). (The English version of this fabulous book is entitled '*Peak of Eloquence*', translated by Sayyid `Alī Rezi (in AD 1971), and published by Ansariyan Publications – Qum, I.R.Iran. [translator])

meanings of 'the First' and 'the Last' being among the Attributes of the Almighty. There is also a reference to the Elevation of Almighty Allah as being incomprehensible by any sight or imagination. The significance of the powers of 'creation' and 'making' of the Lord is also visible in this passage.

In the sixth supplication of the book, we can read a different style of presenting Almighty Allah's absolute power and management of affairs:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي خَلَقَ اللَّيْلَ وَالنَّهَارَ بِقُوَّتِهِ، وَمَيَّرَ بَيْنَهُمَا
بِقُدْرَتِهِ، وَجَعَلَ لِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا حَدًّا مَحْدُودًا وَأَمَدًا
مَمْدُودًا. يُوَلِّجُ كُلَّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا فِي صَاحِبِهِ، وَيُوَلِّجُ
صَاحِبَهُ فِيهِ، بِتَقْدِيرٍ مِنْهُ لِلْعِبَادِ فِيمَا يَغْدُوهُمْ بِهِ
وَيُنْشِئُهُمْ عَلَيْهِ. فَخَلَقَ لَهُمُ اللَّيْلَ لِيَسْكُنُوا فِيهِ مِنْ
حَرَكَاتِ التَّعَبِ وَنَهَضَاتِ النَّصَبِ، وَجَعَلَهُ لِيَأْسًا
لِيَلْبَسُوا مِنْ رَاحَتِهِ وَمَنَامِهِ، فَيَكُونَ ذَلِكَ لَهُمْ جَمَامًا
وَقُوَّةً وَلِيَنَالُوا بِهِ لَدَّةً وَشَهْوَةً...

Muslim code of law. All these topics, and more, have been discussed in one style—the style of supplication.

However, the supplications of Imim `Alī ibn al-ʿusayn al-Sajjid (ʿa) possess some common features that are summarised below:

First: These supplications comprise a description of Almighty Allah and His grandeur and omnipotence over all things in addition to explaining His inseparable Oneness. The finest scientific expressions are used in these supplications to introduce the Almighty as too Exalted to allow us to imagine anything that is incompatible with His Holiness and Majesty. Indications to these topics are repeated in almost each supplication said by the Imim (ʿa), yet in a different way each time. For instance, in the first supplication of *al-`aḥḥah al-Sajjidiyyah*, we can read the following:

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الْأَوَّلِ بِلَا أَوَّلٍ كَانَ قَبْلَهُ، وَالْآخِرِ بِلَا آخِرٍ
يَكُونُ بَعْدَهُ؛ الَّذِي قَصُرَتْ عَنْ رُؤْيَيْتِهِ أَبْصَارُ
النَّاطِرِينَ، وَعَجَزَتْ عَنْ نَعْتِهِ أَوْهَامُ الْوَاصِفِينَ. ابْتَدَعَ
بِقُدْرَتِهِ الْخَلْقَ ابْتِدَاعًا، وَاخْتَرَهُمْ عَلَى مَشِيئَتِهِ
اخْتِرَاعًا.

All praise is due to Allah, the First before Whom no being preceded, and the Last after Whom there will be no other; Whom the eyes of those who see cannot perceive, and Whom our descriptive imaginations cannot envisage. With His Power, He brought Creation into being out of nothingness, and made His creatures totally subservient to His Will.

In this passage, there is a subtle explanation of the

affairs yield to Your power; means are made ready by Your gentleness; the decree goes into effect through Your power; and all things proceed according to Your desire. By Your desire, they follow Your command without Your word; and by Your will, they obey Your bans without Your prohibition...

Second: These supplications comprise presentations of Almighty Allah's incessant favors on His servants and His servants' inability to thank Him for these favors no matter what great extents the servants can reach in worship, obedience, and devotion to Him. Let us read the following passage quoted from the thirty-seventh supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّ أَحَدًا لَا يَبْلُغُ مِنْ شُكْرِكَ غَايَةَ إِلَّا حَصَلَ عَلَيْهِ
مِنْ إِحْسَانِكَ مَا يُلْزِمُهُ شُكْرًا، وَلَا يَبْلُغُ مَبْلَغًا مِنْ
طَاعَتِكَ وَإِنْ اجْتَهَدَ إِلَّا كَانَ مُقْصِرًا دُونَ اسْتِحْقَاقِكَ
بِفَضْلِكَ، فَأَشْكُرُ عِبَادِكَ عَاجِزٌ عَنْ شُكْرِكَ، وَأَعْبُدُهُمْ
لَكَ مُقْصِرٌ عَنْ طَاعَتِكَ...

O Allah: No one reaches a limit in thanking You without acquiring that of Your beneficence, which enjoins upon him thanksgiving, nor does anyone reach a degree in obeying You, even if he strives, without falling short of what You deserve because of Your bounty. The most thankful of Your servants does not have the capacity to thank You, and the most worshipful of them falls short of obeying You.

Praise belongs to Allah Who created night and day through His strength, set them apart through His power, and appointed for each a determined limit and a drawn-out period. He makes each of the two enter into its companion, and makes its companion enter into it, as an ordainment from Him for His servants in that through which He feeds them and with which He makes them grow. He created for them the night that they might rest in it from tiring movements and wearisome exertions. And He made it a garment for them that they might be clothed in its ease and its sleep that it might bring for them refreshment and strength that they might gain therein pleasure and passion...

In this supplication, the Imim (`a) continues to mention the advantages of day and night and how man is required to thank the Lord for this grace.

In the seventh supplication of this book, we view another style through which the Imim (`a) demonstrates that all affairs are subservient to Almighty Allah:

يَا مَنْ نُحِلُّ بِهِ عَقْدُ الْمَكَارِهِ، وَيَا مَنْ يُقْتَأُ بِهِ حَدُّ
الشَّدَائِدِ، وَيَا مَنْ يُلْتَمَسُ مِنْهُ الْمَخْرَجُ إِلَى رَوْحِ
الْفَرَجِ، ذَلَّتْ لِقُدْرَتِكَ الصَّعَابُ، وَتَسَبَّيْتُ بِلُطْفِكَ
الْأَسْبَابُ، وَجَرَى بِقُدْرَتِكَ الْقَضَاءُ، وَمَضَتْ عَلَى
إِرَادَتِكَ الْأَشْيَاءُ، فَهِيَ بِمَشِيَّتِكَ دُونَ قَوْلِكَ مُؤْتَمِرَةٌ،
وَبِإِرَادَتِكَ دُونَ نَهْيِكَ مُنْزَجِرَةٌ...

O He through whom the knots of detested things are untied! O He through whom the cutting edge of hardships is blunted! O He from whom is begged the outlet to the freshness of relief! Intractable

favors that He confers upon His servants for we deserve His punishment on account of the least act of disobedience that we commit audaciously, and Almighty Allah has thorough evidence of it.

As a matter of fact, all the supplications of *al-`aḥḥah al-Sajjidiyyah* constantly strike on this effective chord so as to convey to the souls the necessity of fearing the punishment of Almighty Allah and desiring His reward. Through a variety of eloquent styles that seep into the hearts of those who read them attentively, these supplications make them fear even thinking of committing an act of disobedience to Almighty Allah. For instance, let us review the following passage quoted from the forty-sixth supplication:

حُجَّتْكَ قَائِمَةٌ لَا تُدْحَضُ، وَسُلْطَانُكَ ثَابِتٌ لَا يَزُولُ.
فَالْوَيْلُ الدَّائِمُ لِمَنْ جَنَحَ عَنْكَ، وَالْخَبِيَّةُ الْخَاذِلَةُ لِمَنْ
خَابَ مِنْكَ، وَالشَّقَاءُ الْأَشَقَى لِمَنْ اغْتَرَّ بِكَ. مَا أَكْثَرَ
تَصَرُّفُهُ فِي عَذَابِكَ! وَمَا أَطْوَلَ تَرُدُّدَهُ فِي عِقَابِكَ! وَمَا
أَبْعَدَ غَايَتُهُ مِنَ الْفَرَجِ! وَمَا أَفْنَطَهُ مِنْ سُهُولَةِ
الْمَخْرَجِ! عَذْلًا مِنْ قَضَائِكَ لَا تَجُورُ فِيهِ، وَإِنْصَافًا
مِنْ حُكْمِكَ لَا تَحِيفُ عَلَيْهِ. فَقَدْ ظَاهَرَتْ الْحُجَجُ،
وَأَبْلَيْتِ الْأَعْدَارَ...

Your argument is established, never refuted. Your authority fixed, never removed. Permanent woe be to him who inclines away from You. Forsaking disappointment be to him who is disappointed by You, and the most wretched wretchedness be to him who is deluded about You! How long he will move about in Your chastisement! How long he will frequent Your punishment! How far his utmost end from relief is! How he will despair of an easy exit!

Because Almighty Allah's graces and favors that He endows upon His creatures are endless, man fails to thank Him duly. Naturally, the case will be worse with those who dare to disobey Him. Hence, whatever such disobedient persons do after that, they will never be able to make amends for even a single act of disobedience to Him that they have committed. The following passage, quoted from the sixteenth supplication, refers to this fact:

يَا إِلَهِي! لَوْ بَكَيْتُ إِلَيْكَ حَتَّى تَسْقُطَ أَشْفَارُ عَيْنَيَّ،
وَأَنْتَحَبْتُ حَتَّى يَنْقَطِعَ صَوْتِي، وَفُتُّ لَكَ حَتَّى تَنْتَشِرَ
قَدَمَايَ، وَرَكَعْتُ لَكَ حَتَّى يَخْلَعَ صَلْبِي، وَسَجَدْتُ لَكَ
حَتَّى تَنْفَقَأَ حَدَقَتَايَ، وَأَكَلْتُ تُرَابَ الْأَرْضِ طَوْلَ
عُمْرِي، وَشَرَبْتُ مَاءَ الرَّمَادِ آخِرَ دَهْرِي، وَذَكَرْتُكَ
فِي خِلَالِ ذَلِكَ حَتَّى يَكِلَ لِسَانِي، ثُمَّ لَمْ أَرْفَعْ طَرْفِي
إِلَى آفَاقِ السَّمَاءِ اسْتِحْيَاءً مِنْكَ، مَا اسْتَوْجَبْتُ بِذَلِكَ
مَحْوَ سَيِّئَةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ مِنْ سَيِّئَاتِي!

My God: If I weep before You until my eyelids drop off, wail until my voice wears out, stand before You until my feet swell up, bow to You until my backbone is thrown out of joint, prostrate myself before You until my eyeballs fall out, eat the dirt of the earth for the rest of my life, drink the water of ashes until the end of my days, mention You through all of that until my tongue fails, and not lift my glance to the sky's horizons in shame before You, yet would I not merit through all of that the erasing of a single one of my evil deeds!

Third: Explaining Divine Reward and Punishment and introducing Paradise and Hellfire, these supplications denote that the entire reward of Almighty Allah is in fact one of His

عَلَى ظُلْمِهَا نَفْسِي، وَوَكَّلْ رَحْمَتَكَ بِاحْتِمَالِ إِصْرِي.

If You recompense me with the right, You will destroy me; and if You do not shield me in Your mercy, You will lay me waste. O Allah, my God: I ask You to grant me that whose giving will not decrease You, and I ask You to carry (on behalf of me) that whose carrying will not weigh You down. My God, I ask You to pardon my soul, which You did not create to keep Yourself from evil nor to find the way to profit. No, You brought it forth to demonstrate Your power over (making) its like and to provide an argument against its matches. I ask You to carry those of my sins whose carrying weighs me down and I seek help from You in that whose heaviness oppresses me. So, (please) bless Muḥammad and his Household; and pardon my soul in spite of its wrongdoing, and appoint Your mercy to carry my burden!

Fourth: Through these supplications, the Imim (`a) intended to make the supplicants disdain evil and vices so that their inner selves become pure and their hearts free from filth. The following passage, quoted from the twentieth supplication, is a good example:

اللَّهُمَّ وَقِّرْ بِلُطْفِكَ نَبِيَّتِي، وَصَحِّحْ بِمَا عِنْدَكَ يَقِينِي،
وَاسْتَصْلِحْ بِقُدْرَتِكَ مَا فَسَدَ مِنِّي... اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى
مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِهِ، وَمَتَّعْنِي بِهُدَى صَالِحٍ لَا أَسْتَبْدِلُ بِهِ،
وَطَرِيقَةٍ حَقٍّ لَا أَزِيغُ عَنْهَا، وَنَبِيَّةٍ رُشِدٍ لَا أَشْكُ
فِيهَا... اللَّهُمَّ لَا تَدْعُ خَصْلَةَ نَعَابٍ مِنِّي إِلَّا أَصْلَحْتُهَا،
وَلَا عَائِبَةً أَوْتُبُ بِهَا إِلَّا حَسَّنْتُهَا، وَلَا أَكْرُومَةً فِيَّ
نَاقِصَةً إِلَّا أَمَمْتُهَا...

[All of this] as justice from Your decree (You are not unjust in it!), and equity from Your judgment (You do not act wrongfully against him!). You supported the arguments, tested the excuses...

Another example is the following passage quoted from the thirty-first supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ فَارْحَمْ وَحْدَتِي بَيْنَ يَدَيْكَ، وَوَحِّبْ قَلْبِي مِنْ
خَشْيَتِكَ، وَاضْطَرِّبْ أَرْكَانِي مِنْ هَيْبَتِكَ، فَقَدْ أَقَامَتْنِي
يَا رَبِّ دُنُوبِي مَقَامَ الْخِزْيِ بِفَنَائِكَ، فَإِنْ سَكَتُ لَمْ
يَنْطِقْ عَنِّي أَحَدٌ، وَإِنْ شَفَعْتُ فَلَسْتُ بِأَهْلٍ الشَّفَاعَةِ.

O Allah: so, (please) have mercy upon my being alone before You, the pounding of my heart in dread of You, the trembling of my limbs in awe of You! My sins, O my God, have caused me to stand in the station of degradation in Your courtyard. If I remain silent, none will speak for me; and if I seek an intercessor, I will not be worthy of intercession.

Another example is quoted from the thirty-ninth supplication:

فَإِنَّكَ إِنْ تُكَافِنِي بِالْحَقِّ تُهْلِكْنِي، وَإِلَّا تَغْمَدْنِي بِرَحْمَتِكَ
تُوبِقْنِي. اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْتَوْهِبُكَ يَا إِلَهِي مَا لَا يَنْفُصُكَ
بَدَلُهُ، وَأَسْتَخْمُكَ مَا لَا يَبْهَظُكَ حَمْلُهُ، أَسْتَوْهِبُكَ يَا
إِلَهِي نَفْسِي الَّتِي لَمْ تَخْلُقْهَا لِتَمْتَنِعَ بِهَا مِنْ سُوءٍ، أَوْ
لِتَطْرُقَ بِهَا إِلَى نَفْعٍ، وَلَكِنْ أَنْشَأْتَهَا إِبْتَاءً لِقُدْرَتِكَ عَلَى
مِثْلِهَا، وَاحْتِجَاجاً بِهَا عَلَى شَكْلِهَا. وَأَسْتَخْمُكَ مِنْ
دُنُوبِي مَا قَدْ بَهَظَنِي حَمْلُهُ، وَأَسْتَعِينُ بِكَ عَلَى مَا قَدْ
فَدَحَنِي ثِقْلُهُ. فَصَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِهِ، وَهَبْ لِنَفْسِي

A similar suggestion is present in the following passage, quoted from the twenty-eighth supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَخْلَصْتُ بِإِقْطَاعِي إِلَيْكَ، وَأَقْبَلْتُ بِكُلِّي
عَلَيْكَ، وَصَرَفْتُ وَجْهِي عَمَّنْ يَحْتَاجُ إِلَى رَفْدِكَ،
وَقَلْبْتُ مَسْأَلَتِي عَمَّنْ لَمْ يَسْتَعِنْ عَنْ فَضْلِكَ، وَرَأَيْتُ
أَنْ طَلَبَ الْمُحْتَاجُ إِلَى الْمُحْتَاجِ سَفَهًا مِنْ رَأْيِهِ وَضَلَّةً
مِنْ عَقْلِهِ.

O Allah: I showed sincerity by cutting myself off from everything but You. I approached You with my whole self. I averted my face from everyone who needs Your support. I ceased to ask from any who cannot do without Your bounty. I see that the needy who seeks from the needy is foolish in his opinion, and misguided in his intellect.

O Allah: Complete my intention through Your gentleness, rectify my certainty through what is with You, and set right what is corrupt in me through Your power... O Allah: Bless Muḥammad and his Household, give me to enjoy a sound guidance which I seek not to replace, a path of truth from which I swerve not, and an intention of right conduct in which I have no doubts... O Allah: Deposit in me no quality for which I will be faulted unless You set it right, no flaw for which I will be blamed unless You make it beautiful, and no deficient noble trait unless You complete it!

Fifth: Through these supplications, the Imim (‘a) suggests to the supplicants that it is necessary to disdain begging people and showing humility to them. He (‘a) also suggests that one must not provide one’s need before anyone except Almighty Allah, since to desire what people possess is one of the lowliest traits of character. An example of these suggestions can be read in the following passage, quoted from the twentieth supplication:

وَلَا تَقْتِنِّي بِالِاسْتِعَانَةِ بِغَيْرِكَ إِذَا اضْطَرَرْتُ، وَلَا
بِالْخُضُوعِ لِسُؤَالِ غَيْرِكَ إِذَا افْتَقَرْتُ، وَلَا بِالتَّضَرُّعِ
إِلَى مَنْ دُونِكَ إِذَا رَهَبْتُ، فَأَسْتَحِقَّ بِذَلِكَ خِذْلَانَكَ
وَمَنْعَكَ وَإِعْرَاضَكَ.

(Please) Tempt me not to seek help from other than You when I am distressed, to humble myself in asking from someone else when I am poor, or to plead with someone less than You when I fear, for then I would deserve Your abandonment, Your withholding, and Your turning away.

wronged in my presence whom I did not help, a favor conferred upon me for which I returned no thanks, an evildoer who asked pardon from me and whom I did not pardon, a needy who asked from me and whom I preferred not over myself, a right of a believer who possesses a right incumbent upon me which I did not fulfill, a fault of a believer which became evident to me and which I did not conceal.

This means of apology is one of the most excellent styles that calls attention to the high Divine morals enjoyed by the servants of Almighty Allah.

Moreover, the following passage, quoted from the thirty-ninth supplication, teaches us the necessity to pardon those who mistreat us, warns us against thinking of revenge, and elevates our souls to the position of holy individuals:

اللَّهُمَّ وَأَيُّمَا عَبْدٍ نَالَ مِنِّي مَا حَظَرْتَ عَلَيْهِ وَإِنْتَهَكَ مِنِّي مَا حَبَرْتَ عَلَيْهِ فَمَضَى بِظِلَامَتِي مَيِّتًا أَوْ حَصَلَتْ لِي قَبْلُهُ حَيًّا فَاعْفُ لَهُ مَا أَلَمَ بِهِ مِنِّي وَاعْفُ لَهُ عَمَّا أَدْبَرَ بِهِ عَنِّي وَلَا تَقْفُ عَلَى مَا ارْتَكَبَ فِيَّ وَلَا تَكْشِفْهُ عَمَّا اكْتَسَبَ بِي وَاجْعَلْ مَا سَمَحْتُ بِهِ مِنَ الْعَفْوِ عَنْهُمْ وَتَبَرَّعْتُ بِهِ مِنَ الصَّدَقَةِ عَلَيْهِمْ أَرْكَى صَدَقَاتِ الْمُتَصَدِّقِينَ وَأَعْلَى صِلَاتِ الْمُتَقَرِّبِينَ وَعَوِّضْنِي مِنْ عَفْوِي عَنْهُمْ عَفْوَكَ وَمِنْ دُعَائِي لَهُمْ رَحْمَتَكَ حَتَّى يَسْعَدَ كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ مِنَّا بِفَضْلِكَ.

O Allah: If any of Your servants should harm me in what You have forbidden, or violate me in what You have interdicted; and if he should pass into death with my complaint or I come to have a complaint against him while he is alive, (please)

Another similar suggestion can also be read in the following passage, quoted from the thirteenth supplication:

فَمَنْ حَاوَلَ سَدَّ خَلَّتِهِ مِنْ عِنْدِكَ، وَرَامَ صَرْفَ الْفَقْرِ عَنْ نَفْسِهِ بِكَ، فَقَدْ طَلَبَ حَاجَّتَهُ فِي مَطَانِّهَا، وَأَتَى طَلِبَتَهُ مِنْ وَجْهِهَا. وَمَنْ تَوَجَّهَ بِحَاجَّتِهِ إِلَى أَحَدٍ مِنْ خَلْقِكَ، أَوْ جَعَلَهُ سَبَبَ نُجْحِهَا دُونَكَ، فَقَدْ تَعَرَّضَ لِلْحِرْمَانِ، وَاسْتَحَقَّ مِنْ عِنْدِكَ قَوْتَ الْإِحْسَانِ.

So, he who strives to remedy his lack through what is with You and wishes to turn poverty away from himself through You has sought his need in the most likely place and come with his request to the right quarter. He who turns in his need towards one of Your creatures or assigns the cause of its being granted to other than You has exposed himself to deprivation and deserves to miss Your beneficence.

Sixth: These supplications teach people that it is obligatory upon them to respect the rights of each other, help each other, and treat each other with terms of compassion, sympathy, and altruism so as to put into practice the meaning of fraternity of Islam. Such teachings can be read in the following passage, quoted from the thirty-eighth supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَعْتَذِرُ إِلَيْكَ مِنْ مَظْلُومٍ ظَلِمَ بِحَضْرَتِي فَلَمْ أَنْصُرْهُ، وَمِنْ مَعْرُوفٍ أَسَدَيْ إِلَيَّ فَلَمْ أَشْكُرْهُ، وَمِنْ مُسِيءٍ أَعْتَذَرَ إِلَيَّ فَلَمْ أَعْذِرْهُ، وَمِنْ ذِي فَاقَةٍ سَأَلَنِي فَلَمْ أُؤْتِرْهُ، وَمِنْ حَقٍّ ذِي حَقٍّ لَزَمَنِي لِمُؤْمِنٍ فَلَمْ أُوقِرْهُ وَمِنْ عَيْبٍ مُؤْمِنٍ ظَهَرَ لِي فَلَمْ أُسْئِرْهُ.

O Allah: I ask pardon from You for a person

forgive him what he did to me and pardon him that through which he turned his back on me! Inquire not from him about what he committed toward me and expose him not through what he earned by me! And (please) make my open-handedness in pardoning such servants and my contribution in charity toward them the purest charity of the charitable and the highest gift of those seeking nearness to You! Recompense me for my pardoning them with Your pardon and for my supplicating for them with Your mercy so that each one of us may gain felicity through Your bounty.

The last paragraph of this passage is the most brilliant of all. It has an outstanding impact on those characterized by virtuousness, because it emphasises the necessity of bearing sound intentions toward all people and wishing happiness to everybody, including those who wrong or misbehave with us.

The supplications of *al-ʿaḥḥ al-Sajjidiyyah* are full of such Divine directives that contribute greatly to self-discipline, if only people take hold of them.

shrines, and sacrifice everything for them willingly and faithfully.⁽¹⁾

All these practices are carried out by the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* in compliance with the recommendations of the Holy Imims (`a) who urged their followers to visit these tombs and awakened their desire for the great reward of Almighty Allah that is won when such visits are made. Such practices are amongst those acts of obedience that draw one near Almighty Allah after the obligatory acts of worship. Moreover, these tombs are the best places wherein prayers are answered and pure devotion to Almighty Allah is achieved.

The Holy Imims (`a) have also stated that visiting these shrines accomplishes the fulfillment of our covenants with them. In this regard, Imim al-Riḥi (`a) is reported to have said:

Anas ibn Mīlik. Ibn ʿabbīn has included Sam`īn with the trustworthy narrators. Al-Nassīḡ has described him as ‘there is no objection found against him.’ See *al-Durrah al-Thamḡnah fī Faḡḡil al-Madḡnah* by Ibn al-Najjīr, pp. 144.

⁽¹⁾ See *ʿukm al-Binī' `Alī al-Qubḡr* (Rulings of Building on Graves) by `Abd al-Karḡm al-Bahbahīnḡ (contemporary), Qum: Researches and Refutal of Spurious Arguments Committee in The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422; *al-Binī' `Alī Qubḡr al-Anbiyī' wa'l-Awliyī' wa-Ittikḡdhuhī Masjīda wa-Amjīkina li'l-`Ibīdah* (Building on the Graves of the Prophets and the Saints and Betaking Them As Mosques and Places of Worship) by Murtaḡī al-`Askarḡ (Book No. 8 in the series of *`alī mī'idat al-qur'īn wa'l-sunnah* –On the Table of the Qur'īn and Sunnah--), Tehran: Islamic Scientific Assembly, First Edition, AH 1417.

36

PILGRIMAGE TO THE HOLY SHRINES

ONE OF THE PRACTICES that distinguish the *Imimiyyah Shc`ah* from the other Muslim sects is that they tend to visit the shrines⁽¹⁾ of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and the Holy Imims (`a) on a regular basis,⁽²⁾ build handsome structures on these

⁽¹⁾ For more details about this topic, the reader is advised to refer to the following book: *Ziyrat al-Qubḡr* by `Abd al-Raḡm al-Mḡsawḡ (contemporary), Qum: Researches and Refutal of Spurious Arguments Committee in The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422.

⁽²⁾ Many narrations and traditions have been reported by both Shc`ite and Sunni reporters on the merits of visiting the tomb of the Holy Prophet (s) as well as the tombs of the saints and people of faith. For instance, Anas ibn Mīlik reported the Holy Prophet (s) as saying:

مَنْ زَارَنِي مَيِّتًا فَكَأَنَّمَا زَارَنِي حَيًّا. وَمَنْ زَارَ قَبْرِي وَجَبَتْ لَهُ شَفَاعَتِي يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ. وَمَا مِنْ أَحَدٍ مِنْ أُمَّتِي لَهُ سَعَةٌ ثُمَّ لَمْ يَزُرْنِي، فَلَيْسَ لَهُ عُدْرٌ.

“Visiting my tomb after my death is the same as visiting me during my lifetime. He who visits my tomb will definitely deserve my intercession (shafī`ah) on the Day of Resurrection. Not excused is an individual of my nation who shuns visiting my tomb while having the capacity to do so.”

This *ḡadḡth* is reported by Sam`īn ibn al-Mahdḡ on the authority of

□

- 2) It arouses the pictures of the Holy Imims' (`a) exploits, morality and struggle for truth.
- 3) During the congregational seasons of visits, the scattered groups of Muslims gather in the same place to know each other and exchange views.
- 4) It fixes in hearts the spirits of submission to Almighty Allah, devotion to Him, and compliance with His commands.

FORMS OF ZIYIRAH

Through the eloquent statements—reported from and recommended by the Holy Imims (`a)—stated during visits and known as *ziyirah*, the pilgrims learn the reality of monotheism, the true sacredness of Islam and the Holy Prophet's Mission. They also learn their duties of abiding by high morality, submitting to the Maker of all creatures, and appreciating His bounties and favors. At this point, the visits to the holy shrines undertake the same function performed by supplications discussed in the previous chapter.

Some of these forms of *ziyirah*, in fact, hold remarkable supplications, such as the *ziyirat amḥnillih*,⁽¹⁾ a form of

⁽¹⁾ Let us quote here selections from this famous *ziyirah*:

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا أَمِينَ اللَّهِ فِي أَرْضِهِ وَحُجَّتَهُ عَلَى عِبَادِهِ. السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكَ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ. أَشْهَدُ أَنَّكَ جَاهَدْتَ فِي اللَّهِ حَقَّ جِهَادِهِ وَعَمِلْتَ بِكِتَابِهِ... اللَّهُمَّ فَاجْعَلْ نَفْسِي مُطْمَئِنَّةً بِقُدْرَتِكَ، رَاضِيَةً بِقَضَائِكَ، مُوَلَّعةً بِذِكْرِكَ وَدَعَائِكَ، مُحِبَّةً لِمَصْفُوعَةِ أَوْلِيَائِكَ، مَحْبُوبَةً فِي أَرْضِكَ وَسَمَائِكَ، صَابِرَةً عَلَى نُزُولِ بَلَائِكَ، شَاكِرَةً لِقَوَائِلِكَ نِعْمَائِكَ، ذَاكِرَةً لِسَوَابِغِ آيَاتِكَ، مُسْتَنَاقَةً إِلَى فَرْحَةِ لِقَائِكَ، مُتَزَوِّدَةً التَّقْوَى لِيَوْمِ جَزَائِكَ... اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّ قُلُوبَ الْمُخْبِتِينَ إِلَيْكَ وَالْهَمَّةُ، وَسُبُلُ الرَّاعِبِينَ إِلَيْكَ شَارِعَةٌ، وَأَعْلَامُ الْقَاصِدِينَ إِلَيْكَ وَاصِحَةٌ...



إِنَّ لِكُلِّ إِمَامٍ عَهْدًا فِي عُنُقِ أَوْلِيَائِهِ وَشَيْعَتِهِ، وَإِنَّ مِنْ تَمَامِ الْوَقَاءِ بِالْعَهْدِ وَحُسْنِ الْأَدَاءِ زِيَارَةَ قُبُورِهِمْ. فَمَنْ زَارَهُمْ رَغْبَةً فِي زِيَارَتِهِمْ وَتَصَدِّيقًا بِمَا رَغَبُوا فِيهِ كَانَ أَيْمَنَهُمْ شَفَعَاءَهُمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ.

The disciples and followers of every Imim (`a) are connected to him with a binding covenant that they must fulfill. Among the items of an excellent fulfillment of these covenants is indeed the visiting of the Imims' tombs. Hence, if one visits their tombs willingly and with the intention of accomplishing their desire, the Imims will intercede for him on the Day of Resurrection.⁽¹⁾

Besides, visiting the Holy Shrines brings about a good number of religious and social advantages—a fact that has made our Imims take such great interest in the matter. Some of these advantages are as follows:

- 1) Visiting the Holy Shrines strengthens the bond of loyalty and love for the Holy Imims (`a) in their followers.

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kijf* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 4:567, Section: *bjb masjid ghadqr Khumm*, H. 2; *Kjmil al-Ziyjrit* by Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qumm (AH 368), pp. 237, H.352; *Man Lj Yaḥḍurh l-Faqḥ* by Shaykh al-ʿadq (AH 381), 2:577, H.3160; *Uyḥn Akhbjr al-Riḍj* by Shaykh al-ʿadq (AH 381), 1:292, H. 24, Section: *bjb fḥ dhikr thawjb ziyjrat al-imjm `alḥ ibn mḥsj al-riḍj* (The Rewards of Visiting Imjm `Alḥ ibn Mḥsj al-Riḍj).

of supporting the right and elevating the influence of religion over all other influences.

They also demonstrate the Holy Imims' (`a) dedicating themselves to obeying Almighty Allah.

In lucid Arabic diction and easy-to-understand statements, these forms of *ziyirah* contain an excellent expression of monotheism, supplication, and invocation to Almighty Allah.

In addition to the Holy Qur'in, *Nahj al-Balighah*, and the supplications reported from the Holy Imims (`a), these forms of *ziyirah* are reckoned among the most sublime religious literature, because they hold an extract of the Holy Imims' knowledge in faith and self-discipline.

The visiting of these holy shrines, recommended by the Holy Imims (`a), holds teachings and true guidance that call for the attainment of the supreme goals of religion, such as spiritual progress of Muslims, development of the spirit of mutual sympathy among different classes of the Muslim community and encouraging amicable association, polite behavior, and social intercourse. This discipline includes practices before entering the Holy Shrines as well as others during the visit and after it.

ETIQUETTES OF VISITING THE HOLY SHRINES

Teachings derived from the etiquettes of visiting the holy shrines are the following:

1) A pilgrim to the holy shrines must bathe and cleanse himself from impurities before beginning the visit. The advantage of this instruction is obvious. Man cleanses himself from dirt in order to avoid many sicknesses and

prayer that Imim `Alc ibn al-°usayn (`a) is reported to have made during his visit to the tomb of his grandfather, Imim `Alc ibn Abc-±ilib (`a).⁽¹⁾

These forms of *ziyirah* present a clear-cut depiction of the situations and sacrifices of the Holy Imims (`a) for the sake

“Peace be on you, O trusted guardian, appointed by Allah, to administer His earth and to maintain His argument against His creatures. Peace be on you, O Commander of Believers. I testify that you made utmost efforts, as needed, in the cause of Allah, and acted upon His Book... O Allah: let me be happy and satisfied with what You consider good for me, let me agree with what You decide for me, let me passionately remember You, and invoke You. Fill my heart with love for Your pure and sincere servants. Let me be well-liked and respected on the earth, and in the heavens, let me be unruffled and well-composed in the midst of misfortunes, let me be gratefully thankful in prosperity, let me be mindful of much and more bounties, let me ardently desire the heart warming meeting with You... O Allah: verily, the hearts of those who surrender to You are full of passionate love; the path of those who long for You is the straight road, the instructions given by those who lean on You are distinct and precise...”

⁽¹⁾ See *Kimil al-Ziyirat* by Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qumm¢ (AH 368), pp. 92, H.1, Section No. 11; *al-Mazir al-Kab¢r* by Ibn al-Mashhad¢ (AH 610), pp. 282, Section: *al-ziyirah al-mukhta¥ah bi-yawm al-ghad¢r* (The Ziyirah Dedicated to the Ghad¢r Day); *Iqbil al-A`mil* by Ibn ±aw£s (AH 664), pp. 786, Chapter: *fc ziyirat al-am¢r yawma al-ghad¢r* (Ziyirah of Am¢r al-Mu`min¢n on the Ghad¢r Day); *al-Balad al-Am¢n wa'l-Dir` al-°a¥¢n* by al-Kafam¢ (AH 900), pp. 416; *Was'il al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-`amil¢ (AH 1104), 14:359, H.19451.

2) A pilgrim to the holy shrines is advised to put on his cleanest clothes. A pleasant appearance during general gatherings brings about mutual amicability, makes people approachable, enhances a sense of honor, and highlights the significance of these gatherings.

It is noteworthy that the Holy Imims (`a) have not imposed distinguished or attractive clothes; rather, they have recommended putting the best clothes one may have, because not all people can have distinguished or attractive clothes, lest the poor are embarrassed. Thus, this teaching pays due regard to the condition of the poor.

3) It is good to put on perfume if possible. The advantage of this teaching is similar to the above.

4) When possible, a pilgrim should give alms to the poor. It is well known that almsgiving during such seasons of pilgrimage help the needy and amplify the spirit of sympathy among the pilgrims.

5) A pilgrim of the holy shrines is recommended to proceed towards these shrines with tranquility and gravity, casting his eyes down. Of course, such acts demonstrate that the

Kimil al-Ziyjrit by Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qumm (AH 368), pp. 345, H.583, Section: *bjb man ighatasala fcl'furjt wa-zjra al-usayn* (Washing Oneself In The Euphrates and Visiting al-usayn ('a)).

However, the author of this book has reported this supplication with a little difference from this reference book as well as other reference books. There is a less different version of the same supplication recorded by Shaykh al-±sç (AH 460) in his book of *Tahdhçb al-A\kim*, 6:45, Section: *bjb faql al-ghusl li'l-ziyjarah* (Merits of Washing Oneself Before Visiting the Holy Shrines).

diseases, save people from stinks,⁽¹⁾ and purify himself from vices.

The sublime goals of this practice as reported (from the Holy Infallibles) are that a pilgrim, after bathing himself, is advised to repeat the following supplication:

اللَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْ لِي نُوراً وَطَهُوراً، وَحِرْزاً كَافِياً مِنْ كُلِّ دَاءٍ وَسَقَمٍ، وَمِنْ كُلِّ آفَةٍ وَعَآهَةٍ، وَطَهْرٍ بِه قَلْبِي وَجَوَارِحِي، وَعَظَامِي وَلَحْمِي وَدَمِي، وَشَعْرِي وَبَشَرِي وَمُخِّي وَعَظْمِي، وَمَا أَقَلَّتِ الْأَرْضُ مَنِّي، وَاجْعَلْ لِي شَهِيداً يَوْمَ حَاجَتِي، وَفَقْرِي وَفَاقَتِي.

O Allah! (Please) grant me light and purity, and a protective shield against all maladies and sicknesses, and against all epidemics and defects. (Please do) purify my heart, my organs, my bones, my flesh, my blood, my hair, my skin, my brain, my marrow, and all my parts that stand on the earth. (Please do) provide me with a witness on the day when I will be poor, needy, and deprived.⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ Imim `Alç Amçr al-Mu'minçn ('a) is reported to have said:

تَنَظَّفُوا بِالمَاءِ وَتَعَهَّدُوا أَنْفُسَكُمْ، فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَبْغِضُ مَنْ عِبَادِهِ الْقَادُورَةَ الَّذِي يَتَأَفَّفُ بِهِ مَنْ جَلَسَ إِلَيْهِ.

Remove bad odors with water and keep your bodies clean, because Almighty Allah hates His servants to be dirty and give off bad odor that nauseates their associates.

Reference: *Tu\af al-Uql* by Ibn Shu`bah al-°arrinç (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp.110.

⁽²⁾ This supplication is reported from Imim Ja`far al-`idq ('a). See

O Allah! To You alone have I prayed, to You alone have I bowed down, and to You alone have I prostrated myself. You are the One and Only God Who has no partner. This is because all prayers, bowing down, and prostration must be offered to none save You, since You are Allah, there is no god save You. O Allah! Bless Muḥammad and his Household; and accept my pilgrimage and respond to my requests in the name of Muḥammad (ﷺ) and his Immaculate Household (ʿa).⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Mazjir* by al-Shahīd al-Awwal (AH 786), pp. 50; *Biḥjir al-Anwār* by al-Majlis (AH 1111), 97:288; *Manṣik al-Mazjir* by Shaykh al-Mufīd (AH 413), pp. 211, Section: *biḥjir al-zj'ir ʿan akhḥi taṣawwuʿan* (Voluntary Utterance of A Pilgrim On Behalf Of A Brother-In-Faith); *al-Mazjir* by Ibn al-Mashhad (AH 610), pp. 597, Section No. 2: *mj yaqflu al-zj'ir ʿan ghayriḥ bi'l-ajri wa mj yaqflu ʿan akhḥi taṣawwuʿan* (Utterances of A Pilgrim On Behalf Of Others For A Wage, And On Behalf Of One's Brother-In-Faith Voluntarily).

pilgrims respect the visited places, pay reverence to the visited persons, and direct and devote themselves to Almighty Allah. Besides, these acts help in avoiding trampling other pilgrims and annoying them.

6) A pilgrim is recommended to repeat the statement, '*allihu-akbar* (Allah is the Most High)' as many times as possible. In certain forms of *ziyirah*, this statement should be repeated one hundred times. The advantage of this rite is to make the pilgrims feel the supremacy of Almighty Allah and to learn with certainty that there is nothing higher than Him, since pilgrimage to the holy shrines is no more than a sort of worshipping, glorifying, and exalting the Almighty Lord through activating these rites and supporting His religion.

7) After accomplishing the rites of the visit, a pilgrim is recommended to offer a two-unit (i.e. *rak'ah*) prayer, at least, voluntarily, in order to worship and thank Almighty Allah for the accomplishment of the visit. A pilgrim then asks the Lord to accept his offering of that prayer and to consider its reward as a gift from the pilgrim to the visited person (i.e. the Prophet or Imim).

The supplication recited after the visit to a holy shrine, reveals that the pilgrim's prayers and acts are directed to Almighty Allah alone other than Who none is worth worshipping and that the pilgrimage is but a sort of seeking nearness to Him:

اللَّهُمَّ لَكَ صَلَّيْتُ، وَلَكَ رَكَعْتُ، وَلَكَ سَجَدْتُ، وَحَدَاكَ
لَا شَرِيكَ لَكَ، لِأَنَّهُ لَا تَكُونُ الصَّلَاةُ وَالرُّكُوعُ
وَالسُّجُودُ إِلَّا لَكَ، لِأَنَّكَ أَنْتَ اللَّهُ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا أَنْتَ. اللَّهُمَّ
صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ، وَتَقَبَّلْ مِنِّي زِيَارَتِي،
وَأَعْظِنِي سُؤْلِي بِمُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِ مُحَمَّدٍ وَإِلَى الطَّاهِرِينَ.

Let us not forget to refer to the main purpose of visiting the holy shrines, which is to greet the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and the Holy Imims (`a), because they are alive and are provided with sustenance from their Lord.⁽¹⁾ They can hear the words addressed to them and respond to them. Although it is sufficient to address them with simple statements like, 'Peace be upon you,' it is more proper to repeat the statements reported from them by the pilgrims of their holy shrines (i.e. the *ziyirah*), because they are full of impressive meanings and religious advantages, in addition to their eloquence and articulation. These forms of *ziyirah* are superb prayers through which one can get closer to Almighty Allah.

⁽¹⁾ This is an indication to the following holy verse:

↔!3# ∪Ξ□∈6ψ□□∈┘ (#θ\=≠Φ\% τ┘|| ≠%♥!3# ♦┘τ┘|τ┘/τρB □ωυρ
 (O∈γ∈ν/υ□ψ□Ψ≠⊙{™!3υ□|μρ&)≡τ/ 4 3O?♦υθ/Bρ&

∩⊃≠⊗∪ τβθ(%ψ□)□⊙□

*And reckon not those who are killed in Allah's way as dead;
 nay, they are alive (and) are provided sustenance from their
 Lord. (3/169)*

This piece of literature is fully indicative of the actual purposes of the Holy Imims (`a) and their followers behind visiting the holy shrines. It also proves the fallacy of those who claim that the Shç`ah visit the holy shrines as a form of worship by seeking nearness to them and setting up partners to Almighty Allah.

Such false notions attempt to lessen the social-religious advantages of these gatherings but fail miserably. They have become thorns in the eyes of the enemies of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a), because it is improbable that they are ignorant of the purposes of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) behind such collective visits.

Far be it from the Holy Imims (`a)—who have worshipped Almighty Allah faithfully and sincerely, devoted themselves to obeying Him, and sacrificed everything, including their lives, for His religion—to call people to set up partners with Him.

8) A pilgrim's conduct and behaviour must be most proper while on a visit. For eg., he should speak as little as possible, except in affairs that benefit Islam, mention Almighty Allah constantly, show reverence, offer prayers very often, pray to the Lord to shower His blessings upon Muḥammad and his Household. He should keep his gaze lowered, hurry in helping and lending a hand to those who are in need, and abstain from entering upon disputatious conversations, committing any forbidden act, swearing, and engaging in arguments that require taking oaths.

truthfulness, honesty, piety, and godliness. Confirming this fact, Imim Muḥammad al-Biqir (`a) says:

يَا خَيِّثَمَةُ! أَبْلِغْ مَوَالِينَا أَنَّهُ لَا تُغْنِي عَنْهُمْ مِنَ اللَّهِ شَيْئًا
إِلَّا بِعَمَلٍ، وَأَنَّهُمْ لَنْ يَنَالُوا وَلَا يَتَنَّا إِلَّا بِالْوَرَعِ، وَإِنْ
أَشَدَّ النَّاسِ حَسْرَةً يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ مَنْ وَصَفَ عَدْلًا ثُمَّ
خَالَفَهُ إِلَى غَيْرِهِ.

O Khaythamah! Inform our adherents that we can be of no avail to them against Almighty Allah unless they themselves offer (righteous) actions. They shall not win our admission of their loyalty to us except by means of piety. Verily, the most regretful on the Day of Resurrection will be one who instructs righteousness but does not act in accordance with it.⁽¹⁾

Because they believe that practical propagation is more effective than verbal, the Holy Imims (`a) desire and expect their followers to act as heralds of truth and guides of decency and orthodoxy. Hence, Imim al-`idīq (`a) instructs his followers, saying:

كُونُوا دُعَاةً لِلنَّاسِ بِالْخَيْرِ بِغَيْرِ أَلْسِنَتِكُمْ لِيَرَوْا مِنْكُمْ
الْإِجْتِهَادَ وَالصِّدْقَ وَالْوَرَعَ.

⁽¹⁾ This is Imim Muḥammad al-Biqir's communiqué to his followers. See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:176. The same tradition has been recorded in other reference books but with little difference, such as in *Muḥḥidaqat al-Ikhwān* by Shaykh al-`adīq (AH 381), pp. 34; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 12:7, H.15501; *al-ikjyit* by Shaykh al-Mufc (AH 413), pp. 92; *Mustaḥrafit al-Sarj'ir* by Ibn Idris al-`ill (AH 598), pp. 625-626.

37

THE MEANING OF SHC`ISM ACCORDING TO THE AHL AL-BAYT

THE HOLY IM^aMS of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a), after they knew that they would not hold the (political) leadership of the Muslim nation, dedicated their lives to disciplining and educating Muslims the way Almighty Allah wanted. They exerted all their efforts to teach their followers, in whom they confided their secrets, all the items of the religious laws as well as the knowledge of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) and their rights and obligations.

The Holy Imims (`a), clearly defined a follower (i.e. Shc`ite) as only he who obeys the commands of Almighty Allah, forsakes personal whims and caprices, and accepts and adheres to their (i.e. the Imims) directives and teachings. Love for the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) is not sufficient to win salvation and deliverance from one's duties toward Almighty Allah. It is a false notion that is chiefly adopted by those who hide themselves under coverings of serenity and lust and shun obedience to Almighty Allah under the pretense that their love for the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) would liberate them from religious responsibilities. On the contrary, the Holy Imims (`a) do not consider one's love for and loyalty to them as achievement of one's duties toward the Lord unless such love and loyalty are firmly supported with righteous acts and noble traits of character like

بِالطَّاعَةِ، وَمَا مَعَنَا بَرَاءَةٌ مِنَ النَّارِ، وَلَا عَلَى اللَّهِ
لأَحَدٍ مِنْ حُجَّةٍ. مَنْ كَانَ لِلَّهِ مُطِيعًا فَهُوَ لَنَا وَلِيٌّ، وَمَنْ
كَانَ لِلَّهِ عَاصِيًا فَهُوَ لَنَا عَدُوٌّ. وَمَا ثَنَالُ وَلَا يَتْنَا إِلَّا
بِالْعَمَلِ وَالْوَرَعِ.

“O Jibir! How come that it is sufficient to declare love for us—the Ahl al-Bayt—in order to be a Shc`ite? I swear by Allah that our true Shc`ah (followers) are none but those who fear and obey Allah. Their distinctive features are exclusive modesty, devoutness, fulfillment of trusts, constant reference to Almighty Allah, (much) observance of fasting, (much) offering of prayers, kindness to their parents, caring for the poor, the needy, the indebted, and the orphans from among their neighbors, truthfulness, (repeated) recitation of the Holy Qur`an, and holding their tongues except for uttering good. Moreover, they are always the most trustworthy of the members of their clans for keeping things.

So, (I recommend you to) fear Almighty Allah and work for winning that which He holds. None has kinship with Almighty Allah (due to which he may be favored); rather, the most favorite to Him among His servants are the most pious and the most abiding in obedience to Him.

O Jibir! I swear by Almighty Allah that we seek nearness to Him through no means other than obedience to Him. We do not have patents of release from Hellfire. Nobody has a pretext against Almighty Allah. He who is obedient to Almighty Allah is our follower while he who is disobedient to

Act as heralds to goodness among people by means other than your tongues so that they can feel your perseverance, honesty, and piety.⁽¹⁾

Let us now cite a number of instructive conversations of the Holy Imims (`a) with their followers to emphasize their concern about their refined moral behavior among the public: Imim al-Biqir's (`a) conversation with Jibir al-Ju`f

يَا جَابِرُ! أَيَكْتَفِي مَنْ يَتَّحِلُ التَّشْيِعَ أَنْ يَقُولَ بِحُبِّنَا أَهْلَ
النَّبِيِّتِ؟ فَوَاللَّهِ مَا شِيعَتُنَا إِلَّا مَنْ اتَّقَى اللَّهَ وَأَطَاعَهُ. وَمَا
كَانُوا يُعْرِفُونَ إِلَّا بِالتَّوَاضُّعِ وَالتَّخَشُّعِ، وَالْأَمَانَةِ،
وَكَثْرَةِ ذِكْرِ اللَّهِ، وَالصَّوْمِ، وَالصَّلَاةِ، وَالْبِرِّ بِالْوَالِدَيْنِ،
وَالْعَاهِدِ لِلْجِيرَانِ مِنَ الْفُقَرَاءِ وَأَهْلِ الْمَسْكَنَةِ
وَالْغَارِمِينَ وَالْأَيْتَامِ، وَصِدْقِ الْحَدِيثِ، وَتِلَاوَةِ الْقُرْآنِ،
وَكَفِّ الْأَلْسُنِ عَنِ النَّاسِ إِلَّا مِنْ خَيْرٍ. وَكَانُوا أَمَنَاءَ
عَشَائِرِهِمْ فِي الْأَشْيَاءِ.
فَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَأَعْمَلُوا لِمَا عِنْدَ اللَّهِ. لَيْسَ بَيْنَ اللَّهِ وَبَيْنَ أَحَدٍ
قَرَابَةٌ. أَحَبُّ الْعِبَادِ إِلَى اللَّهِ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ أَثْقَاهُمْ وَأَعْمَلُهُمْ
بِطَاعَتِهِ.
يَا جَابِرُ! وَاللَّهِ مَا نَتَقَرَّبُ إِلَى اللَّهِ تَبَارَكَ وَتَعَالَى إِلَّا

⁽¹⁾ This statement is one of Imim Ja`far al-`idq's (`a) instructions to his followers. See *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:105, H. 10, Section: *bjb al-ʿidq wa-adj' al-amjnah* (Honesty and Fulfillment of Trusts). A similar tradition is mentioned in 2:77, 78, 105; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 12:162, H.15955, Section: *bjb wujlb al-ʿidq* (Obligation of Honesty); *Mishkjt al-Anwjr f Ghurar al-Akhhjr* by al-abis (the seventh century of Hijrah), pp. 30.

Al-Kinīnç: Great is the extent of harassment we are suffering from people because of you!

The Imīm: What kind of harassment are you encountering from people?

Al-Kinīnç: Whenever we dispute with someone, he immediately gibes at us, saying, ‘You are a malicious Ja`farite! (i.e. following Ja`far ibn Mu`ammad; Imīm al-`īdiq)’”

The Imīm: So, people are gibing at you because of me!

Al-Kinīnç: Yes, they are.

The Imīm: By Allah I swear; too few are those who follow ‘Ja`far’ among you! My followers are only those who show intense piety, dedicate their deeds to their Creator, and desire for His rewards. These are exclusively my followers.⁽¹⁾

Aphorisms of Imīm al-`īdiq:

In this regard, Imīm al-`īdiq (`a) stated many words of truth and wisdom, some of which are cited here:

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifç* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 2:77, Section: *bjb al-wara`* (Piety), H.6. The last paragraph of the tradition in which Imīm al-`īdiq (`a) mentions the qualities of his real followers are recorded in *al-Kifç* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 2:236, Section: *bjb al-mu`min`aljm; tuh£ wa ¥if; tuh£* (Features and Qualities of Believers), H.23; *Shar£ al-Akhhbr* by al-Qiçç al-Nu`mīn al-Maghribç (AH 363), 3:503, H.1445; *Ikhtiyir Ma`rifat al-Rijl* by Shaykh al-£sç (AH 460), 2:525; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 15:244, H.20398.

Him is our enemy. Admission to our loyalty can only be attained by means of good work and piety.

Imīm al-Biqir's Conversation with Sa`çd ibn al-°asan

The following conversation took place between Imīm al-Biqir (`a) and Sa`çd ibn al-°asan, one of his disciples:

The Imīm: Does it happen that one of you comes to his brother-in-faith and extends his hand to his pocket to take only as much as he needs, but the other does not push him back?

Sa`çd: I have not noticed such a thing among us.

The Imīm: Then, you are nothing. (i.e. you own nothing of Shc`ism)

Sa`çd: This means that we are exposed to perdition!

The Imīm: These people have not been endowed with (judicious) reasons yet.⁽¹⁾

Imīm al-`īdiq's Conversation with Ab£'l-`abb; al-Kinīnç

The following conversation took place between Imīm al-`īdiq (`a) and Ab£'l-`abb; al-Kinīnç:

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifç* by al-Kulaynç (AH 329), 2:174. A similar tradition is mentioned in *Kitjb al-Mu`min* by al-Kffç al-Ahwizç (before AH 300), pp. 44 (The English version of this book is entitled ‘*Kitjb al-Mu`min: The Book of the Believer*’; Qum: Ansariyan Publications, 2002); *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 5:120, H. 6090 & 9:428, H.12406.

خُدُورَهِنَّ. وَلَيْسَ مِنْ أَوْلِيَانِنَا مَنْ هُوَ فِي قَرْيَةٍ فِيهَا
عَشْرَةُ آلَافٍ رَجُلٍ فِيهِمْ خَلَقَ اللَّهُ أَوْرَعَ مِنْهُ.

He is not one of our Shc`ah (followers) about whose piety women secluding themselves to their private rooms do not talk. He is not one of our disciples who lives in a town in which ten thousand men live but there is somebody more pious than him living there.⁽¹⁾

إِنَّمَا شِيعَةُ جَعْفَرٍ مَنْ عَفَّ بَطْنَهُ وَقَرَجَهُ، وَاسْتَدَّ جِهَادُهُ
وَعَمَلَ لِخَالِقِهِ وَرَجَا ثَوَابَهُ وَخَافَ عِقَابَهُ. فَإِذَا رَأَيْتَ
أُولَئِكَ فَأُولَئِكَ شِيعَةُ جَعْفَرٍ.

The real Shc`ah of Ja`far (i.e. Imjm al-`idq) are exclusively those who chastely avoid the (unlawful) pleasures of stomachs and private parts, those who strive excessively (to attain Almighty Allah's pleasure), and those who dedicate all their efforts to their Creator, hoping for His reward and fearing His punishment. If you see one enjoying these features, then (be it known to you that) he is one of the Shc`ah of Ja`far.⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:79, Section: *bjb al-wara`* (Piety), H.15; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 15:246, H.204040, Section: *bjb wujlb al-wara`* (Obligation of Piety).

⁽²⁾ See *al-Khiyl* by Shaykh al-`adfq (AH 381), pp. 295-296, Section: *bjb al-khamsah: khamsun mj athqalahunna fc'l-mczjn* (The Five Weightiest Things In the Divine Scale), H.63; *ifjt al-Shc`ah* by Shaykh al-`adfq (AH 381), pp. 11; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 15:251, H.20425, Section: *bjb wujlb al-iffah* (Obligation of Chastity), H.13.

Imjm al-`idq ('a) is reported to have said, "The Shc`ah of `Alc are those who practice chastity as regards their stomachs... etc."

□

لَيْسَ مِيًّا، وَلَا كَرَامَةً، مَنْ كَانَ فِي مِصْرٍ فِيهِ مِائَةُ
أَلْفٍ أَوْ يَزِيدُونَ وَكَانَ فِي ذَلِكَ الْمِصْرِ أَحَدٌ أَوْرَعُ
مِنْهُ.

If one who claims following us lives in a country with a population of one hundred thousand or more but there is somebody in that country more pious than he is, then he is definitely not among our followers.⁽¹⁾

إِنَّا لَا نَعُدُّ الرَّجُلَ مُؤْمِنًا حَتَّى يَكُونَ لِحَمِيعِ أَمْرِنَا مُتَّبِعًا
وَمُرِيدًا. أَلَا وَإِنْ مِنْ أَتْبَاعِ أَمْرِنَا وَأَرَادَتْهُ الْوَرَعُ،
فَتَزَيَّنُوا بِهِ، رَحِمَكُمُ اللَّهُ.

We do not count one to be among the believers unless one willingly obeys all our commandments. Indeed, one of the features of obeying our commandments willingly is piety. Therefore, adorn yourselves with piety; may Allah have mercy upon you.⁽²⁾

لَيْسَ مِنْ شِيعَتِنَا مَنْ لَا تَتَحَدَّثُ الْمُخَدَّرَاتُ بِوَرَعِهِ فِي

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:78, Section: *bjb al-wara`* (Piety), H.10. A similar tradition is mentioned in *Shar' al-Akhhjr* by al-Qi al-Nu`mjn al-Maghrib (AH 363), 3:501, H.1437; *Mustašrafjt al-Sari'ir* by Ibn Idris al-`ill (AH 598), pp. 639; *Mishkjt al-Anwjr fc' Ghurar al-Akhhjr* by al-`abris (the seventh century of Hijrah), pp. 138.

⁽²⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:78, Section: *bjb al-wara`* (Piety), H.13; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 15:243, H.20391, Section: *bjb wujlb al-wara`* (Obligation of Piety), H.1; *Alfu` adqthin fc'l-Mu'min* by al-Najaf (contemporary), pp. 261, H.786.

See *al-Kiḥḥ* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 2:233, Section: *bīb al-mu'min `alimītuḥ wa ḥifītuḥ* (Features and Qualities of Believers), H.9; *Wasī'il al-Shī'ah* by al-urr al-`amīlī (AH 1104), 1:86, H.204, Section: *bīb ta'akkud isti'bīb al-jidd wa 'l-ijtihād fī 'l-`ibādah* (Confirmation on the Recommendation of Hardwork and Painstakingness in Worship), H.7; *Mishkāt al-Anwār fī Ghurar al-Akḥbār* by al-`abrisī (the seventh century of Hijrah), pp. 119.

To identify a true Shī'ite and loyalist of the Ahl al-Bayt ('a), the reader is advised to see *al-Kiḥḥ* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), Section: *bīb al-mu'min `alimītuḥ wa ḥifītuḥ* (Features and Qualities of Believers), H.1 in which Imām `Alī Amīr al-Mu'minīn ('a) mentions about one hundred features of true believers.

snatching one grain of barley from an ant I would not do it.

This states the utmost of what man may imagine in the field of abstinence from wrongdoing.

Imim `Alç (`a) would never wrong an ant by snatching even the skin of one grain of barely from it even if he would be given the seven continents. This is the situation with Imim `Alç (`a); how would it be with those who shed the blood of Muslims carelessly, usurp the properties of people and desecrate their honor and dignity? Who can compare those who commit such heinous crimes with Imim `Alç (`a)? What chance do they have? Indeed, the Imim (`a) has described the essence of Divine morality that religion wants human beings to abide by.

Wrongdoing is prohibited in the law of Almighty Allah; therefore, warning against it, condemning it, and emphasis on its forbiddance have occupied a leading position in the traditions and supplications of the Ahi al-Bayt (`a). Such has been their policy; and such has been their conduct even with those who transgressed against them and dared to challenge their position.

For example, the story of Imim al-°asan (`a) with a Syrian is wellknown. This story shows the Imim's forbearance with a man who attacked his dignity and railed at him; nevertheless, the Imim (`a) treated him with kindness and sympathy until the ignorant man realized his fault.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ Al-Mubarrad and Ibn `a'ishah narrated the following:

A Syrian man went on reviling Imim al-°asan ('a) who was riding an animal. The Imim ('a) kept silent until the Syrian man finished.

□

38

OPPRESSION AND INJUSTICE

FOLLOWING the Holy Qur'in, the Holy Imims (`a) have considered transgression against others and wronging people to be among the gravest sins man may commit. As for the Holy Qur'in, it has condemned oppression and deemed it one of the most appalling sins:

©≡ψθ ||τ□ ∃≤θτ© ÷ξ≠□≈ξ | ♥!∃# □ |τ||Υ |σσ? □ωυρ

5Θ\θυ□≠9 \N\δ©□ | φξξσ©□ ∃ψθ↓P∈) 4 □χθ↓θ≠≈♥∂9∃#

η≤ζυ ©□≈|∫\|Φ{∃# ≠μ□≠ | ↓↓υψ□ | ±v≡

Deem not that Allah is heedless of what the iniquitous do; He is only deferring them to a day when eyes shall stare. (14/42)

Likewise, Imim `Alç Amçr al-Mu'minçn (`a), the most veracious, has described the atrocity and revulsion of wronging people in such astounding terms:

وَاللّٰهُ، لَوْ أُعْطِيَتْ الْأَقَالِيْمَ السَّبْعَةَ بِمَا تَحْتَ أَفْلَاحِهَا
عَلَى أَنْ أُعْصِيَ اللّٰهُ فِي نَمْلَةٍ أَسْلُبَهَا حِلْبَ شَعِيرَةٍ مَا
فَعَلْتُ.

By Allah, even if I am given all the domains of the seven (stars) with all that exists under the skies in order that I may disobey Allah to the extent of

permissibility is something quite different from pardon, which is one of the qualities of nobility of character.

Moreover, exaggeration in invoking Almighty Allah's punishment on wrongdoers may be considered an act of injustice, in the view of the Holy Imims ('a). Expressing this view, Imim al-`idq ('a) is reported to have said:

إِنَّ الْعَبْدَ لَيَكُونُ مَظْلُومًا، فَمَا يَزَالُ يَدْعُو حَتَّى يَكُونَ ظَالِمًا.

Verily, a servant (of Almighty Allah) may be oppressed; but he may become oppressor due to excessive invocation of evil upon those who oppressed him.⁽¹⁾

To explain, an oppressed person may exceed the proper bounds of invoking Almighty Allah against the one who oppressed him, thus changing into an oppressor.

How sublime this is! Even an oppressed person's invocation against the oppressor can be a sort of oppression when it exceeds the just limits! What will, then, be the condition of those who instigate oppression and iniquity, act aggressively against people, attack their reputations, plunder their property, denounce them before the unjust ruling authorities, deceive them so as to involve them in perils, defame them, hurt them, or spy on them? What a place can such transgressors find in the wisdom of the Holy Imims ('a)?

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kif* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 2:334, Section: *bāb al-`ulm* (Injustice), H.17; *Thawāb al-A`māl wa `Iqāb al-A`māl* by Shaykh al-`adq (AH 381), pp. 274. A similar tradition is mentioned in *Makrīm al-Akhlāq* by al-`abrisī (AH 548), pp. 332.

We have already cited passages of Imim Zayn al-`ābidīn's ('a) supplications in which he used a supremely appropriate diction to express how to pardon those who wrong us and ask Almighty Allah's forgiveness for them. This is in fact the utmost height of perfection one can attain.

However, according to the laws of Islam, it is permissible to inflict injury on those who act aggressively against us, yet in exactly the same way they inflicted injury on us.

Likewise, to invoke Almighty Allah's punishment against those who wrong us is also permissible. Even so,

He then approached him and said, with a smile: "Old man! I think you are a foreigner. You might be wrong. If you admonish us, we will pardon your ignorance. If you ask us for something, we will give it to you. If you seek our guidance, we will lead you. If you ask us to load something on your riding animal, we will assist you. If you are hungry, we will supply you with food. If you are naked, we will clothe you. If you are needy, we will satisfy your need. If you are a fugitive, we will provide for you. I now request you to drive your animal towards our residence so that you can be our guest until you decide to leave. This will be better for you. We have a large residence, a remarkable position, and an abundant fortune."

As he heard the words of the Imīm ('a), the Syrian man wept and said, "It is surely true that Allah knows best who is the worthiest to convey His message. Previously, your father and you were the most hated creatures of God for me. But now, you are the dearest."

He then turned towards the residence of the Imīm and was his guest until he left, filled with awe and affection for the Ahl al-Bayt ('a).

Reference: *Manāqib al-Abī-ḥalīb* by Ibn Shahr ḥshb (AH 588), 3:184. The same story, yet with little difference in words, is cited in *Kashf al-Ghummah* by al-Arbalī (AH 693), 2:184.

Truly, such persons are the farthest from Almighty Allah, the most sinful and the most deserving of the most horrible punishment from Him.

even by offering them half a date.⁽¹⁾

Indisputably, the gravest misfortune that has beset Islam and Muslims is their lack of firmness in dealing with oppressors, their connivance with them, their taking action in their matters not to mention siding with them and furthering their oppressive acts.

This deviation from the right path is the basic reason that is responsible for the misfortunes that have befallen the Muslim community and weakened the religion of Islam to the extent that it was in the beginning of its advent. Day

⁽¹⁾ See *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-`amilc (AH 1104), 17:177, Section: *bjb ma`£nat al-`jlimc£n walaw bi-maddati qalam wa-£alab m; f£ aydc£him min al-`ulm* (Assistance of the Oppressors Even By Extending A Pen To Them And Desiring For Their Oppression); *Mustadrak al-Wasj'il* by al-N£rc£ al-±abrisc (AH 1320), 13:122; *al-Kjfc* by al-Kulaync (AH 329), 5:108, Section: *bjb `amal al-sul£jn wa-jawj'izuhum* (Working With The Rulers And Receiving Their Rewards).

The Holy Prophet (s) is also reported to have said:

مَنْ تَوَلَّى خُصُومَةَ ظَالِمٍ أَوْ أَعَانَ عَلَيْهَا ثُمَّ نَزَلَ بِهِ مَلَكُ الْمَوْتِ،
قَالَ لَهُ: أَبَشِّرْ بِلَعْنَةِ اللَّهِ وَنَارِ جَهَنَّمَ، وَيَسَّ الْمَصِيرُ.

“As for those who hold positions in an unjust government or assist its members, the Angel of Death will receive them with the following words: ‘Ahead of you is Allah’s curse and Hellfire: a hapless journey’s end!’”

مَنْ دَلَّ جَائِرًا عَلَى جَوْرٍ كَانَ قَرِينًا هَامَانًا فِي جَهَنَّمَ.

“He who guides an oppressor towards an act of injustice shall be the companion of Hjmjn (Pharaoh’s assistant) in Hellfire.”

Reference: *al-Amjlc* by Shaykh al-`ad£q (AH 381), pp. 513.

39

COOPERATION WITH OPPRESSORS

OPPRESSION is the most dangerous of all deeds and the worst in consequence; therefore, Almighty Allah has warned us against all sorts of oppression including cooperation with oppressors and inclination towards them. He has thus stated:

(#0↓9v=σ↓ τ|| ≠%♥!£# □v<ε) (#↓θ©Z£.)□σ? □ωυρ
 υβρ↓□ ¯ειB N∅6σ9 ∃τBυρ @□□♦Ψ9£# ©N™3ΥΥψ9τΓσ]
 □χρ©□|∩Z\? □ω'O\O υ™!£υ□≠9 |pp& | ¯εB ↔!£#

∩∩∩∩

And do not incline towards those who are unjust, lest the fire touches you, and you have no guardians besides Allah, then you shall not be helped.
 (11/113)

This is the directive of the Holy Qur'in from which the Holy Imims of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) have derived all their directives. They are reported to have used the most expressive words in making people realize the hideousness of inclination towards oppressors, connecting with them, taking part in any of their deeds, and cooperating with them

As the unjust ones invite you, they make you the axis of the hand-mill of their wrongdoings, the bridge on which they cross to the misfortunes they cause, and the stairs to their deviation. You become the propagandist of their temptation when you take their courses. They have employed you as the means through which they arouse doubts against the scholars and attract the ignorant. The best one in their government and the most powerful of them could not have achieved the success that you have attained for them by presenting their corrupt affairs as honest and attracting the attention of the celebrities as well as the ordinary people towards yourself. As for what they have given you, you will find it too little. Likewise, they have built for you very trivial things while they have ruined your great things. Look within yourself, for no one will look within you except you yourself, and judge yourself impartially, as if you are the criminal.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *Tu'af al-Uq'l* by Ibn Shu`bah al-°arrin° (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 275-276; *Bi'ir al-Anw'r* by al-Majlis° (AH 1111), 75:132-133, H. 2, Section: *bib wa'iyi 'al° ibn al-usayn wa mawj 'i'uh° wa 'ikamuh°* (Instructions, Sermons, and Aphorisms of 'Al° ibn al-°usayn); *Man Lj Ya'uruh°l-Faq°h* by Shaykh al-ad°q (AH 381), 4:483.

after day, those claiming being Muslims lost Divine support and became worthless in the eyes of both their powerful and weakest opponents, such as the contemptible Jews, and the powerful Crusaders.

Making every effort, the Holy Imims (`a) tried to drive their followers away from cooperating with oppressive rulers and exerted pressure on their disciples to abandon supporting and helping the wrongdoers and tyrannical authorities. As confirmed by innumerable traditions, the Holy Imims (`a) concentrated on banning any sort of cooperation with transgressors. For instance, Imim Zayn al-°abid°n (`a) is reported to have written the following epistle to Mu'ammad ibn Muslim al-Zuhr°, warning him against helping the unjust authorities in furthering their wrongdoing:

أَوَلَيْسَ بِدُعَائِهِمْ إِيَّاكَ حِينَ دَعَوْكَ جَعَلُوكَ قُطْبًا أَدَارُوا
بِكَ رُحَى مَظَالِمِهِمْ، وَحَسْرًا يَغْبُرُونَ عَلَيْكَ إِلَى
بَلَايَاهُمْ، وَسَلَّمًا إِلَى ضَلَالَتِهِمْ، دَاعِيًا إِلَى غِيَّهِمْ، سَالِكًا
سَبِيلَهُمْ؟ يُدْخِلُونَ بِكَ الشَّكَّ عَلَى الْعُلَمَاءِ، وَيَقْتَادُونَ بِكَ
قُلُوبَ الْجُهَالِ إِلَيْهِمْ. فَلَمْ يَبْلُغْ أَحْصُ وَزَرَائِهِمْ وَلَا
أَقْوَى أَعْوَانِهِمْ إِلَّا دُونَ مَا بَلَغْتَ مِنْ إِصْلَاحِ فَسَادِهِمْ
وَإِخْتِلَافِ الْخَاصَّةِ وَالْعَامَّةِ إِلَيْهِمْ. فَمَا أَقَلَّ مَا أَعْطَوكَ
فِي قَدَرٍ مَا أَخَذُوا مِنْكَ! وَمَا أَيْسَرَ مَا عَمَرُوا لَكَ!
فَكَيْفَ مَا خَرَبُوا عَلَيْكَ؟ فَانْظُرْ لِنَفْسِكَ، فَإِنَّهُ لَا يَنْظُرُ
لَهَا غَيْرُكَ. وَحَاسِبِهَا حِسَابَ رَجُلٍ مَسْنُولٍ.

Explaining my situation, I said, "I swear by Allah that I have never hired him a camel to be used for luxurious, reckless, funny, or hunting purposes. Rather, I have hired out camels for him so that he would use it as riding animals on his way to Makkah. Moreover, I do not take charge of the camels myself; rather, I employ some of my servants to do so."

The Imim (`a) asked, "Do they (i.e. the ruling authorities) pay you for this hiring?"

"Yes, they do," answered I.

The Imim (`a) further asked, "Do you wish that they would survive until they keep paying you?"

"Yes, I do," answered I.

The Imim (`a) stated:

فَمَنْ أَحَبَّ بَقَاءَهُمْ فَهُوَ مِنْهُمْ، وَمَنْ كَانَ مِنْهُمْ (فَهُوَ)
كَانَ وَرَدَ النَّارِ.

"Then, he who wishes survival for them is definitely one of them; and he who belongs to them will definitely be in Hellfire."

Immediately after that, I sold all my camels.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *Man Lj Ya'uruh l-Faqh* by Shaykh al-`adfiq (AH 381), 4:436; *Ikhtiyar Ma'rifat al-Rijl* (also called *Rijl al-Kashsh*) by al-`asf (AH 460), 2:740; *Was'il al-Shu`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 17:182, H.22305.

How expressive the last sentence is! When man is overcome by personal whims, he sees himself in the depths of his inner self as a hollow being that is unworthy of honor. In plain words, man finds himself responsible for his deeds, looks down upon any act that he commits, and believes that he is too ignoble to offer any excuse for what he has committed.

The Imim (`a) intended to draw al-Zuhrf's attention to this interior consequence, which secretly destroys human beings that are prone to evil, so that he would not be deceived by any illusions, and ignore his responsibility towards himself.

The following instructive conversation between Imim M'isi al-Ki'im (`a) and `afwin al-Jammil, one of the trustworthy disciples and reporters of the Imim's traditions, depicts the forbiddance of cooperation with unjust authorities:

Writing the life of `afwin al-Jammil, al-Kashsh records the following narration:

`afwin said: One day, while I was paying a visit to Imim al-Ki'im (`a), he said to me, "`afwin: all your manners are acceptable and right except one thing."

"May Allah accept me as ransom for you!⁽¹⁾ What is that?" I wondered and asked.

The Imim (`a) answered, "It is that you hire camels for this man. (i.e. Hjr'n, the ruler)"

⁽¹⁾ This statement, the translation of 'ju`iltu fidjka', was usually said in the presence of the Holy Imims ('a) to express loyalty to them. I thus pray to Almighty Allah to grant us the opportunity to address the Imim of our age, al-Mahd (may Allah hasten his advent) with this statement. [translator]

Merely *wishing* survival for tyrannical rulers lands one in hellfire. What then will be the future of those who dedicate themselves to helping the tyrannical rulers proceed in their wrongdoings, those who support them in their acts of transgression, those who engage themselves in their groups, those who imitate them in their oppressive acts, those who go along with their processions, and those who comply with their orders?

of Hijrah), pp. 332, under the title: *tafsir ma`ni al-wilayit* (Explanation of Work in Governmental Offices), Imim al-`idiq's ('a) words, from which the aforementioned paragraph is quoted, are as follows:

وَأَمَّا وَجْهُ الْحَرَامِ مِنَ الْوَلَايَةِ: فَوَلَايَةُ الْوَالِي الْجَائِرِ وَوَلَايَةُ وَلَاتِهِ؛ الرَّئِيسِ مِنْهُمْ، وَأَتْبَاعُ الْوَالِي فَمَنْ دُونَهُ مِنْ وَلَاةِ الْوَلَاةِ إِلَى أَذْنَاهُمْ بَابًا مِنْ أَبْوَابِ الْوَلَايَةِ عَلَى مَنْ هُوَ وَالٍ عَلَيْهِ وَالْعَمَلُ لَهُمْ وَالْكَسْبُ مَعَهُمْ بِجَهَةِ الْوَلَايَةِ لَهُمْ حَرَامٌ وَمُحَرَّمٌ، مُعَذِّبٌ مَنْ فَعَلَ ذَلِكَ عَلَى قَلِيلٍ مِنْ فِعْلِهِ أَوْ كَثِيرٍ، لِأَنَّ كُلَّ شَيْءٍ مِنْ جَهَةِ الْمَعُونَةِ مَعْصِيَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ مِنَ الْكِبَائِرِ، وَذَلِكَ أَنَّ فِي وَلَايَةِ الْوَالِي الْجَائِرِ دُرُوسَ الْحَقِّ كُلِّهِ وَإِحْيَاءَ الْبَاطِلِ كُلِّهِ وَإِظْهَارَ الظُّلْمِ وَالْجَوْرِ وَالْفَسَادِ وَإِبْطَالَ الْكُتُبِ وَقَتْلَ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ وَالْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَهَدْمَ الْمَسَاجِدِ وَتَبْدِيلَ سُنَّةِ اللَّهِ وَسَرَائِعِهِ. فَلِذَلِكَ حُرِّمَ الْعَمَلُ مَعَهُمْ وَمَعُونَتُهُمْ وَالْكَسْبُ مَعَهُمْ إِلَّا بِجَهَةِ الضَّرُورَةِ نَظِيرَ الضَّرُورَةِ إِلَى الدَّمِ وَالْمَيْتَةِ.

To hold an office with the despotic ruler or with his deputy and his assistants beginning with the chief down to the novice, and to work with them and gain earnings from them are prohibited and illegal; and those who hold such office, be it chief or minor, will suffer punishment. Every act that is seen as support for the unjust rulers is an act of disobedience (to Almighty Allah) and a grand sin, because to hold an office in the government of despotic rulers wholly eradicates the right and wholly enlivens the wrong. It also spreads injustice, oppression, and corruption, breaks the laws of the Divine Books, kills the prophets and believers, destroys mosques, and distorts God's norms and principles. For that reason, it is prohibited to work with them, support them, and seek earnings from them except in cases of necessity that are similar to the necessity of having blood or meat of corpses.

In *Bi`ir al-Anwār* by al-Majlis (AH 1111), 100:45, Section: *bi jawami` al-makhsib al-mu`arramah wa'l-mu`allalah* (General

□

40

HOLDING OFFICES IN DESPOTIC GOVERNMENTS

THE HOLY IM^aMS have intensely warned against cooperating with oppressive rulers even by handing them over half a date or hoping for their survival; therefore, the situation will definitely be worse with those who participate with them in ruling and hold offices in their despotic governments. Moreover, the matter will be much worse for those who have a hand in laying the foundations of such despotic governments, play a major role in activating their authorities, and plunge into fortifying their power. Giving reasons for such prohibition, Imim al-`idiq ('a) is reported to have said:

...وَذَلِكَ أَنَّ فِي وَلَايَةِ (الْوَالِي) الْجَائِرِ دُرُوسَ الْحَقِّ كُلِّهِ وَإِحْيَاءَ الْبَاطِلِ كُلِّهِ وَإِظْهَارَ الظُّلْمِ وَالْجَوْرِ وَالْفَسَادِ...

“...because to hold an office in the government of despotic rulers wholly eradicates the right and wholly enlivens the wrong. It also spreads injustice, oppression, and corruption...”⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ In *Tu`af al-`Uqul*, by Ibn Shu`bah al-°arrin (the fourth century

□

Concerning this matter, many traditions have been reported to demonstrate the course that must be adopted by governors and governmental officials, such as the famous epistle of Imim al-`idiq (`a) to `Abdullih al-Najishc, the governor of al-Ahwiz. (see *Wasi'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amilc; Section: *Kitib al-Bay`*, Chapter No. 78).

On the other hand, the Holy Imims (`a) are reported to have permitted holding offices in the governments of despotic rulers if this helps maintain justice, institute the laws of Almighty Allah, and contribute to treating the believers properly, enjoin the right, and forbid the wrong. In this respect, Imim M£si al-Ki`im (`a) is reported to have said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ فِي أَبْوَابِ الظُّلْمَةِ مَنْ نَوَّرَ اللَّهُ بِهِ الْبُرْهَانَ
وَمَكَّنَ لَهُ فِي الْبِلَادِ، فَيَدْفَعُ بِهِمْ عَنْ أَوْلِيَائِهِ وَيُصْلِحُ
بِهِمْ أُمُورَ الْمُسْلِمِينَ... أُولَئِكَ هُمُ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ حَقًّا،
أُولَئِكَ مَنَارُ اللَّهِ فِي أَرْضِهِ، أُولَئِكَ نُورُ اللَّهِ فِي رَعِيَّتِهِ.

Verily, among the company of the oppressors, there are those through whom Almighty Allah has made bright His path and given power in countries to protect His intimate servants and resolve the difficulties of Muslims. These are indeed the true believers. These are the shining guides to Almighty Allah in His lands. These are the light of Almighty Allah among His subjects.⁽¹⁾

Lawful and Unlawful Revenues), this narration begins with, "In the government of the unjust ruler, the good is eliminated..."

⁽¹⁾ In the book of *Munyat al-Murcd fc Adab al-Mufcd wa'l-Mustafcd* by al-Shahcd al-Thjnc (AH 966), pp. 164, and *Bi'jr al-Anwjr* by al-Majlis (AH 1111), 72:350, Section: *bjb a'wl al-mul£k wa'l-umarj* (Manners of the Kinds and Emirs) and on page 381, Section: *bjb al-ruk£n ilj al-`jlim£n wa 'ubbuhum wa §j`atuhum* (Leaning On Unjust Rulers and Loving and Obeying Them), H.46, this tradition is reported from Imim al-Ri£i (`a) with little difference.

In this respect, it is unfair to ignore the unforgettable situation of Imim `Alç Amçr al-Mu'minçn (`a) with his predecessors to the Caliphate. Although he was furious at them because he believed that they had usurped his right, his behaviour with them was full of tolerance. Moreover, he did not challenge them with the fact that the Holy Prophet (¥) had appointed him as Caliph; and he did not declare this in any public meeting until the leadership of the Muslim nation eventually returned to him. Only then did he declare that Divine commandments had nominated him as the successor of the Holy Prophet (¥), calling the existing companions to testify as witnesses for him that the Holy Prophet (¥) had openly declared him as his successor on that famous day at Ghadçr Khumm.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ There is not enough space in this footnote to mention all the reference books that have mentioned the famous *°adçth al-Ghadçr* and its ways of narration, because they are too numerous to be mentioned in such a brief thesis. However, the reader may kindly refer to the footnotes written by Shaykh °usayn al-Riçç in the margins of the book of *al-Murjja`it: Reciprocal Correspondences Between Shaykh Salçm al-Bishrç, the Head of al-Azhar University, and Sayyid Sharaf al-Dçn al-Mçsawç al-`amilç*; revised by °usayn al-Riçç, Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt ('a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422. See Letter No. 53 and on, pp. 179 and footnote No. 2 of chapter 29 of this book.

For further details, refer to *Maws£`at al-Ghadçr* (Encyclopedia of Ghadçr) by al-Amçnç al-Najafç (AH 1392): comprising eleven volumes along with revision.

41

CALLING UPON ISLAMIC UNITY

THE HOLY IM^aMS of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) are well-known for their calling upon the observance and maintenance of Islamic aspects, to preserve its glory, sustain the unity of Muslims, keep them in a ceaseless state of fraternity, and remove all rancor⁽¹⁾ and malice from their hearts.

⁽¹⁾ Referring to factors that remove rancor, the Holy Prophet (s) is reported to have said:

حُسْنُ الْبَشْرِ يَذْهَبُ بِالسَّخِيمَةِ.

“Happy mien removes rancor.”

تَصَافَحُوا، فَإِنَّ التَّصَافَحَ يَذْهَبُ السَّخِيمَةَ.

“Shake hands with each other, for it removes rancor.”

Reference: *Tu`af al-`Uq£l*, by Ibn Shu`bah al-°arrinç (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 45, 55.

The Holy Prophet (s) is also reported to have said:

الْهَدِيَّةُ تُذْهِبُ السَّخِيمَةَ.

“Presents remove rancor.”

Reference: *`Awilç al-La`ilç* by Ibn Abç-Jumhçr (app. AH 880), 1:294, °.181.

“May Allah never keep me alive to face a problem while Ab£’l-°asan is not there to solve it.”

“O Allah: please do not keep me alive to face a problem while Ab£’l-°asan is not there to solve it.”

“I seek Allah’s protection against my facing a problem while Ab£’l-°asan is not there to solve it.”

“May I never live to face a problem while Ab£’l-°asan is not there to solve it.”

“May Allah never keep me alive after you.”

“I pray to Allah to protect me against any problem while `Al¢ is absent.”

Besides, there are numerous similar statements of `Umar ibn al-Khaššib to Imjm `Al¢ (‘a). See *Dal’i’l al-Imjah* by al-±abar¢ (the early fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 22; *Shar’ al-Akhhir* by al-Qi¢¢ al-Nu`mjn al-Maghrib¢ (AH 363), 2:317, H.651, pp.565, H.651; *Kitb al-Irshjd* by Shaykh al-Muf¢d (AH 413), 1:204; *Manjqib ‘l Ab¢-±ilib* by Ibn Shahr ‘shfb (AH 588), 1:311, 2:182; *al-`Umdah* by Ibn al-Bišr¢q al-Asad¢ al-°ill¢ (app. AH 600), pp. 257; *Was’i’l al-Shc`ah* by al-°urr al-°amil¢ (AH 1104), 28:108, H.34333, Section: *thub£t al-zinj bi’l-iqrjr arba`a marrjt* (Provability Of Fornication By Four-Time Self-Confession), No. 7; *al-±abaqjt al-Kubri* by Ibn Sa’d (AH 230), 2:239; *al-Manjqib* by al-Khawrizm¢ (AH 568), pp. 96-97, H.97, 98; *Tjr¢kh Mad¢nat Dimashq* by Ibn `Asjkir (AH 571), 25:369, 42:406; *Usd al-Ghibah* by Ibn al-Ath¢r (AH 630), 4:23; *Dhakh’ir al-`Uqbj f¢ Manjqib Dhawi’l-Qurbj* by A¢mad ibn `Abdulljh al-±abar¢ (AH 694), pp. 82; *Tahdh¢b al-Kamjl* by al-Mazz¢ (AH 742), 20:485; *Nu`um Durar al-Simšayn* by al-Zarand¢ al-°anaf¢ (AH 750), pp. 131-132; *al-Bidjyah wa’l-Nihjyah* by Ibn Kath¢r al-Dimashq¢ (AH 774), 7:397; *al-I¢jbah f¢ Tamy¢z al-`a¢jbah* by Ibn °ajar al-°sqaljn¢ (AH 852), 4:467, No. 5704; Biography of `Al¢ ibn Ab¢-±ilib; *Fat’ al-Bjr¢ Shar’ `a¢¢ al-Bukhjr¢* by Ibn °ajar al-°sqaljn¢ (AH 852), 13:286; *Yanjb¢ al-*

□

Imim `Al¢ (‘a) never refrained from offering sound advice in matters that would benefit the interests of Muslims. Describing this period, he used to repeat the following statement:

فَخَشِيتُ أَنْ لَمْ أَنْصُرِ الْإِسْلَامَ وَأَهْلَهُ أَنْ أَرَى فِيهِ تَلْمَأَ
أَوْ هَذَا تَكُونُ الْمُصِيبَةُ بِهِ عَلَيَّ أَكْثَرَ مِنْ قُوَّتِ
وَلَا يَتَكَلَّمُ...

I then feared that if I did not protect Islam and its people and there occurred in it a breach or destruction, it would mean a greater blow to me than the loss of power over you...⁽¹⁾

Besides, he did not say any word that would probably tire out their rulership, weaken their authority, or underestimate their prestige. He therefore withdrew within himself and confined himself to his house inspite of which he had to encounter problems because of them.

He had to suffer all that for the sake of protecting the general interests of Islam lest a breach or fall might occur in the religion. This situation was so well-known that `Umar ibn al-Khaššib, the second caliph, used to say the like of the following statements repeatedly:

May Allah never keep me to face a problem while Ab£’l-°asan is not there to solve it.⁽²⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *Nahj al-Balighah*, revised by Shaykh Mu¢ammad `Abduh, 3:119, Letter No. 62.

⁽²⁾ This saying of `Umar ibn al-Khaššib has been so famous because it was repeated on various occasions and in different forms such as the following:

□

It is also unfair to shun reference to the situation of Imim al-°asan (`a) when he decided to enter upon a truce with Mu`iwayah,⁽¹⁾ realizing that insistence on war would injure the major weighty thing (i.e. the Holy Qur'in) and bring down the state of justice and the name of Islam forever. It would, further, result in the eradication of Divine law and annihilate the remaining members of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a). So, Imim al-°asan (`a) preferred saving the aspects and name of Islam over engagement in war even if the achievement of such would force him to make peace with Mu`iwayah, the most vehement enemy of Islam and the bitter opponent of the Imim and his Shc`ah. He knew that he and his followers would suffer oppression and humiliation at the hands of this man, but Islam's interests were more important than all lives.

Despite the fact that members of the Holy Prophet's (ﷺ) clan (namely, descendants of Hishim) and the Shc`ah had already sharpened their swords and were willing to fight, Imim al-°asan (`a) believed that achieving the general interest of Islam must be above all considerations.

As for Imim al-°usayn the martyr (`a), he revolted against the Umayyad dynasty because he was forced to announce allegiance to Yazīd, the immodest Umayyad ruler. He believed that if these rulers continued in their course of transgression and tyranny without there being anyone to stop them and reveal their reality before the people, they would certainly eradicate the name of Islam and demolish its

⁽¹⁾ For details about this issue, the gentle reader is advised to refer to *al-°asan* (The Truce of al-°asan) by Rijā' al-Yūsuf, Beirut: al-Nu'mān Foundation, AH 1412, AD 1991.

If it were not for `Alī, `Umar would have certainly perished.⁽¹⁾

Mawaddah li-Dhawi'l-Qurbī by al-Qanadīz al-°anafī (AH 1294), 1:227; H.57, 58; *Fayḍ al-Qadēr Sharḥ al-Jamī' al-aghḥar* by al-Mannīwī (AH 1331), 4:470, H.5594.

For more information, the reader may refer to the book of *al-Imīm `Alī fī 'rī' al-Khulafī'* (Imīm `Alī in the Views of the Caliphs) by Maḥdī Faqḥ «mīnḥ (contemporary), pp. 93 and on. The author of this book has referred to tens of reference books and ways of narrations in this respect.

⁽¹⁾ See *al-°aḥḥ* by Ibn Shīdhīn al-Azdī (AH 260), pp. 192; *Dalī'il al-Imīmāh* by al-°abarī (the fourth century of Hijrah), pp. 22; *al-Kīfī* by al-Kulaynī (AH 329), 7:424, Section: *bīb al-nawjīdir* (Exceptional Narrations), H.6; *Man Lī Ya'urūh al-Faqḥ* by Shaykh al-°adīq (AH 381), 4:36, H.5052; *Khaṣṣī' al-A'imma* by al-Sharḥ al-Raḥī (AH 406), pp. 85; *al-Ikhtīṣār* by Shaykh al-Mufīd (AH 413), pp. 111; *Kashf al-Yaqīn fī Faḥḥil Amḥr al-Mu'mīn* by `Allīmah al-°illī (AH 726), pp. 62; *Faḥḥil al-Khamsah min al-°iḥḥ al-Sittah* by al-Fayrīzī (AH 726), 2:309; *al-Manjīb* by al-Khawīrīzī (AH 568), pp. 81, H.65; *Sharḥ Nahj al-Balīghah* by Ibn Abī'l-°adīd al-Muḥḥīlī (AH 656), 1:18, 141, 12:179, 205, 206; *al-Riyā' al-Naḥīrah fī Faḥḥil al-°Asharah* by Aḥmad ibn `Abdullāh al-°abarī (AH 694), pp. 82; *Nu'm Durar al-Simṣayn* by al-Zarandī al-°anafī (AH 750), pp. 130, 133; *Kanz al-°ummīl* by al-Muttaqī al-Hindī (AH 975), 10:300, H.29509; *Yanībī' al-Mawaddah li-Dhawi'l-Qurbī* by al-Qanadīz al-°anafī (AH 1294), 1:216, 227, 2:172, 3:147; *Fayḍ al-Qadēr* by al-Mannīwī (AH 1331), 4:470, H.5594. See also *al-Imīm `Alī fī 'rī' al-Khulafī'* by Maḥdī Faqḥ «mīnḥ.

Frontiers)⁽¹⁾ in which the Imim (`a) says:

اللَّهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَآلِهِ؛ وَكَثِّرْ عِدَّتَهُمْ، وَاشْحَذْ
أَسْلِحَتَهُمْ، وَآخِرُسْ حَوَزَتَهُمْ، وَأَمْنِعْ حَوْمَتَهُمْ، وَأَلْفْ
جَمْعَهُمْ، وَدَبِّرْ أَمْرَهُمْ، وَوَاتِرْ بَيْنَ مِيرِهِمْ، وَتَوَحَّدْ
بِكِفَايَةِ مُؤْنِهِمْ، وَأَعِزُّهُمْ بِالنَّصْرِ، وَأَعِزَّهُمْ بِالصَّبْرِ،
وَالْطَّفْ لَهُمْ فِي الْمَكْرِ.

O Allah: (please) bless Muḥammad and his Household; and increase their number, hone their weapons, guard their territory, defend their midst, unite their throng, arrange their affair, send them supplies in a steady string, undertake Yourself to suffice them with provisions, support them with victory, help them with patience, and give them subtlety in guile!

After invoking Almighty Allah against the unbelievers, Imim Zayn al-`abidīn (`a) says:

اللَّهُمَّ وَقُوْ بِذَلِكَ مَحَالَ أَهْلَ الْإِسْلَامِ وَحَصِّنْ بِهِ دِيَارَهُمْ
وَتَمَرِّ بِهِ أَمْوَالَهُمْ وَفَرِّغْهُمْ عَنْ مُحَارَبَتِهِمْ لِعِبَادَتِكَ
وَعَنْ مُنَابَذَتِهِمْ لِلْخُلُوةِ بِكَ حَتَّى لَا يُعْبَدَ فِي بَقَاعِ
الْأَرْضِ غَيْرُكَ وَلَا تُعْقَرَ لِأَحَدٍ مِنْهُمْ جَبْهَةٌ دُونَكَ.

O Allah, strengthen the People of Islam, fortify their cities, increase their properties, give them ease from their fighting to worship You, and from their warfare to be alone with You, so that none will be worshiped in the regions of the earth but You and

⁽¹⁾ See *al-`aḥḥaf al-Sajjidiyyah* by Imim `Alī ibn al-`usayn Zayn al-`abidīn (AH 94), Supplication No. 27.

glory. He therefore aimed at showing everybody for all times to come, the oppressive and repressive policy of these rulers and unveil their vicious conspiracies against the law of Islam. What he intended took place. Had it not been for Imim al-`usayn's uprising, the religion of Islam would have been no more than material for history, just like the other dead faiths.

The reason for the Shc`ah taking a great interest in commemorating the uprising of Imim al-`usayn (`a) in various ways is that they want to complete the mission of his uprising, that is to struggle against wrong and oppression and keep his sacrifice alive forever, as has been commissioned by the Holy Imims (`a).

Ensuring the continuity of the dignity of Islam by the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) even when power was grasped by their most vehement enemies, can be clearly seen in the conduct of Imim Zayn al-`abidīn (`a) during the oppressive reign of the Umayyad rulers.

These oppressive rulers massacred the household of the Imim (`a) violated its sanctity during their reigns; nevertheless, the Imim (`a), who was so grieved for what they had done to his father and family members at Karbali', used to pray to Almighty Allah secretly to grant the Muslim armies victory over their enemies. As has been previously cited, supplication was the one and only method to which Imim Zayn al-`abidīn (`a) resorted to spread the genuine teachings and knowledge of Islam. In this respect, the Imim (`a) taught his followers how to pray for victory for Muslim armies. This supplication is famously known as "*du`i' ahl al-thughl*" (Supplication for the People of the

none, including the `Abbisid rulers themselves, was more desirous of safeguarding the entity of the Muslim state than the Holy Imims (`a). Proving this fact, let us cite the following instruction of Imim M£si al-Ki`im (`a) to his followers (i.e. Shc`ah):

لَا تَذَلُّوا رِقَابَكُمْ بِتَرْكِ طَاعَةِ سُلْطَانِكُمْ؛ فَإِنْ كَانَ عَادِلًا
فَاسْأَلُوا اللَّهَ إِبْقَاءَهُ، وَإِنْ كَانَ جَائِرًا فَاسْأَلُوا اللَّهَ
إِصْلَاحَهُ. فَإِنَّ صَلَاحَكُمْ فِي صَلَاحِ سُلْطَانِكُمْ، وَإِنَّ
السُّلْطَانَ الْعَادِلَ بِمَنْزِلَةِ الْوَالِدِ الرَّحِيمِ، فَأَحِبُّوا لَهُ مَا
تُحِبُّونَ لَأَنْفُسِكُمْ، وَكَرَهُوا لَهُ مَا تَكْرَهُونَ لَأَنْفُسِكُمْ.

Do not bring forth humility to yourselves by abandoning obedience to the ruler; if he is just, then pray to Almighty Allah to keep him alive; but if he is unjust, then pray to Him to guide him to righteousness. Verily, validity of all your affairs lies in the righteousness of your ruler. Indeed, a just ruler occupies the same position of a merciful father; you must therefore love for him all that which you love for yourselves and hate for him all that which you hate for yourselves.⁽¹⁾

To love for the ruler whatever is desired for oneself and to hate for him whatever is avoided is definitely the most

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Amjil* by Shaykh al-`ad£q (AH 381), pp. 418, H.554/21; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil£ (AH 1104), 16:220, H.21406, Section: *bjb wuj£b §j`at al-sul§jn for taqiyyah* (The Obligation of Obeying the Rulers for *Taqiyyah*); *Bi£jr al-Anwjr* by al-Majlis£ (AH 1111), 72:369, Section: *bjb al-ruk£n ilj al-`lim£n wa £ubbuhum wa §j`atuhum* (Leaning On Unjust Rulers and Loving and Obeying Them).

no forehead of theirs may be rubbed in the dust for less than You!⁽¹⁾

In this eloquent supplication, which is considered one of his longest supplications, the Imim (`a) continues in instructing the Muslim armies to abide by the required nobility of character and prepare to face the enemy.

In addition to military instructions of jihid, this supplication shows the purpose and the benefit of these instructions. It also draws attention to the scope of caution that they must take against the enemy and teaches them how to treat and fight against them. It also exhibits the moral standards that they must maintain, such as devotion to Almighty Allah, abstinence from His prohibitions, and fighting sincerely for His sake.

Similar to this situation is the situation of the other Imims (`a) with the rulers of their ages. Despite the fact that the Holy Imims (`a) had to encounter various sorts of pressure and brutal torture at the hands of these rulers, they directed all their efforts to teaching people the genuine and supreme features of the religion, realizing that the political leadership of the Muslim nation was out of question. The Holy Imims (`a) neither advised nor desired all the revolutions that took place during their ages by the `Alawites or others; rather, all these were in evident violation of their commandments and instructions, because

⁽¹⁾ How magnificent this supplication is! More than any other age, Muslims in the present day are required to repeat and learn lessons from this supplication and to entreat Almighty Allah earnestly to unify their words, unite their lines, and illumine their intellects. [The Author]

In addition, Muslims are brothers of each other in the concept of Shc`ite Muslims; each of them enjoys rights and is bound by obligations towards the others.

yet similar in meaning. See *Man Lj Ya'uruh'l-Faqh* by Shaykh al-`adEq (AH 381), 4:93, H.5151; *Tu'af al-'Uql* by Ibn Shu`bah al-`arrinç (the fourth century), pp. 34; *'Awlç al-La'jlç* by al-I'si'ç (app. AH 880), 1:222, H.98 & 2:113, H.309 & 3:473, H.1, Section: *bjb al-gha'ib* (Usurpation); *Was'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 14:572; *Bahjat al-Nufls* by al-Azdç, 2:134, 4:111; *Musnad A'mad ibn `anbal* (AH 241), 5:72; *A'kim al-Qur'in* by al-Ja'Ya' (AH 370), 2:216, 224, 241, 3:415, 433, 434, 589, 599; *Ijiz al-Qur'in* by al-Biqillinç (AH 403), pp. 131; *al-Sunan al-Kubrj* by al-Bayhaqç (AH 458), 8:182.

eloquent statement that expresses the duty of the subjects towards their rulers—furnishing them with security.

By taking notice of this fact, one can imagine how immense the fallacy of some contemporary writers is who falsely accuse the Shc`ah of representing a secret, destructive association or an indignant revolutionary faction!

It is undeniable that among the features a follower of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a) must possess are aversion towards wrongdoing and oppression, keeping oneself away from the unjust and the dissolute, and looking at the supporters and assistants of such wrongdoers with an eye of revulsion, denunciation, repugnance, and contempt. These features still persist in the inner selves of Shc`ite Muslims which they inherit from their ancestors and transfer to their descendants; yet, they have never had the habit of cheating and betrayal, nor have they ever, openly or secretly, betaken themselves to revolution and uprising against the religious authorities that rule in the name of Islam. Abiding by the teachings of the Holy Imims (`a), Shc`ite Muslims have never allowed themselves to assassinate or waylay any Muslim no matter what sect he may follow or what wing he may support. The Shc`ah believe that the property, life, and honor of a Muslim who professes Islam must be protected:

لَا يَحِلُّ مَالُ امْرِئٍ مُسْلِمٍ إِلَّا بِطَيِّبِ نَفْسٍ مِنْهُ.

It is not lawful to take the property of a Muslim individual except after obtaining his consensual permission.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ This famous *adçth* has been reported in many different forms,

If one looks attentively at this characteristic, which is easy in the eyes of the Ahl al-Bayt (`a), one will discover that it is the most difficult matter required from Muslims of this age who are, unfortunately, far away from the genuine spirit of Islam.

Think carefully about this simple characteristic; if Muslims can supposedly consider their state fairly, recognize the reality of their religion, and abide by this characteristic of wishing for others what they wish for themselves, there shall be no place for wrongdoing, transgression, theft, dishonesty, backbiting, tale-bearing, false accusation, slander, insult, or haughtiness.

In plain words, if Muslims can think carefully and apply this characteristic of fraternity among themselves, there will be no place for injustice and oppression on this globe, human beings will be as "brethren, on raised couches, face to face"⁽¹⁾ after they attain the highest levels of social

Section: *bjb l j yu'minu a'adukum att j yu'ibba li-akhçhi...* (One Is Faithless Before Loving For His Brother-In-Faith What One Loves For Oneself); *a'ç al-Bukhrç* (AH 256), 1:9, Section: *bjb min al-çmjn an yu'ibba li-akhçhi m j yu'ibbu li-nafsihç* (To Love For Brethren-In-Faith What One Loves For Oneself Is Part Of Faith); *a'ç Muslim* (AH 261), 1:48; *Sunan Ibn Mijah* (AH 275), 26:66, Section: *bjb fç 'l-çmjn* (Faith); *Sunan al-Tirmidhç* (AH 279), 4:76, H.2634; *al-Sunan al-Kubr j* by al-Nass j'ç (AH 303), 8:115, 125, Section: *al jmat al-mu'min* (Distinctive Features of True Believers).

⁽¹⁾ This is a metaphorical phrase quoted from the following holy verse:

≡ε≡ε | | ¯tB Nçδç□ρ□□≠ □ε] EtB EtΨ | ©v□τPup

□

42

MUTUAL RIGHTS OF MUSLIMS

FRATERNIZATION of Muslims with each other, apart from the great variety of social classes, ranks, or positions, is one of the greatest and most excellent instructions upon which the religion of Islam is based. On the other hand, one of the most disgraceful offenses committed by Muslims, in the present and past ages, has been their negligence of abiding by the requirements of such Islamic fraternity.

The least requirement of this fraternity, as is expressed by Imim al-`idiq (`a), is that a Muslim should wish for his brother what he wishes for himself and hate for him what he hates for himself.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Ma jsin* by al-Barqç (AH 274 or 280), 1:72, Section: *bjb al-Sittah* (The Six); *Kanz al-Fawj'id* by al-Kar jkç (AH 449), pp. 141; *al-Am jç* by al-Shaykh al-±sç (AH 460), pp. 478, H.1043, Session No. 17, H.12; *Was j'il al-Shç`ah* by al-°urr al-`amilç (AH 1104), 12:211, 212, 213, H.16111, 16113, 16114, Section: *bjb adj' aqq al-mu'min wa jumlatun min uqçqihç al-wjjibah wa'l-mandçbah* (Fulfillment of the Believers' Rights; Some Obligatory and Recommended Rights of the Believers), H.21, 23, 24; *Bi jir al-Anw jr* by al-Majlisç (AH 1111), 27:89, H.41 & 71:226, 235, 236, H.16, 17, 32, 36...; *Musnad A jmad ibn °anbal* (AH 241), 1:89, 3:176, 206, 272, 278, 289; *Sunan al-Djrimç* (AH 255), 2:307,

□

attached to.

It is also difficult for man to sacrifice his desires and lovable things for another person whom he does not love or care for except when an idea more powerful than personal desires overtakes him, such as the goodness of justice and philanthropy. Only then can man sacrifice desirable things for others. Even so, such a sacrifice is made for the sake of fulfilling other desires that are more powerful than the sacrificed desires, such as his idea about justice, which must be one of his favorite desires if not a part of his own entity.

The formation of such perfect ideas in man requires spiritual soaring over materialistic considerations. Only after man fails to form in himself the feelings of mutual fraternity and sympathy between members of his kind and himself might he realize the supreme ideal in justice and philanthropy.

The first step towards Islam is to possess feelings of fraternity for others. When a Muslim individual fails to do so, owing to the prevalence of desires and selfishness in personalities, then he must form in himself an idea about justice and philanthropy through compliance with the teachings of Islam. However, if he fails to do either, then he will not be worthy of being called a Muslim although he may claim belonging to Islam. *"He will be dismissed from the circle of loyalty and obedience to Almighty Allah Who will not grant him any share of His custody," as clearly expressed by Imim al-`Idiq (`a).*

In most cases, man is overcome by his intense whims; therefore, the most difficult matter for man may be to accept the idea of justice, not to mention holding it as the

happiness. Moreover, the ancient philosophers' dream of establishing a utopia will come true. When that day comes, Muslims, treating each other with mutual love and affection, will be in no need for governments, courts, police, jails, penal law, or provisions and infliction of punishment. Had they committed themselves to the requirements of fraternity, they would not have been colonized, would not have cringed before despots, would not have been ruled tyrannically, and the earth would have been totally changed into Paradise and an abode of happiness.

Furthermore, if the law of mutual love had reigned in the hearts of humanity as religion had planned to put it into practice through the teachings of fraternity, the word 'justice' would have been removed from all languages. We would no longer call for justice and its laws as long as there would be the law of mutual love disseminating decency, peace, happiness, and felicity among everybody. Of course, man will not need to use justice, nor will law request for it, except when mutual love flees from those who are required to treat others fairly. As for those who exchange love with us, such as our sons and brothers, we treat them excellently and give up many of our desires for their sake on the grounds of mutual love and affection, not justice and interests. The fact is that man is prone to love himself and love what is compatible with him; it is, therefore, not easy for him to love something or someone that he is not

$\cap \subseteq \angle \cup \tau \downarrow, \subseteq \# \in 7 \approx \sigma) \tau \Gamma \square B \ 9 \square \odot \square \downarrow \square \ 4 \square \vee ? \tau \odot \exists \div P \diamond \cup \theta \mid \zeta \in$

*And We will root out whatever of rancor is in their breasts--
(they shall be) as brethren, on raised couches, face to face.
(15/47)*

yourself.

How astonishing! This is the easiest duty! How can we, Muslims of the present age, practise this duty on ourselves? Shame on those who claim being Muslims while they refrain from carrying out the slightest duty imposed on them towards their brothers.

What is more astonishing is that the current retardation of Muslims is attributed to Islam; while it is the fault of none except those who call themselves Muslims but do not carry out the slightest duty instructed by their religion.

In order to realize our reality as a negligent nation and in order that history will record this for us, I will mention, hereinafter, these seven rights as clarified by Imim al-`idiq (`a):

- (1) You should love for your brother-in-faith what you love for yourself and you should despise for him what you despise for yourself.
- (2) You should avoid his displeasure, pursue what pleases him, and obey his command.
- (3) You should help him with your self, your wealth, your tongue, your hands, and your feet.
- (4) You should be his eyes, his guide, and his mirror.
- (5) You should not fill your stomach whilst he is hungry, you should not quench your thirst whilst he is thirsty, and you should not clothe yourself whilst he is naked.
- (6) If you should have a servant whilst he does not have one, you should send over your servant to

perfect faith.

Therefore, the obligations of religious fraternity have been one of the most difficult teachings of Islam, especially for those who lack honest feelings toward fraternity. In view of this fact, Imim Ja`far al-`idiq (`a), on account of his pity for the asker, deemed wise not to mention the duties towards one's brethren-in-faith more than the necessary, lest it would be impossible for the asker, namely al-Mu`alli ibn Khunays, to carry out all the duties towards his brethren-in-faith:

Al-Mu`alli (asking Imim al-`idiq): What are the duties of a Muslim towards other Muslims?

The Imim (`a): A Muslim enjoys seven rights that are incumbent upon other Muslims to carry out. Each of these rights is absolutely incumbent. If a Muslim violates any of these rights, he will be dismissed from the circle of loyalty and obedience to Almighty Allah Who shall not grant him any share of His custody.

Al-Mu`alli: May Allah accept me as ransom for you! What are these rights?

The Imim (`a): Indeed, I feel pity for you, al-Mu`alli! I am afraid lest you will violate these rights and neglect to put them into practice after you learn of them.

Al-Mu`alli: There is no power save Allah!

Only then did Imim al-`idiq (`a) mention these seven duties the easiest of which, as is expressed by the Imim (`a) himself, is to wish for your brethren-in-faith what you wish for yourself and hate for them what you hate for

A big number of such traditions have been compiled in various sections of the book of *Wasi'il al-Shc`ah*.

Some people may conceive that fraternity to which the Holy Imims (`a) have referred is dedicated to brotherliness between their followers (i.e. Shc`ah) exclusively. However, a glance at their traditions as a whole cancels out this misconception despite the fact that the Holy Imims (`a), on many other occasions, have intensely condemned those who dissent from their way and reject following their guidance.

In this respect, it is sufficient to read the following narration:

Mu`jwiyah ibn Wahab narrated that he, once, asked Imim al-`idiq (`a): How should we behave with those members of our community and associates who are not following our sect?

The Imim (`a): You must imitate your Imims (`a) whom you follow, and then do exactly as they do. Truly, they (i.e. the Imims) visit the sick (among those who are not Shc`ah), present themselves in their funeral ceremonies, give upright testimony for or against them, and give them back their things that they trust with them.⁽¹⁾

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:636, H.4, Section: *bjb m; yajibu min al-mu`jsharah* (Obligatory Matters of Association); *Mishkjt al-Anwjr fc Ghurar al-Akhhbr* by al-`abris (the seventh century of Hijrah), pp. 134; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 12:6, H.15497, Section: *bjb `ishrat al-njs* (Association With People), H.3.

wash his clothes and prepare his food and bedding.

(7) You should fulfill your vows to him, answer his calls, respond when he invites you, visit him when he is ill, and accompany his bier; and if he should have a need, you should rush to fulfill it and not give him the trouble to ask you for it.

The Imim (`a) then concluded his words with the following result:

When you have done all these, your friendship unites you together.⁽¹⁾

There are many traditions, reported from our Holy Imims (`a), bearing the same purport of the aforementioned one.

⁽¹⁾ See *Kitjb al-Mu'min* by al-`usayn ibn Sa`cd al-Kffc al-Ahwjz (before AH 300), pp. 40; *al-Kifc* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:172, Section: *bjb 'aq al-mu'min `al; akhchi wa adj' 'aqih* (Rights of Believers Upon One Another and the Meeting of These Rights), H.2; *Mu`jdaqat al-Ikhwjn* by Shaykh al-`adf (AH 381), pp. 42, H.4, Section: *bjb 'uqf al-ikhwjn ba`duhum `al; ba`* (Reciprocal Rights of Brethren-In-Faith); *Rawat al-Wj`i`n* by al-Fattl al-Naysbfc (AH 508), pp. 291, Session: *fc dhikr manqib a`jb al-a'immati wa fa`il al-shc`ah wa'l-abdjil* (Merits of the Holy Imim' Companions; Merits of the Shc`ah and the Substitutes); *Mishkjt al-Anwjr fc Ghurar al-Akhhbr* by al-`abris (the seventh century of Hijrah), pp. 47, Chapter Four: *fc manzilat al-shc`ah `inda allh wa 'uqfuhum wa m; yajibu an yaklnf `alayhi* (The Shc`ah Position Near Allah and their Rights and How They Should Be) & pp. 336; *Wasj'il al-Shc`ah* by al-`urr al-`amil (AH 1104), 12:205, H.16097, Section: *bjb adj' 'aq al-mu'min wa jumlatun min 'uqfihc al-wjjbah wa'l-mandfbah* (Fulfillment of the Believers' Rights; Some Obligatory and Recommended Rights of the Believers), H.7.

“Is he of the same faith as you?” wondered the Imjm (`a).

“Yes, he is,” I answered.

“Then,” the Imjm (`a) instructed, “go with him and break your circumambulation.”

“Should I do so even if the Circumambulation is obligatory?” I asked.

“Yes, you should,” he answered.

So, I went with that man. When I returned, I visited the Imjm (`a) and asked him about the duties towards brethren-in-faith.

“Leave the matter. Do not ask me about it,” said the Imjm (`a).

Nevertheless, I repeated the same question insistently until the Imjm (`a) answered me, saying, “Abjn: (the duty towards one’s brother-in-faith is that) you give him half of your fortune.”

As he looked at me and noticed my surprise, the Imjm (`a) said, “Abjn, you should have known that Almighty Allah has mentioned (with praise) those who give others preference over themselves?”

“Yes, I knew that,” I answered.

The Imjm (`a) said, “If you give your brother-in-faith half of what you have in possession, you have not yet given him preference over yourself. But if you give him from the other half, only then have

The kind of fraternity that the Holy Imims (`a) want from their followers is actually more refined than the general sense of fraternity in Islam. In the previous chapter while defining the true sense of Shc`ism, we referred to some narrations in this respect. However, it is sufficient to cite the following dialogue between Abin ibn Taghlib and Imim al-`idiq (`a), as reported by Abin himself:

While I, Abjn, was performing the ritual Circumambulating (*ṣawīff*) in the company of Imjm al-`idiq (`a), one of our fellows, who had previously asked me to accompany him in a mission, appeared before me. As he signaled to me, Imjm al-`idiq (`a) saw us, “Abjn: Are you the one intended by that man?” asked the Imjm (`a).

“Yes, I am,” I answered.

you given him preference.”⁽¹⁾

Actually, our shameful state of affairs does not encourage us to consider ourselves true believers. Very remote are we from the teachings of our Holy Imims (‘a). The same surprise that struck Abin may strike everyone who reads this tradition, causing him to turn his face away, to pretend that this tradition is not addressed to him, and avoid “judging himself as if he is the criminal.”

⁽¹⁾ See *al-Kif* by al-Kulayn (AH 329), 2:172, Section: *f* *anna al-tawjkh* *lam yaqa` al al-d* *wa innam* *huwa al-ta`j* *ruf* (Brotherhood Is Not On Account of Religion Only; Rather It Is Association), H.8; *Mu`jdaqat al-Ikh* *wa innam* *huwa al-ta`j* *ruf* (AH 281), pp. 38-40, Section: *b* *ba` al-ikhw* *ba` al-ikhw* *ba` al-ikhw* (Reciprocal Rights of Brethren-In-Faith), H.2; *Was* *il al-Sh* *ah* by al-urr al-`a *mil* (AH 1104), 12:209, H.16106, Section: *wuj* *ad* *al-mu`min*... (The Obligation of Fulfilling the Believers' Rights), H.16 & 13:384 H.18018, Section: *b* *ba` al-ikhw* *ba` al-ikhw* *ba` al-ikhw*...

Our Doctrines Concerning:

- **Resurrection and Final Assemblage**
- **Somatic Resurrection**

PART FIVE:

ESCHATOLOGY

43

RESURRECTION AND FINAL ASSEMBLAGE

WE BELIEVE that Almighty Allah will resurrect people after their death on the day that He has promised so as to reward the obedient and punish the disobedient.

All Divine religions and philosophers have unanimously agreed upon this matter; therefore, a Muslim has no alternative but to profess this belief on the strength of its being a Qur'anic belief conveyed to us by the Holy Prophet (ﷺ). In view of that, he who believes in Almighty Allah decisively and believes in Muḥammad (ﷺ) as His Messenger whom He has sent with true guidance and the Religion of Truth, must believe in what has been conveyed by the Holy Qur'in, such as the Resurrection, Reward and Punishment, Paradise and Bliss, Fire and Hell. The Holy Qur'in has, both openly and suggestively, declared this in about one thousand verses.

If one merely doubts this belief, he surely doubts the Bearer of the Mission or doubts the existence and power of the Creator of all beings. Moreover, to doubt the Resurrection comes from suspecting the origin of all religions and the authenticity of all Divine codes of law.

Discriminating Bridge (*siriṣ*), the Balance (*mḥzin*), Paradise, Hell, Reward, and Punishment in an amount not exceeding the Qur'anic details:

It is not obligatory to acquaint oneself with the inspected knowledge of these subjects, which cannot be attained except by well-versed specialists, such as familiarity with the answers of the following questions:

Will bodies be restored to life in their very essences; or will structures resembling these bodies be created? Will souls be exposed to perdition, just like bodies; or will they continue to live until they reunite with the bodies on the Day of Resurrection? Is Resurrection restricted to human kind; or is it applicable to all species? When Almighty Allah will command the restoration of bodies to life, will they be restored suddenly or gradually?

Although it is obligatory to believe in Paradise and Hell, it is not obligatory to know whether they are already existent or they will be created afterward; whether they are in the skies or on earth or whether one of them is on earth while the other is in the skies. Similarly, it is obligatory to believe in the Balance (prepared for weighing the good and evil deeds of people and then comparing them), but it is not obligatory to believe whether this balance will be an actual weighing apparatus with two scale pans or it is only metaphoric. It is also not obligatory to know whether the Discriminating Bridge is a material object or it only stands for moral integrity.

To sum it up, it is not conditional, in professing

44

SOMATIC RESURRECTION

THE BELIEF in somatic resurrection (after death) is one of the fundamentals of Islam to which the Holy Qur'in has referred openly:

ψ(ψθ/γ▲Y ♥9ρ& ↓ ≈|YPM}∃# <=>|Y/τσ□ρ&
βρ& #□v?τ© τ|| ⊆□≠□≈σ% 4□v?τ/ ∩⊆ ...| μτB∃σ∅≠©

∩⊆ ...| μτP∃υZτ/ ψ□υχθ|Y□Σ

What! Does man reckon We shall not gather his bones? Yes, indeed, We are able to shape again his fingertips. (75/4)

ﻯ ﻯ ﺋ ﺋ

Were We then fatigued with the first creation? Yet are they in doubt with regard to a new creation. (50/15)

To state it succinctly, somatic resurrection is no more than that man's terrestrial body will be revived, on the Day of Resurrection, after having been destroyed, and it will return to its first form after it has turned to dust in the earth.

It is not necessary to believe in the details of the somatic resurrection; rather, it is required to believe in it in its simple form as is revealed by the Holy Qur'in and to believe in its accompanying matters, such as the Judgment, the

and research. How is it then expected from man, who forms his opinions about things through the scope of his thinking and experience, to judge the authenticity or inaccuracy of such matters or to deal with their details and peculiarities? This is impossible unless man depends upon personal predictions and intuitions, or regards such things as improbable and strange. This is the nature of man; he finds strange anything that he has not known, experienced, or perceived before, just like one who, pushed by ignorance, finds the Resurrection and thus asks:

ʔ®O□≠Bυ□ }□≠δυρ ζN≈σ∅≠∪9Ξ# ®© |Π©□ τB

Who shall quicken the bones when they have decayed? (36/78)

The only reason for such amazement is that man has never seen any decayed or rotten corpse brought back to life. Yet, he forgets to think about how he was initially created after he had been nothing and how the components of his body were composed from the dust of the earth and the other matters carried by it and from the space and its contents until he became a perfect, intelligent, and speaking human being. Referring to this fact, the Holy Qur'in puts forth the following question:

̄B | μ≈σΨ/)v=ψζ ∃↓Pρ& ↓̄ ≈|YPM}Ξ# υ□τ□ (Oσ9υρρ&
 ∩∠∪·.] ∈7□B ®O□⊕Ξψζ υθ\δ #σ□∈*σ] 7πξ□ | <□P
 !...|μσ)]=ψζ ζ©⊕/τPυρ ΩξσΩτB ∃σΨσ9 ζ>υ□□∇υρ

Has not man regarded how We created him of a sperm-drop? Then lo! He becomes a manifest adversary. He strikes for us a similitude and forgets his own creation. (36/77-78)

He who finds strange the restoration to life while he has forgotten his creation must be answered with the following

Islam, to know whether these things are material bodies or not...⁽¹⁾

Islam simply demands faith in the Resurrection and Final Assemblage. If anyone tries to exceed this to acquaint oneself with details surpassing what has been mentioned in the Holy Qur'in so as to be convinced and refute the spurious arguments of some skeptical researchers, who demand a rational explanation of the Resurrection, one will definitely involve oneself in unnecessary complications and fall into endless troubles and disputation.

Moreover, nothing in the religion of Islam instigates searching for such details with which the books of theologians and fake philosophers are replete. There is also no religious, social, or political need for such disputatious essays with which books are full in a meaningless way and which have exhausted the efforts of their writers, grasped their times, and strained their thinking uselessly.

To refute such spurious and skeptical arguments aroused about the details of Resurrection, it is sufficient to know that man naturally fails to comprehend unseen matters that are beyond his horizon and above his terrestrial level, keeping in mind that Almighty Allah, the All-powerful and All-Knowing, has informed us that somatic resurrection shall come to happen.

An undeniable fact; human sciences, experiments, and researches can never approach matters beyond man's experience and examination except after man dies and leaves this terrestrial world of tangibility, experimentalism,

⁽¹⁾ This paragraph is quoted from *Kashf al-Ghiṣṣi' 'An Mubhamāt al-Sharḥ al-Gharrī'* by Ja`far Kīshif al-Ghiṣṣi' (AH 1228), pp. 5.

to the people of the ancient ages. Yet man has not been able to discover the reality of electricity or the secret of atoms, or even the peculiarities or characteristics of a single atom. How then can man aspire to discover the secret of creation and composition of human beings and then realize the secrets of the Final Assemblage and the Somatic Resurrection?

After having faith in Islam, man is only required to avoid running after personal lusts and, instead, engage himself in matters that bring about prosperity in his life in this world as well as the next and matters that elevate his rank in the eyes of Almighty Allah. He is also required to think deeply about whatever helps him manage his worldly affairs properly and to mull carefully over what he will definitely encounter after his death, such as the agony of the grave and the judgment when he will stand before the Lord, the Master and Knower of all things:

holy verse:

τΑ♦ρρ&!Ψδρτ±Σρ&)□%♥!Э# Эπκ□□ (σ◎□)≡%

∩∠®∪ {O□≠=τ(≡,]=ψζ ∪ε≡™3 ∈/ υθ\δυρ (;ο♣□τB

Say: 'He shall quicken them (the bones) Who originated them the first time.' He knows all creation. (36/79)

In plain words, the answer to such people is: you profess belief in the Creator of all beings and His omnipotence and in His Messenger and what he has brought. You fail to understand the secrets beyond your creation. You know not how you were formed from discordant atoms. You do not comprehend how you developed from a senseless sperm-drop that lacked feelings, volition, and reason into a perfect human being with intelligence, feelings, and the capability of managing your affairs! Consequently, how can you now understand this strange restoration of your life after you become rotten? This is certainly an audacious attempt to discover the unknown. There is no alternative for you except to humbly admit this fact conveyed to you by the Manager of all beings, namely the All-knowing and All-powerful Lord Who created you from nothingness and rotten materials.

As a general rule, any attempt to discover unobserved matters that are beyond the capacity of the knowledge of man is a waste of time and a sort of deviation, just like opening one's eyes wide in deep-black gloom.

Undoubtedly, man has reached advanced stages in scientific discoveries that led him to discover electricity and radar and use atomic energy—discoveries that would certainly be considered impossibilities and subjects to joke about if told

$\langle \clubsuit \rangle / \square \downarrow P \quad \bar{\tau} \odot \lfloor \clubsuit \rangle / \square \tau P \quad \square \subseteq \square / \gamma p B \quad \square \omega \exists \Psi B \backslash \theta \tau \square \quad (\# \theta \diamond) \diamond ? \exists \# \cup p$

$\square \omega \cup p \cdot \pi \psi \backslash \approx \xi \square \xi \heartsuit \exists \pi \kappa \lfloor \rfloor \notin B \quad \odot \equiv \tau 6 \rfloor \odot \square \square \omega \cup p \exists Z \leftrightarrow \rfloor \square \xi \heartsuit$

$\tau \beta p \odot \square \rfloor \Im Z \odot \square \backslash N \backslash \delta \square \omega \cup p \cdot A \mid \square \tau \odot \exists \pi \kappa \lfloor \rfloor \notin B \quad {}^{\text{TM}} \square \sigma \{ \mid \sigma \odot \square$

$\cap \subseteq \nabla \cup$

Beware of a day when no soul for another shall give satisfaction, and no intercession shall be accepted from it, nor any compensation be taken from it, neither shall they be helped. (2/48)

8. *Al-Uṣṣal al-Sittat `Ashar* by a number of scholars of ḥadīth (app. AH 150); Qum: Dār al-Shabastar; Second Edition, AH 1405.
9. *Iqbāl al-A`mīl* by Abī'l-Qāsim Raḥḥ al-Dīn `Alī ibn Mūsā ibn Ja`far al-`asan al-`usaynī (AH 664), with an introduction and commentary by `usayn al-A`lamī; revised by Jawīd al-Qayyūmī; Beirut: al-A`lamī Foundation; First Edition; AH 1417/AD 1996.
10. *Alfu `adḥthin fī'l-Mu'min* by Ḥidḥ al-Najafī (contemporary); Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation of *Jāmi`at al-Mudarrisīn*; First Edition; AH 1416.
11. *Al-Amīl* by Muḥammad ibn al-`asan al-`ṣṣī (AH 460); revised by Islamic Studies Department in al-Bi`thah Foundation, Qum: Dār al-Thaqīfah, First Edition, AH 1414.
12. *Al-Amīl* by Muḥammad ibn `Alī al-`adīq (AH 381), Qum: al-Bi`thah Foundation, First Edition, AH 1417.
13. *Al-Imām `Alī fī `arī' al-Khulafī'* by Mahdī Faqīh al-`mīnī (contemporary); translated from Farsi into Arabic by Yāyī al-Kamīlī, Pīrdār-Islām, First Edition, AH 1420.
14. *Awjīl al-Maqīlāt* by al-Mufīd; revised by Ibrāhīm al-Anṣārī al-Zinjīnī al-Khāfīnī, Beirut: Dār al-Mufīd, Second Edition, AH 1414/AD 1993.
15. *Al-`ḥḥī* by Ibn Shīdhīn al-Azdī al-Naysībīrī (AH 260); revised by Jalīl al-Dīn al-`usaynī al-Armawī *al-Mu`addith*, (dateless).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. *Ajwibat Masīl Jirullih* by Sayyid `Abd al-`usayn Sharaf al-Dīn al-Mṣawī (AH 1377); Revised by `Abd al-Zahrī' al-Yīsīrī (contemporary); Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1416/AD 1995.
2. *Al-Iṭījīj* by Aḥmad ibn `Alī al-`abīrī (AH 560); revised by Muḥammad Bīqir al-Khīrīn; Holy Najaf: Dār al-Nu`mīn Publishers, 2 volumes, (dateless).
3. *Al-kīm al-Qur'īn* by Abī-Bakr Aḥmad ibn `Alī al-Jaḥṣī al-Rīzī (AH 370); Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, First Edition, 3 volumes, AH 1415.
4. *Al-Irshīd* by Abī-`Abdullāh Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad ibn al-Nu`mīn al-`Akbarī al-Baghdādī; Shaykh al-Mufīd (AH 413); Revised by al-Bayt Foundation; Qum: The International Conference of Shaykh al-Mufīd's Millennium, (dateless).
5. *Istīqṣā' al-Na`ar fī Imāmāt al-A'immati al-Ithnay `Ashar* by Kamīl al-Dīn Maytham ibn `Alī ibn Maytham al-Mu`allī al-Baḥrīnī (AH 679).
6. *Usd al-Ghībah fī Ma`rifat al-`aḥībah* by Ibn al-Athīr (AH 630), Tehran: Ismī`ḥīyyīn Publications, 5 volumes, (dateless).
7. *Al-Iṣṣbah fī Tamīz al-`aḥībah* by Ibn `ajar al-`Asqalīnī (AH 852), revised by `adīl Aḥmad ibn al-Mawjīd; Beirut: Dār al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah; First Edition, 8 volumes, AH 1415.

- First Edition, 14 volumes, AH 1408.
24. *Baʿṣi'ir al-Darajit al-Kubri* by al-ʿaffīr, Muḥammad ibn al-ʿasan ibn Forrukh (AH 290), revised by Mǫrzī Muḥsin Kḥcheh-Bīghc; Tehran: al-Aʿlamc Foundation, AH 1404.
 25. *Al-Balad al-Amḥn wa'l-Dir` al-ʿaʿḥn* by al-Kafʿamc al-ʿamilc, Ibrīhīm ibn ʿAlc ibn al-ʿasan ibn Muḥammad (AH 900), with introduction and commentary by ʿAlī' al-Dḥn al-Aʿlamc, Beirut: al-Aʿlamc Press Foundation, First Edition, AH 1418/AD 1997.
 26. *Bahjat al-Nuḥs Shar' Mukhtaʿar Jīmi` ʿaḥ' al-Bukhīr* by al-Azdḥ al-Andalusḥ, Ibn Abḥ-Jamrah ʿAbdullīh ibn Sa`d (AH 699 or 675).
 27. *Ta'wḥl al-ʿyīt fḥ Faḥ'il al-ʿItrah al-ḥīrah* by al-ʿusaynḥ al-Istrabīdḥ al-Najafḥ, Sharaf al-Dḥn ibn ʿAlc (app. AH 965), revised by Imīm al-Mahdḥ School, Qum: Imīm al-Mahdḥ School Press, First Edition, AH 1407.
 28. *Ta'wḥl Mukhtalaf al-Aḥīdḥ* by Ibn Qutaybah, Abḥ-Muḥammad ʿAbdullīh ibn Muslim, (AH 376), revised by Ismī`ḥl al-As`ardḥ, Beirut: Dīr al-Kutub al-ʿIlmiyyah, (dateless).
 29. *Tīrḥkh Madḥnat Dimashq* by Ibn ʿAsīkir (AH 571), revised by ʿAlc Shḥrḥ, 70 volumes, Beirut: Dīr al-Fikr, AH 1415.
 30. *Al-Tibyīn fḥ Tafḥr al-Qur'īn* by al-ḥḥsḥ, Abḥ-Ja`far Muḥammad ibn al-ʿasan (AH 460); revised by Aḥmad ʿabḥb Qaʿḥr al-ʿamilc; Maktab al-ʿIlīm al-Islīmc Press, First Edition, 10 volumes, AH 1409.

16. *Ikhtiyār Ma`rifat al-Rijl* by al-ḥḥsḥ (AH 460); revised by Muḥammad Bīqīr al-ʿusaynḥ Mḥr Dīmīd & Mahdḥ al-Rajī'ḥ, Qum: ʿl al-Bayt Foundation, 2 volumes, AH 1404.
17. *Al-Istinʿīr fḥ ʿl-Naʿḥ ʿAlī al-A`immah al-Aḥhīr* by Abḥ'ḥl-Fatī al-Karījakḥ (AH 449), Beirut: Dīr al-Aḥwī', Second Edition, AH 1405.
18. *Al-ʿṭīqīdīt* by al-Muḥḥd, Abḥ-ʿAbdullīh Muḥammad ibn al-Nu`mīn al-ʿAkbarḥ al-Baghdīdḥ (AH 413); Beirut: Dīr al-Muḥḥd, Second Edition, AH 1414.
19. *Iḥīz al-Qur'īn* by al-Bīqillīnḥ, Abḥ-Bakr Muḥammad ibn al-ḥḥyīb (AH 403); revised by Aḥmad ʿaqr, Egypt: Dīr al-Ma`īrif, Third Edition, (dateless).
20. *Bi'īr al-Anwīr* by al-Majlisḥ, Muḥammad Bīqīr (AH 1111); Beirut: al-Wafī' Foundation, Second Reprint, AH 1403/AD 1983.
21. *Baḥḥ ʿawla al-Mahdḥ* by al-ʿadr, Muḥammad Bīqīr (AD 1980), revision and commentary by ʿAbd al-Jabbīr Sharīrah, Qum: Al-Ghadḥr Center for Islamic Studies, First (revised) Edition, AH 1417/AD 1996.
22. *Al-Badī' fḥ ʿaw' al-Kitīb wa'l-Sunnah* by al-Subḥīnḥ, Ja`far (contemporary); written by Ja`far al-Hīdḥ; Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation; prepared by Imīm al-ʿīdīq Foundation.
23. *Al-Bidīyah wa'l-Nihīyah* by Ibn Kathḥr al-Dimashqḥ, Abḥ'ḥl-Fidī' Ismī`ḥl (AH 774); revised by ʿAlc Shḥrḥ, Beirut: Dīr Iḥyī' al-Turīth al-ʿArabḥ,

- 1104); revised and published by ^al al-Bayt Foundation for Revival of Heritage – Qum, First Edition, AH 1414.
39. *Al-Taqiyyah `Inda Ahl al-Bayt* by Qaẓẓer al-`amilç, Muẓṣafı (contemporary); Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (a) World Assembly, Seciond Reprint, AH 1415.
40. *Al-Taqiyyah fç`l-Fikr al-Islımc*: Book No. 17 – *salsalat al-ma`ırif al-islımiyyah* (Series of Islamic Knowledges) by al-Risılah Center; Qum: al-Risılah Center, First Edition, AH 1419.
41. *Al-Taqiyyah fç Fiqh Ahl al-Bayt* by al-Dıwarç, Muslim (contemporary) & Muammad `Alç al-Mu`allim; Qum: the author, 2 volumes, AH 1418.
42. *Al-Taqiyyah* by Murtaı al-Anẓırç (AH 1282), revised by Fıris al-°assfn, Qum: Qi'im ^al Muammad Foundation, First Edition, AH 1412.
43. *Tanzçh al-Anbiyı'* by al-Sharçf al-Murtaı, `Alç ibn al-°usayn al-Mfsawç (AH 436); Beirut: Dır al-Aıwı', Second Reprint, AH 1409/ AD 1989.
44. *Tahdhçb al-Aıkim* by al-±fsç (AH 460), revised by °asan al-Khirsın, corrected by Muammad al-°khfnç; Tehran: Dır al-Kutub al-Islımiyyah, Fourth Reprint, 10 volumes, ASH 1365.
45. *Tahdhçb al-Tahdhçb* by Ibn °ajar al-`Asqalınc (AH 852); Dır al-Fikr, First Edition, 12 volumes, AH 1404.
46. *Tahdhçb al-Kamıl* by al-Mazzç, Abf`l-°ajjıj Yfsuf (AH 742), revised by Bashshır `Awwıd Ma`rff; al-Risılah Foundation, First Edition, 35

31. *Tathbçt al-Imımah* by al-Hadi Yahya ibn al-Husayn ibn al-Qasim al-Imım al-Zaydç al-Yamanç (AH 298), Beirut: Dır al-Imım al-Sajjid, Second Edition, AH 1419.
32. *Tuıaf al-`Uql`l `an `l al-Rasfl* by al-°arrınc, Ibn Shu`bah (the fourth century of Hijrah); revised by `Alç Akbar al-Ghaffırç, Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation, Second Reprint, AH 1404.
33. *Tuıfat al-Aıwadhç fç Sharı al-Tirmidhç* by al-Mubırakfırç (AH 1353), Beirut: Dır al-Kutub al-`İlmiyyah, 10 volumes, (dateless).
34. *Tafsçr al-`Ayyıshç* by Ibn `Ayyısh al-Salamç al-Samarqandç, al-Naır Muammad ibn Mas`fd (AH 320); revised by Hıshim al-Rasflç al-Maıallıtç, Tehran: Islamic Scientific Library, 2 volumes, (dateless).
35. *Tafsçr al-Qur`ın* by al-°an`ınc, `Abd al-Razzıq ibn Hammım (AH 211); revised by Muẓṣafı Muslim Muammad, Riyıı: al-Rushd Library, First Edition, 3 volumes, AH 1410.
36. *Tafsçr al-Qummç* by al-Qummç, Abf`l-°asan `Alç ibn İbrıhçm (AH 329); revised by ±ayyib al-Jazı'ırç, Qum: Dır al-Kitıb Foundation, Third Reprint, 2 volumes, AH 1404.
37. *Tafsçr al-Imım al-`Askarç* by Abf-Muammad al-°asan ibn `Alç (the eleventh Imım—peace be upon him); revised by Imım al-Mahdç School, Qum: Imım al-Mahdç School Press, First Edition, AH 1409.
38. *Tafẓçl Wasııl al-Shç`ah* by al-°urr al-`amilç (AH

- author, First edition, AH 1413.
55. *°adçth al-Thaqalayn* by al-Qummç al-Washnawç, Mu'ammad Qiwi al-Dçn (contemporary); Cairo: Approximation of Muslim Sects Press, (dateless).
 56. *°aqi'iq al-Ta'wçl of Mutashibah al-Tanzçl* by al-Sharçf al-Raçç (AH 406), commentary by Mu'ammad al-Riçç Kishif al-Ghiçç; Beirut: Dçr al-Muhijir, (dateless).
 57. *Al-°ikjyt fç Mukhlafat al-Mu`tazilah min al`Adliyyah wa'l-Farq Baynahum wa Bayna al-Shc`ah al-Imimiyyah* by al-Mufçd (AH 413); revised by Mu'ammad Riçç al-°usaynç al-Jalilç; Beirut: Dçr al-Mufçd, Second Reprint, AH 1414/AD 1993.
 58. *°ukm al-Binj' `Alj al-Qubçr* by Researches and Refutal of Spurious Arguments at the Ahl al-Bayt (a) World Assembly – `Abd al-Karçm al-Bahbahinç (contemporary); Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422.
 59. *Al-Kharj'ij wa'l-°arj'ij* by al-Rçwandç, Quçb al-Dçn (AH 573); revised by Imim al-Mahdç Foundation, 3 volumes, (dateless).
 60. *Khaççj'iç Amçr al-Mu'minçn* by al-Nassj'ç al-Shçfi'ç Abç-`Abd al-Raçmçn Açmad ibn Shu'ayb (AH 303); revised by Mu'ammad Hçdç al-Amçnç; Nineveh Modern Library, (dateless).
 61. *Khaççj'iç al-A'immah* by al-Sharçf al-Raçç (AH 406); revised by Mu'ammad Hçdç al-Amçnç, Mashhad: Islamic Research Assembly at the Holy Shrine of Imim al-Riçç (a), AH 1406.

- volumes, AH 1413.
47. *Al-Tawççd* by al-°adçq, Mu'ammad ibn `Alç (AH 381), revised by Hçshim al-°usaynç al-°ahrinç, Qum: *Jamj`at al-Mudarrisçn*, AH 1387.
 48. *Al-Thçqib fç'l-Mançqib* by Ibn °amzah al-±ççç (AH 560); revised by Shaykh Nabçl Riçç `Alwiç; Qum: al-°adr Publishers, Second Reprint, AH 1412.
 49. *Thawjb al-Açmçl `Iqjb al-Açmçl* by al-°adçq, Mu'ammad ibn `Alç (AH 381); Qum: al-Raçç Publications, Second Reprint, ASH 1368.
 50. *Jçmi` al-Bayjn* by al-±abarç, Abç-Ja`far Mu'ammad ibn Jarçr (AH 310), verification, documentation, and preparation by °idqç Jamçl al-`Açççç; Beirut: Dçr al-Fikr, 30 volumes, AH 1415.
 51. *Al-Jçmi` al-°aghçr* by al-Suyçççç, Jalil al-Dçn `Abd al-Raçmçn ibn Abç-Bakr (AH 911); Beirut: Dçr al-Fikr, First Edition, 2 volumes, AH 1401.
 52. *Al-Jçmi` li-Açkçm al-Qur'jn* by al-Qurçubç al-Ançççç, Abç-`Abdullçh Mu'ammad ibn Açmad (AH 671), Beirut: al-Tçrçkh al-`Arabç Foundation, 20 volumes, AH 1405.
 53. *Jawçhir al-Maççlib fç Mançqib al-Imçm `Alç ibn Abç-±çlib* by al-Dimashqç, al-Bçghçnç, al-Shçfi'ç, Mu'ammad ibn Açmad (AH 871), revised by Mu'ammad Bçqir al-Maçmçdç; Qum: Assembly of Revival of Islamic Culture, First Edition, 2 volumes, AH 1415.
 54. *°adçth al-Thaqalayn Tawçturuhç Fiqhuhç* by al-°usaynç al-Milany, `Alç (contemporary); Qum: the

- version of al-Khuzjnah al-Taymfrriyyah.
69. *Al-Raj`ah aw al-`Awdah Ila al-`ayj al-Dunyj Ba`d al-Mawt*: Book No. 12 – *salsalat al-ma`jirif al-isljmiyyah* (Series of Islamic Knowledges) by al-Risjlah Center; Qum: al-Risjlah Center, First Edition, AH 1418.
 70. *Al-Raj`ah*: Book No. 7, *Salsalat fç Ri`jb Ahl al-Bayt* (Series of In The Space of the Ahl al-Bayt), by `al Najaf, `Abd al-Karçm (contemporary); Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1422.
 71. *Al-Radd `Alj Shubuhjt A`mad al-Kjtib – `awla Imjmat Ahl al-Bayt wa Wujfd al-Mahdç al-Muta`ar* by al-Badrç, Sjmç (contemporary); Qum, AH 1421.
 72. *Risjlah Mukhta`arah fç `l-Nu`l` al-`a`ç`ah `Alj Imjmat al-A`immah al-Ithnay `Ashar* by al-Tabrizi, al-Mçrzj Jawjd (contemporary).
 73. *Rawçat al-Wj`i`çn* by al-Naysjbfrç, Mu`ammad ibn al-Fattjl (AH 508); revised by Mu`ammad Mahdç al-Sayyid `asan al-Khirsjn; Qum: al-Raçç Publications, (dateless).
 74. *Zjd al-Masçr fç `Ilm al-Tafsçr* by Ibn al-Jawzç al-Qarashç Abç`l-Faraj Jamjl al-Dçn `Abd al-Ra`mjn ibn `Alç ibn Mu`ammad (AH 597); revised by Mu`ammad ibn `Abd al-Ra`mjn; Beirut: Djr al-Fikr, First Edition, 8 volumes, AH 1407.
 75. *Sunan Ibn Mjjah* by Ibn Mjjah al-Qazwçnç, Mu`ammad ibn Yazçd (AH 275); revised by `Abd al-Ra`mjn Mu`ammad `Uthmjn; Beirut: Djr al-Firk, 2 volumes, (dateless).

62. *Al-Khi`l* by al-`adçq Mu`ammad ibn `Alç (AH 381); revised by `Alç Akbar al-Ghaffjrç, Qum: Jamj`at al-Mudarrisçn - The Seminary of Qum, (dateless).
63. *Dustçr Ma`jlim al-`ikam wa-Ma`thçr Makjrim al-Shiyam* by Ibn Saljmah, Abç-`Abdulljh Mu`ammad (AH 454), published by Mu`ammad Sa`çd al-Rjfi` Press (the owner of *al-Maktabah al-Azhariyyah*); Qum: al-Mufçd Library, (dateless).
64. *Al-Du`j` `Inda Ahl al-Bayt* by al-`ayfç, Mu`ammad Mahdç (contemporary), Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, First Edition, AH 1415.
65. *Da`j`im al-Isljm* by al-Tamçmç al-Maghribç, Ibn `ayyçn al-Nu`mjn ibn Mu`ammad ibn Man`çr ibn A`mad (AH 363); revised by `ayif ibn `Alç A`ghar al-Fayçç, published by Djr al-Ma`jirif, AH 1383/AD 1963.
66. *Dalj`il al-Imjmah* by al-`abarç, Abç-Ja`far Mu`ammad ibn Jarçr ibn Rustam (the early fourth century of Hijrah); revised by Islamic Studies Department, Qum: al-Bi`thah Foundation, First Edition, AH 1412.
67. *Al-Dçbijj `Alj `a`ç` Muslim* by al-Suyçççç, `Abd al-Ra`mjn (AH 911); revised by Abç-Isjçq al-`uwaynç al-Atharç; Saudi Arabia: Djr Ibn Affan, 6 volumes, (dateless).
68. *Dhakhj`ir al-`Uqbj fç Manjqib Dhawç`l-Qurbj* by al-`abarç, A`mad ibn `Abdulljh (AH 694), published by al-Qudsç Library, AH 1356, quoted from the version of Djr al-Kutub al-Mi`riyyah and the

- (the judge) `Ayyiḥ al-Yaḥyub, Abf'l-Faḥl (AH 544); Beirut: Dīr al-Fikr, 2 volumes, AH 1409.
84. *Shawḥid al-Tanzḥl li-Qawj'id al-Tafḥl* by al-ḥkim al-ḥasakīn, `Ubaydullīh ibn Aḥmad (the fifth century of Hijrah); revised by Muḥammad Bīqir al-Maḥmūd; Iran: Ministry of Culture and Islamic Guidance, First Edition, 2 volumes, AH 1411.
85. *Al-Shc`ah al-Imimiyyah* by al-Mufḥd (AH 413); revised by Muḥammad Riḥ al-ḥsayn al-Jalīl; Beirut: Dīr al-Mufḥd, Second Reprint, AH 1414/AD 1993.
86. *Al-Shc`ah wa'l-ḥkimān* by Mughniyah, Muḥammad Jawīd; Beirut: al-Hilīl Publishers & Library, al-Jawīd Press, Fifth Reprint, AH 1981.
87. *Al-ḥiḥi Tīj al-Lughah wa ḥiḥi al-`Arabiyyah* by al-Jawhar, Ismīḥl ibn ḥammīd (AH 393); revised by Aḥmad ibn `Abd al-Ghaḥr `Aḥḥīr; Beirut: Dīr al-`Ilm li'l-Maḥyḥn, Fourth Reprint, 6 volumes, AH 1407.
88. *ḥaḥi Ibn Khuzaymah* by Ibn Khuzaymah al-Salam al-Naysībḥr (AH 311); revised by Muḥammad Muḥḥafī al-Aḥḥam; published by Islamic Bureau, Second Reprint, 4 volumes, AH 1412.
89. *ḥaḥi Muslim bi-Sharī al-Nawaw* by al-Nawaw (AH 676); Beirut: Dīr al-Kitīb al-`Arab, Second Reprint, 18 volumes, AH 1407.
90. *ḥaḥi Muslim* by al-Naysībḥr, Muslim ibn al-ḥajjī (AH 261); Beirut: Dīr al-Fikr, 8 volumes, (dateless).

76. *Sunan Ibn Mījah* by Ibn Mījah al-Qazwḥn, Muḥammad ibn Yazḥd (AH 275); revised by Muḥammad Fuḥd `Abd al-Bīq; Beirut: Dīr al-Fikr, AH 1407.
77. *Sunan al-Tirmidh* by Muḥammad ibn `ḥḥ al-Tirmidh (AH 279); revised by `Abd al-Raḥmīn Muḥammad `Uthmīn; Beirut: Dīr al-Fikr, AH 1403.
78. *Sunan al-Dīrim* by al-Dīrim, `Abdullīh ibn Baḥrīm (AH 255); Damascus: al-ḥtidīl Press, 2 volumes (no date is mentioned).
79. *Al-Sunan al-Kubrī* by al-Bayhaḥ, Aḥmad ibn al-ḥsayn ibn `Alḥ (AH 458), Beirut: Dīr al-Fikr, 10 volumes, (dateless).
80. *Al-Sunan al-Kubrī* by al-Nassīḥ, Abf-`Abd al-Raḥmīn Aḥmad ibn Shu`ayb (AH 303); revised by `Abd al-Ghaḥr Sulaymīn al-Bandīr & Sayyid Khusraw ḥasan; Beirut: Dīr al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, First Edition, AH 1411/AD 1991.
81. *Sharī Nahj al-Balīghah* by Ibn Abḥ'l-ḥadḥd al-Muḥtazil (AH 656); revised by Muḥammad Abf'l-Faḥl Ibrīḥm, published by Dīr Iḥyī' Al-Kutub al-`Arabiyyah; Edition of Publications of `ayatlīh al-`Uḥmī al-Mar`ash al-Najaf, 20 volumes, (dateless).
82. *Sharī al-Akḥbīr* by al-Qīḥ (the judge) al-Nuḥmīn ibn Muḥammad al-Tamḥm al-Maghrib (AH 363); revised by Muḥammad al-ḥsayn al-Jalīl; Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation, 3 volumes, (dateless).
83. *Al-Shifī bi-Ta`rḥf ḥuḥḥ al-Mustafa* by al-Qīḥ

99. *`Ilal al-Sharj'i`* by al-`adfq, Mu`ammad ibn `Alç (AH 381); Najaf: al-Maktabah al-`aydariyyah, 2 volumes, AH 1386/ AD 1966.
100. *Al-`Umdah* by Ibn al-Biṣrçq al-Asadç al-`illç (app. AH 600); revised by *Jamj`at al-Mudarrisçn*; Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation, First Edition, AH 1407.
101. *Ghawjlç al-La'jlç al-`Azçziyyah fç'l-Ajldçth al-Dçniyyah* by Ibn Abç-Jumhçr al-Iṣj'ç (app. AH 880); revised by Sayyid al-Mar`ashç and Shaykh Mujtabj al-`Irjçç; Qum: Sayyid al-Shuhadj' Press, First Edition, 4 volumes, AH 1403/ AD 1983.
102. *`Uyçn Akhbjr al-Riçj* by al-`adfq, Mu`ammad ibn `Alç (AH 381); revised by `usayn al-A`lamç; Beirut: al-A`lamç Publications, First Edition, AH 1404.
103. *Al-Ghjrjt* by al-Thaqafç al-Kçfçç, Ibrjhçm ibn Mu`ammad (AH 283); revised by Jaljl al-Dçn al-Mu`addith; published by Bahman Press, 2 volumes, (dateless).
104. *Al-Ghadçr* by al-Amçnçç al-Najafç, `Abd al-`usayn (AH 1392); Beirut: Djr al-Kitjb al-`Arabç, 12 volumes, AH 1379.
105. *Kitjb al-Ghaybah* by al-Nu`mjnçç (Ibn Abç-Zaynab), Mu`ammad ibn Ibrjhçm (AH 380); revised by `Alç Akbar al-Ghaffjrç; Tehran: al-`adfq Library, (dateless).
106. *Al-Fj'iq fç Gharçb al-`adçth* by al-Zamakhsharç, Jjrulljh, Maṣmçd ibn `Amr (AH 538); Beirut: Djr al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, First Edition, 3 volumes, AH

91. *Al-`aṣç min Sçrat al-Nabç al-A`am* by al-`amilç, Ja`far Murtaçj (contemporary); Beirut: Djr al-Hjdç, Fourth Reprint, 11 volumes, AH 1415.
92. *Al-`aṣçfah al-Sajjidiyyah* by `Alç ibn al-`usayn, Imjm Zayn al-`abidçn (AH 94); revised and published by Imjm al-Mahdç Foundation - Qum, under the supervision of Mu`ammad `Alç al-Abṣaṣç, First Edition, AH 1411.
93. *Al-`irjç al-Mustaqçm Ilj Musta'iqqç al-Taqdçm* by al-`amilç al-Bayyççç, Zayn al-Dçn Abç-Mu`ammad `Alç ibn Yçnus (AH 877); revised by Mu`ammad Bjqir al-Maṣmçdç, published by *al-Maktabah al-Raçawiyyah li-Iṣj' al-`thjr al-Ja`fariyyah*, First Edition, 3 volumes, AH 1384.
94. *`ifjt al-Shç`ah* by al-`adfq, Mu`ammad `Alç (AH 381); Tehran: al-`abidç, (dateless).
95. *`ulç al-`asan* by al-Yçççn, Rjççç (contemporary), with an introduction by `Abd al-`usayn Sharaf al-Dçn; Beirut: al-Nu`mjn Foundation, AH 1412/ AD 1991.
96. *Al-`awj'iq al-Muṣriqah fç'l-Radd `Alj Ahl al-Bida` wa'l-Zandaqah* by `Abd al-Wahhjb, `Abd al-Laṣççf, Aṣmad ibn `ajar al-Haythamç al-Makkç (AH 899 or 974); Egypt: Cairo Library, (dateless).
97. *Al-`abraqjt al-Kubrj* by Ibn Sa`d, Mu`ammad (AH 230); Beirut: Djr `jdir, 8 volumes, (dateless).
98. *`Uddat al-Dj'ç wa Najjç al-Sj'ç* by Ibn Fahad al-`illç, Aṣmad (AH 841); revised by Aṣmad al-Muwaḥḥidç al-Qummç; Qum: al-Wjddjç Library, (dateless).

- published by Ḍir al-Kutub al-Isḷmiyyah, Second Reprint, AH 1389.
116. *Ḳmil al-Ziyyṛjt* by Ibn Qawlawayh al-Qumṃ, Ja`far ibn Mu`ammad (AH 368); revised by Jaẉd al-Qayỵṃ; published by Nashr al-Faq̣hah Publishers, First Edition, AH 1417.
117. *Kiṭb al-«ṃjn* by al-`Adaṇ, Mu`ammad ibn Ya`ỵ ibn Aḅ-`Umar (AH 243); revised by `amad ibn `amḍ al-J̣biṛ al-`arḅ; Kuwait: al-Ḍir al-Salaf̣ Publishers, First Edition, AH 1407.
118. *Kiṭb al-Du`̣j`* by al-±abaṛṇ, Sulayṃn ibn A`mad (AH 360); revised by Muṣṣaf̣i `Abd al-Q̣dir `Aṣ̣j̣; Beirut: Ḍir al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, First Edition, AH 1413.
119. *Kiṭb al-Sunnah* by al-@a||̣k, `Amr ibn Aḅ-`aṣ̣im (AH 287); revised by Mu`ammad Ṇṣ̣ir al-Ḍn al-Alḅṇ; Beirut: al-Maktab al-Isḷṃ Publishers, Third Edition, AH 1413/AD 1993.
120. *Kiṭb al-Mu'min* by al-Ḳf̣ al-Ahẉẓ, al-°usayn ibn Sa`̣d (before AH 300); revised and published by Iṃm al-Mahḍ Foundation – Qum, First Edition, AH 1404.
121. *Kashf al-Khaf̣j' wa-Muẓḷ al-Ilḅs* by al-`Ajaḷṇ al-Jarṛj̣, Isṃj̣ḷ ibn Mu`ammad (AH 1162); Beirut: Ḍir al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, Second Reprint, 2 volumes, AH 1408.
122. *Kashf al-Ghiṣ̣j' `An Mubhaṃjt al-Shaṛ`ah al-Gharṛj'* by Ḳshif al-Ghiṣ̣j', Ja`far (AH 1228); Isfahan: Mahdavi Publishers, 2 volumes, (dateless).

- 1417.
107. *Faṭ al-Ḅjṛ Shaṛ| `ạ|̣ al-Bukḥjṛ* by Ibn °ajar al-`Asqaḷṇ (AH 852); Beirut: Ḍir al-Ma`rifah Publishers; Second Reprint, 13 volumes, (dateless).
108. *Fajr al-Isḷm* by A`mad Aṃṇ; Beirut: Ḍir al-Kiṭb al-`Araḅ, Eleventh Edition, AD 1975.
109. *Al-Fuṛq al-Lughawiyyah* by al-`Askaṛ, Aḅ-Hiḷḷ; revised and published by Islamic Publishing Foundation – Qum, First Edition, AH 1412.
110. *Faṣ̣j̣il al-`ạ|̣bah* by al-Nasṣj̣, A`mad ibn Shu`ayb (AH 303); Beirut: Ḍir al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, (dateless).
111. *Fiqh al-Riṣ̣j̣* by `Aḷ ibn Ḅbawayh (AH 329); revised by °l al-Bayt Foundation – the World Congress on Iṃm al-Riṣ̣j̣, (dateless).
112. *F̣ ṣ̣iḷḷ al-Tashayyū`* by al-°usayṇ, Mu`ammad `Aḷ (contemporary); Kuwait: al-Alfayn Library, First Edition, AH 1403/AD 1983.
113. *Fayṣ̣ al-Qaḍr Shaṛ| al-J̣mi` al-`agḥr* by al-Manṇẉ, Mu`ammad `Abd al-Ra'ff̣ (AH 1331); revised by A`mad `Abd al-Saḷṃ; Beirut: Ḍir al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, First Edition, 6 volumes, AH 1415.
114. *Qurb al-Isṇjd* by al-°imyaṛ al-Baghḍḍ, Aḅ'l-`Abḅs, `Abdulḷh (AH 300); revised and published by °l al-Bayt Foundation for Revival of Heritage – Qum, First Edition, AH 1413.
115. *Al-Ḳj̣* by al-Kulayṇ, Mu`ammad ibn Ya`q̣b (AH 329); revised by `Aḷ Akbar al-Ghaff̣ṛ;

- `Arabç, First Edition, AH 1405.
131. *Muaws£`at al-Imjm al-Mahdç (Tjrçkh al-Ghaybah al-Kubrj)* by al-`adr, Mu`ammad Mu`ammad `idiq (AD 1998); Beirut: Djr al-Ta`iruf Publishers, Second Edition, AH 1402/AD 1982.
 132. *Mj Ruwiya fç`l-°aw□ wa`l-Kawthar* by Ibn Mukhallad al-Qurşubç (AH 276); revised by `Abd al-Qjdir Mu`ammad `Aşj `ffç; Holy Madçnah: Maktabat al-`Ul£m wa`l-°ikam, First Edition, AH 1413.
 133. *Al-Mujtanj Min Du`j` al-Mujtabj* by Ibn ±aw£s, Ra□ç al-Dçn, `Alç ibn M£sç (AH 664); revised by `afj` al-Ba¥rç, (dateless).
 134. *Majma` al-Ba`rayn* by al-±uray|ç, Fakhr al-Dçn (AH 1085); revised by A|mad al-°usaynç; Publishing of Islamic Culture Bureau, Second Edition, 4 volumes, (dateless).
 135. *Majma` al-Bayjn fç Tafsçr al-Qur`jn* by al-±abrisç, Ab£-`Alç, al-Fa□l ibn al-°asan (AH 560); revised by a committee of scholars and specialist revisers; Beirut: al-A`lamç Publications, First Edition, AH 1415.
 136. *Majma` al-Zawj`id* by al-Haythamç, N£r al-Dçn (AH 807); Beirut: Djr al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah, 10 volumes, AH 1408/AD 1988.
 137. *Al-Ma`jsin* by al-Barqç, A|mad ibn Mu`ammad ibn Khjlid (AH 274); revised by Mahdç al-Rajj`ç; Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, First Edition, 2 volumes, AH 1413. (Another version is revised by Jaljl al-Dçn al-°usaynç, published by Djr al-Kutub

123. *Kashf al-Ghumma fç Ma`rifat al-A`immah* by al-Arbalç, `Alç ibn `«sj ibn Abç`l-Fat| (AH 693); Beirut: Djr al-A□wç` Publishers, Second Reprint, 3 volumes, AH 1405/AD 1985.
124. *Kashf al-Ma`ajjah li-Thamarat al-Muhjah* by Ibn ±aw£s al-Hasani al-°usaynç, Ra□ç al-Dçn, Ab£`l-Qjsim `Alç ibn M£sç (AH 664); Holy Najaf: al-°aydariyyah Press, AH 1370.
125. *Kashf al-Yaqçn fç Fa□j`il Amçr al-Mu`minçn* by `Alljmah al-°illç (AH 726); revised by °usayn al-Dargjhç, First Edition, AH 1411.
126. *Kifjyat al-Athar fç`l-Na¥¥ `Alj al-A`immah al-Ithnay `Ashar* by al-Khazzjz al-Qummç al-Rjzi (AH 400); revised by `Abd al-Laşçf al-°usaynç al-K£hkamarç al-Kh£`ç; Qum: Bçdjç Publishers, AH 1401.
127. *Kamjl al-Dçn wa Tamjm al-Ni`mah* by al-`ad£q, Mu`ammad ibn `Alç (AH 381); revised by `Alç Akbar al-Ghaffjç; Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation, AH 1405.
128. *Kanz al-`Ummjl* by al-Muttaqç al-Hindç (AH 974); revised by Shaykh Bakrç °ayyjnç & Shaykh `afwat al-Saqqç; Beirut: al-Risçlah Foundation, 16 volumes.
129. *Kanz al-Fawj`id* by al-Karjjakç, Ab£`l-Fat| Mu`ammad ibn `Alç (AH 449); Qum: al-Mu¥şafawç Press, Second Reprint, AH 1410.
130. *Lisjn al-`Arab* (an Arabic-Arabic dictionary) by al-Afrçqç, Ibn Man`£r (AH 711); published by Adab al-`Awzah; an offset of the print of Djr al-`Iyjç` al-

- Foundatoin for Revival of Heritage, Second Edition, 18 volumes, AH 1408.
146. *Mustadrak Safçnat al-Bi`ir* by al-Namizç al-Shjhrfdç, `Alç (AH 1405); Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation, 10 volumes, AH 1419.
147. *Al-Mustadrak `Alj al-`a`çayn* by al-°ikim al-Naysjbfrç, Mu`ammad ibn Mu`ammad (AH 405); revised by Yfsuf al-Mar`ashç; Beirut: Djr al-Ma`rifah Publishers, 4 volumes, AH 1406.
148. *Al-Mustarshid fç Imjmat Amçr al-Mu'minçn* by Mu`ammad ibn Jarçr ibn Rustam al-±abarç the Imjmite (the early fourth century of Hijrah); revised by A`mad al-Ma`mfdç; Qum: Islamic Culture Foundation, First Edition, (dateless).
149. *Mustašrafjt al-Sarj'ir* by Ibn Idrçs al-°illç, Mu`ammad (AH 598); revised and published by Islamic Publishing Foundation – Qum, Second Reprint, AH 1411.
150. *Musnad Ibn Ju`d* by al-Jawharç, `Alç ibn al-Ju`d ibn `Ubayd (AH 230); revised by Abf'l-Qjsim `Abdulljh ibn Mu`ammad al-Baghawç & `amir A`mad °aydar; Beirut: Djr al-Kutub al-`Ilmiyyah Publishers, (dateless).
151. *Musnad Abç-Ya`lj* by al-Mawšilç, Abf-Ya`lj, A`mad ibn `Alç ibn al-Muthannj al-Tamçmç (AH 307); revised by °usayn Salçm Asad, published by Djr al-Ma'mfn li'l-Turjth, (dateless).
152. *Musnad Abç-Djwfd* by al-±ayjlisç, Abf-Djwfd (AH 204); Beirut: Djr al-°adçth Publishers, (dateless).

- al-Isljmiyyah, no date is mentioned).
138. *Mu`ammad wa °adçth al-Thaqalayn* by al-Sharçf al-`Askarç, Najm al-Dçn (AH 1390); Holy Najaf: al-°djç Press, Fourth Edition, (dateless).
139. *Al-Mukhtjr fç'l-Jabr wa'l-Ikhtiyjr* al-`idqç al-°usaynç, Mu`ammad `Alç; a commentary on a thesis by Sayyid `Alç al-`Alljmah al-Fjñç; Najaf: Najaf Press, AH 1375.
140. *Mukhtašar al-Ma`jñç* by al-Taftazjñç, Sa`d al-Dçn (AH 792); Qum: Djr al-Fikr, First Edition, AH 1411.
141. *Mukhtašar Bašj'ir al-Darajjt* by al-°illç, al-°asan ibn Sulaymjñ (the ninth century of Hijrah); Najaf: al-°aydariyyah Press, First Edition, AH 1370/ AD 1950.
142. *Al-Murjja`jt* by Sharaf al-Dçn al-Mfsawç al-`amilç, `Abd al-°usayn (AH 1377); revised by °usayn al-Rjçç, with an introduction by A`mad °afnç Djwfd and Mu`ammad Fikrç `Uthmjñ Abf'l-Našr; Qum: The Ahl al-Bayt (`a) World Assembly, (dateless).
143. *Al-Mazjr* by al-Shahçd al-Awwal (AH 786); revised and published by Imjm al-Mahdç Foundation – Qum, First Edition, AH 1410.
144. *Al-Mazjr Manjsik al-Mazjr* by al-Mufçd (AH 413); revised and published by Imjm al-Mahdç School – Qum, First Edition.
145. *Mustadrak al-Wasj'il* by al-Nfçrç al-±abrisç (AH 1320); revised and published by `l al-Bayt

- Sulaymīn ibn Aḥmad ibn Ayyūb (AH 360); Beirut: Dīr al-Kutub al-ʿIlmiyyah, 2 volumes, (dateless).
162. *Al-Muʿjam al-Kabir* by al-ṭabarīn al-Lakḥmī, Sulaymīn ibn Aḥmad ibn Ayyūb (AH 360); revised by ʿamd al-ʿAbd al-Majīd al-Salafī; Cairo: Ibn Taymiyyah Library, Second Edition, (dateless).
163. *Al-Miʿyār waʾl-Muwjizānah* by al-Iskīfī, Abī-Jaʿfar Muḥammad ibn ʿAbdullāh al-Muʿtazilī (AH 220); revised by Muḥammad Bīqir al-Maḥmūdī, (dateless).
164. *Al-Mufradīt fī Gharaḥ al-Qurʾān* by al-Rīghib al-ʿIḥfāhīnī (AH 502); Nashr al-Kitāb Bureau, First Edition, AH 1404.
165. *Maqīl al-ṭlibiyyīn* by al-ʿIḥfāhīnī, Abī-l-Faraj (AH 356); revised by Kāʾim al-Muʿaffar; Qum: Dīr al-Kitāb Foundation, Second Reprint, (dateless).
166. *Muqṭaʿab al-Aṭhar fī-l-Naḥḥ al-ʿAlī al-Aʿimmah al-Iṭḥnay ʿAshar* by Ibn ʿAyyūsh al-Jawḥarī, Aḥmad ibn ʿUbaydullāh (AH 401); verification, preparation, and commentary by Ḥīshim al-Rasūlī; Qum: al-ṭabīṭabī Library, (dateless).
167. *Makrīm al-Aḥlīq* by al-ṭabīṭabī (AH 548); revised by Aḥmad al-Muwaḥḥid al-Qummī; Qum: al-Wajidīn Library. (The same book has been published by al-Raḥī Publications, AH 1392/AD 1972)
168. *Man Lī Yaḥḥurūh l-Faqḥ* by al-ʿadīq, Muḥammad ibn ʿAlī (AH 381); revised by ʿAlī Akbar al-Gḥaffīrī; Qum: Jamīʿat al-Mudarrisīn, Second Reprint, 4 volumes, AH 1404.

153. *Musnad Aḥmad* by Ibn ʿanbal, Aḥmad (AH 241); Beirut: Dīr ʿidīr, 6 volumes, (dateless).
154. *Musnad al-ʿamūdī* by al-ʿamūdī, Abī-Bakr, ʿAbdullāh ibn al-Zubayr (AH 219); revised by ʿabī al-Raḥmīn al-ʿamī; Beirut: Dīr al-Kutub al-ʿIlmiyyah Publishers, First Edition, 2 volumes, AH 1409/AD 1988.
155. *Mishkīt al-Anwār fī Ghurar al-Aḥbār* by al-ṭabīṭabī, Abī-l-Faḥī ʿAlī, (the seventh century of Hijrah); with an introduction by ʿilī al-Jaʿfarī; Holy Najaf: al-ʿaydariyyah Press, Second Edition, AH 1385/AD 1965.
156. *Muḥḍaqat al-Iḥwān* by al-ʿadīq, Muḥammad ibn ʿAlī (AH 381); revised by ʿAlī al-Kḥurīṣīnī al-Kāʾimī; Kāʾimiyyah (Iraq - Baghdad): Imīm ʿilī al-Zamīn Public Library, (dateless).
157. *Al-Muḥannaḥ* by al-ʿanīnī, ʿAbd al-Razzīq, Abī-Bakr (AH 211); revised by ʿabī al-Raḥmīn al-Aʿamī; Scientific Council, 11 volumes, (dateless).
158. *Maʿīn al-Aḥbār* by al-ʿadīq, Muḥammad ibn ʿAlī (AH 381); revised by ʿAlī Akbar al-Gḥaffīrī; Qum: al-Islīmī Publications, ASH 1361.
159. *Muʿjam Aḥmad al-Imīm al-Mahdī* by al-Kḥrīnī, ʿAlī (contemporary); Qum: al-Maʿīrif al-Islīmīyyah Foundation, First Edition, AH 1411.
160. *Muʿjam al-Buldīn* by al-ʿamawī, Yīqfī (AH 626); Beirut: Dīr ʿilī al-Turīth al-ʿArabī, 5 volumes, (dateless).
161. *Al-Muʿjam al-ʿaghīr* by al-ṭabarīn al-Lakḥmī,

- A`lamç Publications, First Edition, AH 1414/AD 1994.
176. *Al-Mahdç* by al-`adr, `adr al-Dçn (contemporary); Beirut: Dîr al-Zahrî' Publishers, AH 1405/AD 1985.
177. *Mçzjn al-°ikmah* by al-Rayshahrç, Mu`ammad; revised and published by Dîr al-°adçth Publishers, First Edition, (dateless).
178. *Nuzhat al-Nj`ir wa Tanbçh al-Khişir* by al-°alawjnç, al-°usayn ibn Mu`ammad ibn al-°asan (the fifth century of Hijrah); revised and published by Imjm al-Mahdç School – Qum, First Edition, AH 1408.
179. *Al-Na`ẖ wa'l-jtihid* by Sharaf al-Dçn al-`amilç al-Mçsawç, `Abd al-°usayn (AH 1377); revised by Abç-Mujtabî; Qum: Sayyid al-Shuhadî' Press, First Edition, AH 1404.
180. *Na`ariyyat al-Na`ẖ `Alj al-Imjmah fç'l-Qur'jn al-Karçm* by al-°rîkç, Mu`sin (contemporary); London: Book Extra, First Edition, AH 1421/AD 2000.
181. *Nu`um Durar al-Simşayn* by al-Zarandç al-°anafç al-Madanç, Jamîl al-Dçn Mu`ammad ibn Yçsuf ibn al-°asan ibn Mu`ammad (AH 750); A manuscript in the Amçr al-Mu'minçn Public Library, First Edition, AH 1377/AD 1958.
182. *Al-Nihjyah fç Gharçb al-°adçth wa'l-Athar* by Ibn al-Athçr al-Jazrç, al-Mubîrak ibn Mu`ammad (AH 606); revised by çîhir A`mad al-Zjwç and Ma`mfçd Mu`ammad al-çannîç; Qum: Ismj`çliyyjn Publishers, ASH 1367.

169. *Manjqib çl Abç-çlib* by Ibn Shahr `ashçb (AH 588); revised by a committee of the scholars of the holy city of al-Najaf; Holy Najaf: al-°aydariyyah Press, AH 1376.
170. *Manjqib al-Imjm Amçr al-Mu'minçn* by al-Kçfç al-Qjçç (the judge), Mu`ammad ibn Sulaymjn (after AH 300); revised by Mu`ammad Bîqir al-Ma`mfçdç; published by Assembly of Revival of Islamic Culture, First Edition, 2 volumes, AH 1412.
171. *Al-Manjqib* by al-Khawjrizmç, al-Muwaffaq ibn A`mad ibn Mu`ammad al-Makkç (AH 568); revised by Mîlik al-Ma`mfçdç; Qum: Islamic Publishing Foundation, Second Reprint, AH 1411.
172. *Muntakhab al-Athar fç'l-Imjm al-Thjnç-`Ashar* by al-`îfç al-Gulpaygjnç, Luşfulljh (contemporary); Qum: al-Djwarç Library, (dateless).
173. *Al-Muntakhab min Musnad `Abd ibn °umayd* by `Abd ibn °umayd, Abç-Mu`ammad (AH 249); revised by `ubçç al-Badrç al-Sjmarrî'ç & Ma`mfçd Mu`ammad Khalçl al-`a`çdç, published by al-Nahçah al-`Arabiyyah Library, First Edition, AH 1408/AD 1988.
174. *Munyat al-Murçd fç Adab al-Mufçd wa'l-Mustafçd* by al-Shahçd al-Thjnç (AH 966); revised by Riçj al-Mukhtjçç, published by Islamic Propagation Bureau, First Edition, AH 1409.
175. *Muhaj al-Da`awjt wa Manhaj al-`Ibjdjt* by Ibn çawçs al-°asanç al-°usaynç, Raçç al-Dçn Abç'l-Qjsim `Alç ibn Mçsî (AH 664); with introduction and commentary by °usayn al-A`lamç; Beirut: al-

183. *Nahj al-Balighah*: Sermons, Letters, and Aphorisms of Imām `Alī ibn Abī-ḥlib (AH 40), compiled by al-Sharḥ al-Raḥ (AH 406); revised by Shaykh Muḥammad `Abduḥ; Beirut: Dār al-Ma`rifah Publishers, (dateless).
184. *Nahj al-Sa`dah fī Mustadrak Nahj al-Balighah* by al-Mahmūd, Muḥammad Bāqir (contemporary); Beirut: Dār al-Ta`rūf Publishers, First Edition, 8 volumes, AH 1396, (dateless).
185. *Nḥr al-Abḥr fī Manāqib `l al-Nabī al-Mukhtār* by al-Shabalnāj al-Miḥr, Mu'min ibn `asan (after AH 1308).
186. *Al-Hidyah al-Kubrī* by al-Khaḥḥ, Abī-`Abdullāh al-`usayn ibn `amdīn (AH 334); Beirut: al-Baligh Foundation, Fourth Reprint, AH 1411/ AD 1991.
187. *Wiqi` al-Taqiyyah `Inda al-Madhhib wa'l-Firaq al-Islāmiyyah min Ghayr al-Sha`h al-Imāmiyyah* by al-`Amid, Thimīr Hishim `abīb (contemporary); Qum: al-Ghadār Center for Islamic Studies, AH 1416/AD 1995.
188. *Yanīb` al-Mawaddah li-Dhaw`l-Qurbī* by al-Qanadẓ al-`anaf, Sulaymīn ibn Ibrāhīm (AH 1294); revised by Sayyid `Alī Jamīl Ashraf al-`usayn, published by Dār al-Uswah, First Edition, 3 volumes, AH 1416.